

UC-NRLF

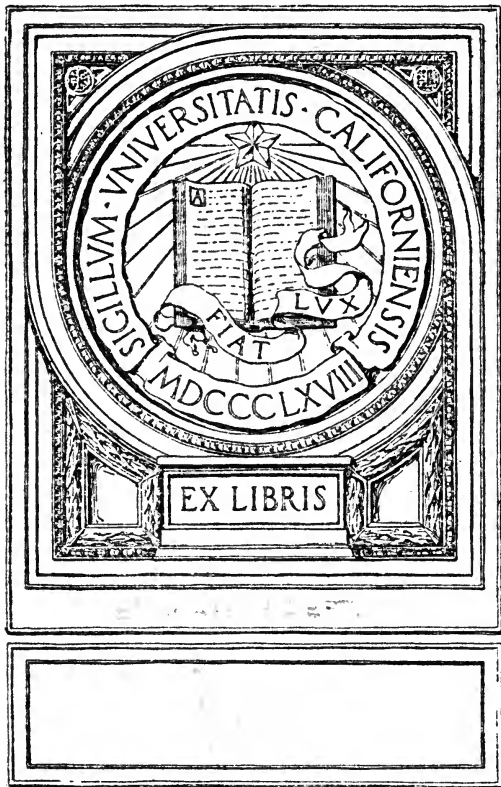


\$B 306 747

24 & 25

IN MEMORIAM

John Swett



A MANUAL

OF

# INSTRUCTION IN LATIN

ON THE BASIS OF

*ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S LATIN METHOD*

PREPARED BY

JOSEPH H. ALLEN

BOSTON

GINN AND HEATH

1878

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1876, by  
JOSEPH H. ALLEN,  
in the office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

Cambridge:  
Press of John Wilson & Son.



PREFACE.

THIS Manual retains from the "Latin Method" the general arrangement of topics, the later reading selections, and a few statements in detail, especially the section on reading at sight, with much of what is said on the derivation and meaning of words. In all other respects it is an independent book, and one for which I am solely responsible.

The object in view has been to provide *a full year's course in Latin, which can be studied without the grammar*. The fulness, the general statement, the scientific nomenclature required in a book of reference, ill adapt it to the beginner, bewildering him with theory before his mind is steadied and cleared by knowing the simpler facts. The thirty Lessons of Part First, with the accompanying Exercises, contain, it is believed, all of the forms and constructions needed as a preparation for easy reading. These may be followed directly by the earlier selections of Part Fourth,\* before proceeding to the more difficult constructions of Syntax.

The Vocabulary to be used with these selections contains the more useful Roots as a guide to the proper study of words. The sections on the formation and meaning of words, with the illustrative lists on pages 126-128, and those given at the end of the book, will be found of advantage at this stage, for constant reference if not for class study.

In the elementary lessons, and in the vocabularies, the practice has been followed of marking as long all vowels known to have

\* Taken from Kühner's "Elementargrammatik," Hannover, 1866, 27th ed.

been so regarded by the Romans. These have been held to include not only those long "by nature" or by "vowel-extension," but also those before the combinations *nf* and *ns*,\* together with a few others indicated by analogy, as *amānt*. If a serious attempt is made to pronounce according to the "Roman Method," the best help will be to train the learner's ear to it from the start.

The systematic study of Syntax is provided for in Part Second by very numerous classified illustrations, both in Latin † and English, which may be used for practice in the writing of Latin during a second year's course. The grammar is here referred to, constantly and minutely, as the subject seems to require; but the topics may be treated orally, if preferred, the examples in Latin being taken (at sight) as a guide in the exercises which follow.

The composition of this Manual has been studied wholly from the point of view of the elementary class-room; and, while scientific accuracy has been aimed at, the convenience of teacher or learner has in no case been sacrificed to theoretical completeness. Forms have been very fully indicated in the vocabularies; and occasional references to the grammar in the earlier Lessons will enable the teacher to give such further detail as may here and there be desirable.

My grateful acknowledgments are due to several of our best teachers, who have generously aided me by their counsel in the plan and in numerous details of the book. The entire work has received, in addition, the valuable revision and oversight of Dr. HENSHAW, former Principal of Williston Seminary, Easthampton, Massachusetts.

It may be worth while to add that the practice of tasking the beginner with a great mass of grammatical detail—which is fast coming to be considered a serious burden and harm to our scholarship—is one of comparatively recent date, and one which is not found (I believe) in any other country. The schoolboys of forty or

\* See Cicero, Orator, ch. 48.

† Many of these are taken from Wright's "First Latin Steps." Macmillan, 1871.

fifty years ago, with less of theoretical accuracy and completeness in their studies, were relatively more familiar with the classic authors, and, there is reason to suppose, enjoyed them more, than those of a later day. A scientific etymology, and a syntax expounded on the principles of comparative philology, are a positive and great gain in the newer school. But the detail of these studies appears to belong to the professional scholar ; while their results are best seen in making more vivid and clear the forms of ancient thought and expression that have come down to us. They may be of real help to the youngest learner ; but only when they make the way easier and brighter in which he has to travel. To smooth that way a little is the best service I can hope to render.

J. H. A.

CAMBRIDGE, August 21, 1876.

---

N O T E.

IN the present edition has been inserted a course of Exercises, prepared by Mr. WILLIAM DEUTSCH, of the St. Louis High School, which may be substituted, at pleasure, for the "Parallel Exercises" on pages 46-73. For convenience, these are given immediately before the Vocabulary (pages 169-209). In amount, they are calculated to make *just one year's work* for an average class. For the plan and details of these exercises, their compiler is solely responsible.

“Thus, upon examination, we find that all that requires unreasoning memory may be reduced to the following heads :—

1. The five declensions, which include all adjectives and participles ;
2. The rules for gender, and exceptions ;
3. The four conjugations, active and passive, which latter voice includes *sum* ;
4. The irregular verbs, *eo, volo, nolo, malo, possum* ;
5. Syntax : two pages.

All this might easily be comprehended within twenty-four octavo pages.”

D'ARCY W. THOMPSON,

“*Day-Dreams of a Schoolmaster.*”

# CONTENTS.

---

## PART I.—ELEMENTARY LESSONS.

	PAGE
LESSON 1. Pronunciation and Accent . . . . .	1
2. The Inflection of Nouns . . . . .	2
3. First Declension of Nouns . . . . .	4
4. Second Declension of Nouns . . . . .	5
5. Adjectives of First and Second Declensions . .	6
6. Simple Sentence : Subject and Predicate . . .	8
7.       "               Object-Accusative . . . . .	9
8.       "               Questions ; Conjunctions . .	10
9. Third Declension of Nouns . . . . .	12
10. Adjectives of the Third Declension . . . . .	15
11. Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	17
12. Fourth and Fifth Declensions of Nouns . . .	18
13. Pronouns : Personal and Demonstrative . . .	18
14.       "               Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite	20
15. Numerals . . . . .	21
16. Verbs : 1. Moods and Tenses . . . . .	23
17.       "               2. The Verb ESSE, <i>to be</i> . . . . .	24
18.       "               3. The Four Conjugations . . . . .	26
19. Regular Verb : 1st Conjugation, <i>Active</i> . . . .	28
20.       "               "               " <i>Passive</i> . . . .	30
21.       "               " <i>Noun and Adjective Forms</i> . . .	32
22.       "               "               2d Conjugation . . . . .	33
23.       "               "               3d Conjugation . . . . .	34
24.       "               "               4th Conjugation . . . . .	36
25. Deponent Verbs . . . . .	37
26. Irregular and Defective Verbs . . . . .	38
27. Particles . . . . .	41
28. Formation of Words : <i>Verb Stems</i> . . . . .	42
29.       "               " <i>Nouns and Adjectives</i> . . . .	43
30.       "               " <i>Derivatives and Compounds</i> . .	44
PARALLEL EXERCISES . . . . .	46-74

## PART II.—CONSTRUCTIONS OF SYNTAX.

	PAGE
CASES :— <i>a. As Objects of Verbs.</i>	
1. Object Accusative ; 2. Two Accusatives . . . . .	75, 76
3. Dative ; 4. Genitive ; 5. Ablative . . . . .	77-79
<i>b. As Modifying Adjectives.</i>	
6. Genitive ; 7. Dative . . . . .	80, 81
8. Ablative of Want ; 9. Of Source ; 10. Of Comparison ; 11. Of Means and Supply ; 12. Of Difference . . . . .	82-85
<i>c. Miscellaneous.</i>	
13. Adverbial Accusative ; 14. Acc. of Exclamation . . . . .	86, 87
15. Dative of Possession ; 16. Of Service ; 17. Of Reference . . . . .	88-90
18. Ablative Of Separation ; 19. of Cause ; 20. Of Means ; 21. Of Manner and Quality ; 22. Of Price ; 23. Of Specification ; 24. Locative . . . . .	91-96
25. Predicate Genitive . . . . .	97
26. Relations of Time and Space . . . . .	97
MOODS AND TENSES . . . . .	99-103
27. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive . . . . .	99
28. Historical Infinitive . . . . .	101
29. Sequence of Tenses . . . . .	101
SUBORDINATE CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	103-113
30. Conditional Clauses . . . . .	103
31. Disguised Conditions . . . . .	104
32. Comparative Particles . . . . .	105
33. Temporal Clauses . . . . .	106
34. Purpose and Result . . . . .	108
35. Clause of Characteristic . . . . .	110
36. Intermediate Dependent Clauses . . . . .	111
37. Indirect Discourse . . . . .	112
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES . . . . .	114-119
38. Infinitive Clauses . . . . .	114
39. Substantive Clauses of Purpose . . . . .	115
40. Substantive Clauses of Result . . . . .	117
41. Substantive Clauses with <i>Quod</i> . . . . .	118
42. Indirect Questions . . . . .	118

	PAGE
PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	120-123
43. Participles: Predicate use . . . . .	120
44. Ablative Absolute . . . . .	121
45. Gerundive Constructions . . . . .	122

## PART III.—ON READING LATIN.

I. The Meaning of Words . . . . .	124
2. The Latin Sentence . . . . .	129
3. Reading at Sight . . . . .	133

## PART IV.—READING LESSONS.

I. Fables . . . . .	139
II. Dialogues . . . . .	142
III. Anecdotes . . . . .	146
IV. The Kings of Rome . . . . .	148
V. The War with Porsena. — LIVY . . . . .	151
1. <i>Horatius holds the Bridge</i> . . . . .	151
2. <i>The Deed of Mucius Scævola</i> . . . . .	152
3. <i>The Escape of Clælia</i> . . . . .	154
VI. Miscellaneous Selections . . . . .	154
1. <i>A Haunted House.</i> — PLINY. . . . .	154
2. <i>A Sharper of Syracuse.</i> — CICERO. . . . .	155
3. <i>The Vale of Enna.</i> — Id. . . . .	156
4. <i>The Earth is made for Man.</i> — Id. . . . .	157
5. <i>The Heavens declare a Creator.</i> — Id. . . . .	159
6. <i>An Active Old Age.</i> — Id. . . . .	160
NOTES . . . . .	161
VOCABULARY: 1. English and Latin . . . . .	169
2. Latin and English . . . . .	185
TABLE OF SYNONYMES, etc. . . . .	235
SYNOPSIS OF CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	243

## GRAMMATICAL INDEX.

---

**A** or **ab** with ablative of Agent,  
31. *b*, 163. R. 27.

**ABLATIVE** with Comparatives, 17.  
R., 83; as Object, 79; of Want,  
82; of Source, 83; of Means,  
&c., 85, 92; of Difference, 85;  
of Separation, 91; of Cause, 92;  
of Manner, &c., 93; of Price,  
94; of Specification, 95; Loca-  
tive, 96; Absolute, 32. 2. *b*, 121;  
General Rules, 163. R. 26-35.

Accent, Rules of, 2.

**ACCUSATIVE**, as Case of Object, 9,  
75; two accusatives, 76; Ad-  
verbial, 86; of Exclamation, 87;  
General Rules, 162. R. 21-25.

**ADJECTIVES**, Inflection, 4. *c*, 6, 7,  
15, 16 (47, 53); Comparison, 17  
(54); rule of Agreement, 6, 162.  
R. 2; used as Nouns, 7. 2; De-  
rivative Forms, 43.

Adverbs in **e**, 6; in **ter**, 16; Deri-  
vation, 41.

Apposition, rule of, 7; 163. R. 1.

Cases, use of, 3; Syntax of, 75-99.

Characteristic, Clause of, 110.

Comparative Particles, 105.

Comparison of Adjectives, 17; of  
Adverbs, 17. 2.

Compounds, formation of, 45; of  
**qui** and **quis**, 21.

Conditional Clauses, 103; dis-  
guised, 104; General Rule, 163.  
R. 46.

**CONJUGATIONS**, 10, 26; First, 28-  
32; Second, 33; Third, 34;  
Fourth, 36; forms of, 27.

Conjunctions, 11. 2.

Correlatives, 21. 3.

**cum**, use of, 106.

**DATIVE**, as Indirect Object, 3. *c*,  
77; of Nearness, 81; of Posses-  
sion, 88; of Service, 89; of  
Reference, 90; General Rules,  
162. R. 14-20.

**DECLENSIONS**, 3; First, 4 (46);  
Second, 5 (46); Third, 12-14  
(51); Fourth and Fifth, 18 (56).

Defective Verbs, 40 (72).

Deponent Verbs, 37 (70). [124-128.

Derivative Forms, 43, 44; Words,  
Distributive Numerals, 22. *c*.

**Esse**, Forms of, 8; Inflection, 24,  
25; Compounds, 26; Predicate  
after, 9. R.

Gender, 2; Rules of, 4. 3. *b*, 5. *a*,  
14. *b*, 18. *a*, *c*.

**GENITIVE**, 3. 2. *b*; in **ius**, 7. 1; of  
Pronouns, 19. *d*; as Object, 79;  
with Adjectives, 80; of Value,  
94; as Predicate, 97; General  
Rules, 162. R. 8-13.

Gerund and Gerundive, 23. 3. *a*,  
2. *d*; Constructions, 122; Gen-  
eral Rule, 163. R. 41.

Impersonal Verbs, 40. 2; Use of  
Passive, 31. *c*.

Indirect Discourse, 112, 113.

Indirect Questions, 118, 119.

**INFINITIVE**, with Subject-Accusa-  
tive, 32. *d*, 114; Historical, 101;  
Clauses, 114; General Rules,  
163. R. 38-40.



- Intermediate Clauses, 111.  
 Interrogative Particles, 10 (50).  
 Intransitive Verbs, impersonal in Passive, 31. *c*.  
 Irregular Verbs, 38-40 (72).  
 Locative Forms, 4. *b*, 5. *f*, 18. *b* ;  
 Uses, 96, 98 ; Rules, 163. 36, 37.  
 Moods, 23. 1 ; Syntax of, 99-119.  
 NOMINATIVE as Subject, 3. *a*, 8. 1 ;  
 as Predicate, 9.  
 Nouns, Inflection, 4, 5, 12-14, 18 ;  
 Derivation, 43, 44.  
 Numbers, 3. 2.  
 Numerals, 21, 22.  
 Object, Definition, 9.  
 Object-Cases, 9. *a*, 75.  
 Participles, 23. 2, 32. 2 ; of Depo-  
 nents, 38 ; Constructions, 120.  
 Particles, 41 ; Interrogative, 10.  
 Passive Voice, Uses of, 31.  
 Perfect, Formation of, 27. *c*.  
 Personal Endings, 8.  
 Possessives, 19. *e*, 162. R. 3.  
**possum** and **prosum**, 26.  
 Predicate, Definition, 8 ; Nomina-  
 tive, 9 ; Genitive, 97.  
 PRONOUN, in Verb-ending, 8. 2 ;  
 Personal and Reflexive, 18 (57) ;  
 Possessive, 19, *e* ; Demonstrative,  
 19 (57) ; Relative, 20 (58).  
 Pronunciation, 1, 2.  
 Purpose, Subjunctive of, 108 ; Sub-  
 stantive Clauses of, 115.  
 Quantity, Rules of, 2.  
 Questions, 10 (50) ; Indirect, 118.  
 Reading at Sight, 133-138.  
 Reflexive Pronoun, 19.  
 Relative Pronouns, 20 ; Rule, 21 ;  
 162. R. 4.  
 Result, Clauses of, 108, 117.  
 Root, 3. 3. *a* ; 42. 2, 3 ; in Deriva-  
 tives, 126-128.  
 Sentence, the Latin, 129-133.  
 Stem of Nouns, 3. 3. *b*, 12. *a*, 13.  
*a*, 14. *a* ; of Perfect, 27. *c* ; of  
 Present in Verbs, 42. 2.  
 Subject, Definition, 8 ; Accusa-  
 tive, 32. *d* ; 162. R. 22.  
 SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, 23. *b* ; Inde-  
 pendent, 99 ; Tenses of, 101 ; in  
 Conditions, 103, 104 ; with Com-  
 parative Particles, 105 ; in Tem-  
 poral Clauses, 106 ; of Purpose  
 and Result, 108 ; of Charac-  
 teristic, 110 ; in Intermediate  
 Clauses, 111 ; in Substantive  
 Clauses, 115, 117 ; General  
 Rules, 163. R. 43-48.  
 Substantive Clauses, 114-119 ; In-  
 finitive, 114 ; of Purpose, 115 ;  
 of Result, 117 ; with **quod**, 118 ;  
 Indirect Questions, 118.  
 Supine, 23. 3. *b* ; 163. R. 42.  
 Synopsis of Verbs, 27. *e* ; of Con-  
 structions, 243, 244.  
 Temporal Clauses, 106.  
 Tenses, 24 ; Sequence of, 101 ;  
 Rule for, 163. R. 48.  
 Time and Space, 97-99.  
 Transitive Verbs, 9. 1 ; in Passive,  
 31. *b*.  
 Translation, Rules for, 129-131.  
 VERBS, 8 ; Moods and Tenses, 23 ;  
 Conjugations, 26-37 ; Deponent,  
 37 ; Irregular, 38 ; Defective,  
 40. 1 ; Impersonal, 40. 2 ; Deriva-  
 tion, 42 ; Derivative Forms, 44 ;  
 Compounds, 45 ; Syntax, 99-123.  
 Vowel-Stems of Nouns (3d decl.),  
 14 ; Adjectives, 15 ; Verbs, 42. 2<sup>8</sup>.  
 Words, Meaning of, as shown by  
 Derivation, 124-128.

## TO TEACHERS.

---

IN the paradigms given in this book, the case-endings, &c., have been marked by bold type. This is intended simply for the convenience of the learner, and has nothing to do with the etymological theory of stems. Thus the noun-stem of *pueris* is *puerō-*, and the verb-stem of *monuit* is *monē-*; while these words are printed so as to show the characteristic ending of the case, number, tense, or person. As the stem-theory is beset, to the beginner, by some special difficulties, it seems best that the forms themselves should be made very familiar before that is taken up; and, to be dealt with intelligently, it requires much more abundant illustration than could be given here. It may be illustrated orally by the teacher; but should be used, in any case, to explain difficulties, not to multiply them.

It will be observed that the lists of words on pp. 46-72 are not intended as complete vocabularies to the Lessons, but to furnish a sufficient number and variety of examples for practice. If well committed to memory, they will, it is believed, greatly help in mastering the earlier difficulties of the tongue.

The sentences given for practice are intended, in general, to offer no difficulty too great for the average learner, but with here and there an example to try the ingenuity of the brightest. If any should prove too hard, let them be omitted without hesitation: there are enough left, and to spare. At the same time, it is these very difficulties, much more than the facilities, that test and develop the learner's capacity, and help his real progress in the language. If the practice of reading at sight, with the teacher's direction and help, is followed from a very early stage, most of them will disappear of themselves. In such practice, the method indicated in pages 133-138 should be followed, subject, however, to the teacher's judgment and experience.

## INTRODUCTION.

---

### I. — PRONUNCIATION.

THERE is at present a strong tendency, among the best scholars, to pronounce Latin (as well as Greek) *phonetically*, giving to each letter of the alphabet the one sound which by the best authority most nearly represents that given it by Romans of the classic ages. These sounds are given in the first Lesson (p. 1). Observing the rules of accent, it is only necessary to give each letter its proper enunciation. This is by far the easiest and simplest way. It may be acquired by any intelligent person, with a good ear, in ten minutes; though practice will be required to make the reading fluent and agreeable.

Many persons, however, prefer to retain the English Method, so called; that is, the practice which has prevailed, with some variation, in England and among ourselves, for the last two or three centuries. In general, the following direction is sufficient. *Read a Latin sentence just as if the words were English, observing the rules of accent (p. 2), and bearing in mind that there are no silent letters.* This single precept would probably give a pronunciation as correct and about as uniform as can be had from any number of arbitrary rules. A few special points necessary to be observed are given in the grammar (§ 2, 2). To read Latin easily and well is an accomplishment which must be taught orally, and acquired by practice. The directions which follow, accordingly, are *not intended to be studied by the pupil*, but to serve as a guide in cases of doubt.

1. The chief difference between Latin (pronounced as in English) and English is that the former has no silent letters. *Every vowel makes a syllable*; except in the combinations **ae**, **oe**, **au**, **eu**, **ei**, **ui**, and **u** before a vowel, and these are separate when marked with the diæresis. Thus *dī-es*, *ma-re*, *pau-pe-ri-ē-i*.

2. The vowels always have their English sounds : —

<b>a</b> as in <i>mane</i> or <i>man</i> .	<b>ae</b> } as <i>e</i> .
<b>e</b> „ <i>be</i> or <i>bed</i> .	<b>oe</b> }
<b>i</b> „ <i>find</i> or <i>fin</i> .	<b>au</b> as <i>aw</i> in <i>awe</i> .
<b>o</b> „ <i>note</i> or <i>not</i> .	<b>eu</b> as <i>ew</i> in <i>hew</i> .
<b>u</b> „ <i>tune</i> or <i>tun</i> .	<b>ei</b> } as <i>i</i> .
<b>y</b> as <i>i</i> .	<b>ui</b> }

3. An unaccented **i** before another vowel is in almost all cases changed into its semivowel **y**. In the same cases as in English this **y** blends with the preceding consonant, making the sound of *sh*, as in *Maia* (Ma-ya), *Pompēius* (Pom-pé-yus), *Harpyia* (Harpí-ya), *socius* (so-shus), *vitium* (vish-yum), *Asia* (A-shya).

Except such words as *Fabius* (Fá-be-us), where the **y** is less distinct; so *Sextius*, *flectier*, where it is hardly distinguishable at all. Practice must be the guide in these cases.

4. Of the two sounds of the vowels above given the long sound (so called) ends a syllable, the short (“stopped”) sound is followed by a consonant: as *pā-ter* (pay-ter), *mag-nus* (mag-nus), *de-dīt* (de-dīt), *reg-num* (reg-num). But **a** at the end of an unaccented syllable has an obscure sound as in the word *America*: *stella* (stellāh).

5. The combinations **quad** and **quart** are pronounced as in the English *quart*; **arr** is pronounced as in *Harry*; **es** at the end of all words, and **os** at the end of plural words have the long sound: *pēs* (pease), *pares* (pay-reze), *nos* (noce); **post** (with its compounds) is pronounced like the same word in English.

6. The consonants are pronounced as in English. Thus, **c** is soft (*s*) before **e**, **i**, **y**, **ae**, **oe**, **eu**. Elsewhere it is hard (*k*), and it blends with **u** in nearly the same cases as in English, as *socius*, *consci-us* (pronounced *shus*); **ch** is always *k*, as in *charta*, *māchīna*; **g** is soft (*j*) and hard in the same situations respectively as **c**.

7. **S** is usually hard (sharp as in *saw*). It is sonant (soft, *z*) at the end of a word, after **e**, **ae**, **au**, **n**, **r**, as *pēs*, *audes*, *mons*, *pars*, *trans* (even in composition). A few other words have also sonant **s** (*z*), as *causa*, *rosa*.

8. **X** has the sound of *z* at the beginning and of *ks* at the end of syllables: as, *Xerx-es*, *pax*.

Since many of the sounds depend upon the open or close syllables, the following rules for the division of syllables may be observed, which are, however, the regular rules in English.

9. A vowel *not accented* and a penultimate vowel in any case *complete their syllables without* a following single consonant or mute with *l* or *r*, as *socius*, *ratio*. (This rule applies when the number of syllables is reduced by rule 3 above.)

10. A vowel *accented*, not penultimate, requires the following single consonant, or divides the combination of mute with *l* or *r*.

11. But a following *i* and *e* attract a consonant rather than an accented *ā*, *ē*, *ō*, preceding; as *me-di-ā-tor*, *hæ-re-o pā-tri-us*. — *u*, on the other hand, repels a following consonant, as *lū-ci-dus*, *dū-ri-us*.

12. A single consonant after any accented vowel except the penultimate is joined with that vowel. A mute and liquid in this position are separated. In other cases a single consonant or a mute and liquid belong to the following vowel.

13. Two consonants (except a mute and *l* or *r* as above) are divided: as, *mag-nus*, *cor-pus*.

14. Of three or more consonants, the last (or a mute with *l* or *r* as above) is given to the following syllable.

15. A compound word is divided between the parts if the first ends in a consonant, otherwise it follows the rules for single words: as, *prod-est*, *circum-esse*, *prae-sto*, *ego-met*, *pro-sum*.

## 2. — ELEMENTARY DEFINITIONS.

1. GRAMMAR treats of the different forms of words (ETYMOLOGY); and the mode of connecting them in speech (SYNTAX).

2. Words are either Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Participles, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, or Interjections. These are called PARTS OF SPEECH.

3. Words like *Cæsar*, *consul*, *temple*, *virtue*, which are names of persons, things, or ideas, are called NOUNS.

Names of Persons and Places are called PROPER NOUNS; other names are COMMON (as *temple*) or ABSTRACT (as *virtue*).

4. Words like *brave*, *loud*, *strong*, which express qualities, are called ADJECTIVES.

5. Words which indicate any person or thing, without either naming or describing, are called PRONOUNS. These include PERSONAL, as *I, thou, we, he, they*; and ADJECTIVE, as *these, those* (Demonstrative), *my, your* (Possessive), *who, which* (Relative or Interrogative).

6. Words like *build, fight, stand, be, suffer*, which express actions or conditions, are called VERBS.

7. Words like *conquering, going, gone, beaten*, which describe by means of actions or conditions, are called PARTICIPLES.

8. Words like *nobly, well, very, here, now, to-day*, which define an action or quality in manner, place, time, or the like, are called ADVERBS.

9. Words like *for, with, by, against*, which show the relation between a noun and other words in the sentence, are called PREPOSITIONS.

10. Words like *and, or, if, but, then*, which connect words or sentences together, are called CONJUNCTIONS.

11. Some words as *where, while, till, nevertheless*, both define as adverbs and connect as conjunctions. These are called ADVERBIAL CONJUNCTIONS.

12. Words like *ah! ho! alas!* are mere exclamations, and are not strictly parts of speech, but are called INTERJECTIONS.

### 3. — THE ORDER OF WORDS.

THE order of words in Latin is comparatively free; but the following rules may serve as a guide to the beginner.

1. In general, put the Subject first and the Verb last. But —

2. Any very emphatic word may be first or last.

3. An Adjective, except for emphasis, follows the noun; but may precede the preposition with its noun: as, *multis in locis*.

4. The verb *inquam* (in quotations), and the conjunctions *autem, enim, quoque, vero*, always follow one or more words in their clause.

5. The order is very often determined by Emphasis or Contrast.

6. Observe carefully and imitate the form of the sentences given as examples. (For special rules of arrangement, see Gr. § 76)

## PART FIRST.

### ELEMENTARY LESSONS.

#### *Lesson I.*

##### Pronunciation and Accent.

NOTE. — Pronunciation should be taught orally by the teacher. The pronunciation of Latin is different in different countries. Among us, it usually follows one of two ways, which may be called the *Roman* (or *Phonetic*) and the *English*.

1. By the Roman (or Phonetic) method, *every letter has always the same sound*, as follows:—

VOWELS: ā as in <i>father</i> ;	ǣ as in <i>fast</i> .
ē as in <i>rein</i> ;	ĕ as in <i>met</i> .
ī as in <i>machine</i> ;	ĭ as in <i>pin</i> or <i>piano</i> .
ō as in <i>holy</i> ;	ŏ as in <i>obey</i> .
ū as in <i>rude</i> ( <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i> );	ŭ as in <i>full</i> .

N.B.—Vowels marked thus, ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, are *long*; marked thus, ǣ, ĕ, ĭ, ŏ, ŭ, are *short*. A long syllable is reckoned equal to two short ones.

DIPHTHONGS: ae like *ay*; <sup>1</sup>oe like *oy*; au like *ow* in *now*.  
ei as in *eight*; eu as *ew*; <sup>2</sup>ui as *we* (*oo'ee*).

CONSONANTS: c and g are always hard, as in *come*, *get*.  
s is always sharp, as in *sea*, *lips*.  
j is like *y*; v like *w* (or *v*); qu as in *English*.  
bs is like *ps*; ch like *k*; ph like *f*.

2. By the English method, the letters have the same sound as in English; but—

a. There are no silent letters, each word having as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs.

b. Final a is pronounced as in *America*; but in the monosyllables ā, dā, quā, stā, the *long* sound is sometimes given.

<sup>1</sup> Particle of Affirmation.

<sup>2</sup> As in *few*.

c. The diphthongs **ae**, **oe**, are pronounced like *ee*; **au** like *aw*; **eu** like *ew*; **ei** and **ui** like *i* in *kite*; **es** and (in plural words) **os** at the end of a word, as in *disease*, *morose*.

d. The consonants **c** and **g** are made soft (like *s* and *j*) before **e**, **i**, **y**, **ae**, **oe**, **eu**; **ch** is always hard, as in *chasm*, *chemist*.

### 3. The following are general Rules of Quantity : —

a. A vowel before another vowel or **h** is short : as in **vīa**, **nīhil**.

b. A diphthong is long : as in **aedēs**, **foedus**.

c. A syllable formed by contraction is long : as, **nīl** (**nihil**).

d. A syllable in which a vowel is followed by two consonants, or a double consonant (**x**, **z**), is long : as in **rēctus**, **rēxit**.

e. A syllable in which a short vowel is followed by a mute with **l** or **r** is common ; i. e. it may be long in verse : as in **alacris**.

### 4. The following are Rules of Accent : —

a. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first syllable.

b. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult, if that is long : as, **amīcus**; if it is short or common, then on the Antepenult : as, **do'mīnus**, **a'lacris**.

DEFINITION : The Penult is the last syllable but one; the Antepenult, the last but two.

## Lesson 2.

### The Inflection of Nouns.

1. Nouns are of three Genders, masculine (M.), feminine (F.), and neuter (N.).

a. Names of *male beings*, *rivers*, *winds*, and *mountains* are Masculine.

b. Names of *female beings*, *cities*, *countries*, and *plants*, are Feminine.

c. Neuter nouns include *indeclinable nouns*, *terms* or *phrases used as nouns*, and *words quoted merely for their form*.

d. Many names of Things — as **lapis** (M.), *a stone*, **mēnsa** (F.), *a table* — are masculine or feminine.

e. Nouns which may be of either gender according to sex are said to be of Common gender (C.) : as, **dux**, *leader*; **bōs**, *ox* or *cow*.



2. Nouns are declined in two Numbers, *singular* and *plural*; and in six Cases, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, *ablative*.

a. The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence (see Lesson 6).

b. The Genitive may generally be translated by the English Possessive, or with the preposition OF.

c. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object: it may usually be translated with the preposition TO or FOR; but sometimes corresponds to the English Objective.

d. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object (see Lesson 7): it is used with most of the Latin Prepositions.

e. The Vocative is the case of Direct Address.

f. The Ablative may usually be translated with the prepositions FROM, BY, WITH, IN, or AT.

g. All the cases, except the nominative and vocative, may be used as object-cases; and are sometimes called OBLIQUE CASES.

N. B.—The meanings and uses of the Cases, which are very numerous, will be shown in the “Constructions of Syntax” (pages 75 to 99).

3. Nouns are inflected in five Declensions, which are thus distinguished:—

Decl.	1.	Gen.	sing.	ae	Characteristic	ă
”	2.	”	”	ī	”	ō
”	3.	”	”	īs	”	ī or a Consonant.
”	4.	”	”	ūs (uis)	”	ŭ
”	5.	”	”	ēi	”	ē

a. A syllable having a signification of its own, from which that of a word is derived, is called a ROOT: thus from the root STA, *stand*, is derived the word *unstable* (that which cannot stand).

b. The body of a word, to which the terminations are attached, is called a STEM: thus in *milit-is, of a soldier*, the stem is *milit-*.

c. The last letter of the stem is called the *stem-letter* or *characteristic*; when a vowel, it is often blended with the termination: as, *currūs* for *curru-is*.

NOTE.—In the following Lessons, and in the Vocabularies, only long vowels are, in general, marked. Those not marked, whether or not long by position, are to be considered short or common.

## Lesson 3.

## First Declension of Nouns.

1. LEARN the inflection of **stella** (F.), giving the name and meaning of all the Cases, as follows (§ 9):

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOMINATIVE.	<b>stellā</b> , <i>a (or the) star.</i>	<b>stellae</b> , <i>stars.</i>
GENITIVE.	<b>stellae</b> , <i>of a star.</i>	<b>stellārum</b> , <i>of stars.</i>
DATIVE.	<b>stellae</b> , <i>to a star.</i>	<b>stellis</b> , <i>to stars.</i>
ACCUSATIVE.	<b>stellam</b> , <i>a star.</i>	<b>stellās</b> , <i>stars.</i>
VOCATIVE.	<b>stellā</b> , <i>thou star!</i>	<b>stellae</b> , <i>ye stars!</i>
ABLATIVE.	<b>stellā</b> , <i>with a star.</i>	<b>stellis</b> , <i>with stars.</i>

2. In like manner decline the following: —

<b>Athēnae</b> (F. plur.), <i>Athens.</i>	<b>patria</b> (F.), <i>native-land.</i>
<b>cōpiae</b> (F. plur.), <i>forces.</i>	<b>porta</b> (F.), <i>gate.</i>
<b>dea</b> (F.), <i>goddess (a).</i>	<b>Rōma</b> (F.), <i>Rome (b).</i>
<b>filia</b> (F.), <i>daughter (a).</i>	<b>silva</b> (F.), <i>wood, forest.</i>
<b>insula</b> (F.), <i>island.</i>	<b>terra</b> (F.), <i>earth, land.</i>
<b>nauta</b> (M.), <i>sailor.</i>	<b>via longa</b> (F.), <i>a long way (c).</i>

✓ *a.* The dative and ablative plural of **dea**, **filia**, and a few other words, end in **ābus** (see 2. *e*).\*

✓ *b.* The singular form **Rōmae** is used to mean *at Rome*; and the plural form **Athēnīs** to mean *at Athens* (2. *c*). These forms are called **LOCATIVE** (see Rule 36, p. 163).

*c.* Adjectives (as **longa**) are declined like nouns.

3. Decline the following Greek nouns: —

	<i>comet</i> (M.).	<i>laurel</i> (F.).	<i>Aeneas</i> (M.).	<i>Anchises</i> (M.).
NOM.	<b>comētēs</b> (a)	<b>daphnē</b>	<b>Aenēās</b>	<b>Anchīsēs</b>
GEN.	<b>comētae</b>	<b>daphnēs</b> (ae)	<b>Aenēae</b>	<b>Anchisae</b>
DAT.	<b>comētae</b>	<b>daphnē</b> (ae)	<b>Aenēae</b>	<b>Anchisae</b>
ACC.	<b>comētēn</b> (am)	<b>daphnēn</b>	<b>Aenēān</b> (am)	<b>Anchīsēn</b>
VOC.	<b>comētā</b>	<b>daphnē</b>	<b>Aenēā</b> (ā)	<b>Anchīsē</b> (ā)
ABL.	<b>comētā</b> (ē)	<b>daphnē</b> (ā)	<b>Aenēā</b>	<b>Anchīsē</b> (ā)

*a.* These nouns are inflected regularly in the plural.

*b.* Most nouns of the first declension are Feminine.

See EXERCISE, page 46.

\* The References are to Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar.

## Lesson 4.

## Second Declension of Nouns.

LEARN the inflection of the following (§ 10) : —

## SINGULAR.

	<i>slave</i> (M.).	<i>boy</i> (M.).	<i>book</i> (M.).	<i>man</i> (M.).	<i>war</i> (N.).
NOM.	<b>servūs</b>	<b>puēr</b>	<b>libēr</b>	<b>vīr</b>	<b>bellum</b>
GEN.	<b>servī</b>	<b>puerī</b>	<b>librī</b>	<b>virī</b>	<b>bellī</b>
DAT.	<b>servō</b>	<b>puerō</b>	<b>librō</b>	<b>virō</b>	<b>bellō</b>
ACC.	<b>servum</b>	<b>puerum</b>	<b>librum</b>	<b>virum</b>	<b>bellum</b>
VOC.	<b>servē</b>	<b>puer</b>	<b>liber</b>	<b>vir</b>	<b>bellum</b>
ABL.	<b>servō</b>	<b>puerō</b>	<b>librō</b>	<b>virō</b>	<b>bellō</b>

## PLURAL.

NOM.	<b>servī</b>	<b>puerī</b>	<b>librī</b>	<b>virī</b>	<b>bellā</b>
GEN.	<b>servōrum</b>	<b>puerōrum</b>	<b>librōrum</b>	<b>virōrum</b>	<b>bellōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>servīs</b>	<b>puerīs</b>	<b>librīs</b>	<b>virīs</b>	<b>bellīs</b>
ACC.	<b>servōs</b>	<b>puerōs</b>	<b>librōs</b>	<b>virōs</b>	<b>bellā</b>
VOC.	<b>servī</b>	<b>puerī</b>	<b>librī</b>	<b>virī</b>	<b>bellā</b>
ABL.	<b>servīs</b>	<b>puerīs</b>	<b>librīs</b>	<b>virīs</b>	<b>bellīs</b>

a. Nouns of this declension ending in **us**, **er**, and **ir**, are masculine; those in **um** are neuter. (For exceptions, see 3. a, b).

b. All Latin nouns in **um** are declined like **bellum** (N.). In all neuter nouns, the nom. acc. and voc. plural end in **ā**.

c. Notice that nouns in **us** of this declension are the only Latin nouns which have the vocative different from the nominative.

✓d. Proper names in **ius**, with **filius**, *son*, lose **e** in the vocative (so **mī** from **meus**, *my*): as, **mī fili**, *my son* (4. c).

✓e. The voc. of **deus**, *god*, is **deus**; the plural nom. and voc. are **dei**, **diī**, or **dī**; dat. and abl. **deīs**, **diīs**, or **dīs** (4. f).

✓f. The Locative form is like the genitive in the singular: as, **Corinthī**, *at Corinth*; **humī**, *on the ground*; **vesperī**, *at evening*. In the plural it is like the ablative: as, **Gabiīs**, *at Gabii* (4. a).

g. A few Greek nouns end in **os**, **on**, instead of **us**, **um**. Names ending in **eus** (like **Orpheus**) are declined thus (7. a): —

NOM.	<b>Orpheus</b>	DAT.	<b>Orpheī</b>	VOC.	<b>Orpheu</b>
GEN.	<b>Orpheī</b> (or <b>eos</b> )	ACC.	<b>Orphea</b>	ABL.	<b>Orpheō</b>

h. Decline together **servus bonus**, *a good slave*; **puer miser**, *unhappy boy*.

See EXERCISE, page 46.

## Lesson 5.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

## PART FIRST.

LEARN the inflection of the following: —

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING. NOM.	<b>bonus</b>	<b>bonā</b>	<b>bonum, Good.</b>
GEN.	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonī</b>
DAT.	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonō</b>
ACC.	<b>bonum</b>	<b>bonam</b>	<b>bonum</b>
VOC.	<b>bonē</b>	<b>bonā</b>	<b>bonum</b>
ABL.	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonā</b>	<b>bonō</b>
PLUR. NOM.	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonā</b>
GEN.	<b>bonōrum</b>	<b>bonārum</b>	<b>bonōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>
ACC.	<b>bonōs</b>	<b>bonās</b>	<b>bonā</b>
VOC.	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonā</b>
ABL.	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Miser, wretched.</i>			<i>Niger, black.</i>		
N., V.	<b>miser</b>	<b>misera</b>	<b>miserum</b>	<b>niger</b>	<b>nigra</b>	<b>nigrum</b>
GEN.	<b>miserī</b>	<b>miserae</b>	<b>miserī</b>	<b>nigrī</b>	<b>nigrae</b>	<b>nigrī</b>
DAT.	<b>miserō</b>	<b>miserae</b>	<b>miserō</b>	<b>nigrō</b>	<b>nigrae</b>	<b>nigrō</b>
ACC.	<b>miserum</b>	<b>miseram</b>	<b>miserum</b>	<b>nigrum</b>	<b>nigram</b>	<b>nigrum</b>
ABL.	<b>miserō</b>	<b>miserā</b>	<b>miserō</b>	<b>nigrō</b>	<b>nigrā</b>	<b>nigrō</b>

The plural of these adjectives is declined like that of **bonus**.

Observe that the declension of Adjectives of this form is precisely the same as that of the corresponding nouns, **servus**, **puer**, **liber** (M.); **stella** (F.), **bellum** (N.).

**RULE.** — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

Decline together the following, making the Adjective agree with the Noun in gender, number, and case: —

<b>vir bonus</b> , a good man ;	<b>hasta valīda</b> , a strong spear ;
<b>taurus niger</b> , a black bull ;	<b>bellum longum</b> , a long war ;
<b>servus miser</b> , a wretched slave ;	<b>filius meus</b> , my son (d. p. 5).

**ADVERBS** are formed from these adjectives by changing the case-ending to **ē**: as, **validē**, strongly; **miserē**, wretchedly.

PART SECOND.

I. Decline the singular of the following :—

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
GEN.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	utrius	utrius	utrius
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utri	utri	utri
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altēra	alterum
GEN.	alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
ACC.	aliū	aliā	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

The plural is declined regularly, like that of **bonus**.

The following are declined as above :—

**alius** (N. **aliud**), *other*. **nullus**, *none*. **ullus**, *any* (with negatives).  
**alter**, *other* (of two). **sōlus**, *alone*. **ūnus**, *one*.  
**neuter**, *-trius, neither*. **tōtus**, *whole*. **ūter, -trius**, *which* (of two).

Observe that these, except **alius**, differ from the regular declension only in the genitive and dative singular, which end in **īus** and **ī** for all the genders. In the plural, all are declined like **bonus**. From their signification they are rarely or never found in the vocative.

**Duo**, *two*, and **ambo**, *both*, are thus declined :—

NOM.	duo	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

2. Many adjectives in the singular, and most adjectives in the plural, may be used as Nouns: thus,

<b>liber</b> , <i>a free man</i> .	<b>bona</b> , <i>good things</i> (property).
<b>amicus</b> , <i>a friend</i> .	<b>Latīnī</b> , <i>the Latins</i> .
<b>Rōmānus</b> , <i>a Roman</i> .	<b>Sabīnae</b> , <i>the Sabine women</i> .

**RULE**.—*A noun used to describe another, and meaning the same thing, agrees with it in case: as,*

**Homērus poēta**, *Homer the poet*; **Gabiōrum oppidī**, *of the town Gabii*.  
 See EXERCISE, page 77.

## Lesson 6.

Simple Sentence: 1. Subject and Predicate.

DEFINITION. — The SUBJECT of a sentence is the person or thing spoken of: the PREDICATE is that which is stated of the subject (§ 45, 2).

1. Every complete sentence must contain a Subject and a Verb. The Subject is in the NOMINATIVE CASE (§ 49, 2): as,

*equus currit, the horse runs.*  
*rēgīna sedet, the queen sits.*

NOTE. — In certain constructions, a verb is put in the Infinitive mood, in which case its subject becomes the Accusative (Less. 21).

2. In Latin, the subject may be a personal pronoun contained in the termination of the verb itself: as,  
*aro, I plough (am ploughing); sedēmus, we sit; curritis, you run.*

NOTE. — This is true, in general, only when the verb is of the first or second person. With the third person, a definite subject must be expressed, unless implied in what goes before or follows.

3. Learn the following forms of the verb *esse*, to be: —

## PRESENT.

<i>sum, I am.</i>	<i>sumus, we are.</i>
<i>es, thou art (you are).</i>	<i>estis, you are.</i>
<i>est, he (she, it) is.</i>	<i>sunt, they are.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<i>eram, I was.</i>	<i>erāmus, we were.</i>
<i>erās, thou wast (you were).</i>	<i>erātis, you were.</i>
<i>erat, he (she, it) was.</i>	<i>erānt, they were.</i>

Upon comparing these forms, the learner will notice that the terminations are alike for each person: thus,

SINGULAR 1. - m  
 2. - s  
 3. - t

PLURAL 1. - mus  
 2. - tis  
 3. - nt

RULE. — *The case of the Predicate, after esse, is the same with that of the Subject.*

Examples.

1. Pueri sumus, *we are boys.*
2. Stellae lūcidae erānt, *the stars were bright.*
3. Parātī nōn erāmus, *we were not ready.*
4. Viri boni sunt,<sup>1</sup> *they are good men.*
5. Rōma patria est nōstra, *Rome is our native city.*
6. Priscī Rōmānī erānt agricolae, *the early Romans were farmers.*

<sup>1</sup> This sentence may be translated *they* (some persons previously referred to, and implied in the termination) *are good men*; or, *the men are good*; also (considering **sunt** as a substantive verb), *there are good men*. In the first case, **boni** and **virī** are both predicate; in the second, **virī** is subject and **boni** predicate; in the third, both are in the subject.

See EXERCISE, page 48.

## Lesson 7.

### Simple Sentence : 2. Object Accusative.

DEFINITION. — *The OBJECT of a verb is that on which its action is exerted.*

RULE. — *The Accusative is the case of the DIRECT OBJECT of a transitive verb.*

I. The action of many verbs (called Transitive verbs) *passes over* upon an object, which must be expressed to complete the sense: as,

**vocat filium**, *he calls (his) son.*

**vidēmus lūnam et stellās**, *we see the moon and stars.*

a. With certain verbs, the genitive, dative, or ablative may be used as an object-case, where the corresponding English verbs require the objective (see p. 75).

b. Many verbs transitive in Latin are translated in English by a verb requiring a preposition (intransitive): as,

**pecūniam postulo**, *I ask for (demand) money.*

**petit aprum**, *he aims at the boar.*

2. Learn the following verb-forms of the First and Second conjugations : —

I.	
<b>voco</b> , <i>I call.</i>	<b>vocāmus</b> , <i>we call.</i>
<b>vocās</b> , <i>you call (thou callest).</i>	<b>vocātis</b> , <i>you call.</i>
<b>vocat</b> , <i>he (she, it) calls.</i>	<b>vocānt</b> , <i>they call.</i>
II.	
<b>video</b> , <i>I see.</i>	<b>vidēmus</b> , <i>we see.</i>
<b>vidēs</b> , <i>you see (thou seest).</i>	<b>vidētis</b> , <i>you see.</i>
<b>videt</b> , <i>he (she, it) sees.</i>	<b>vidēnt</b> , <i>they see.</i>

Upon comparing these forms, the learner will notice that the first has *ā* and the second *ē* before the terminations. These vowels are characteristic of two different conjugations called the *first* and *second*. In the first person singular, **voca-o** has been contracted into **voco**.

Like **voco** inflect the following : —

<b>amo</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>love.</i>	<b>do</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>give.</i>	<b>laudo</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>praise.</i>
<b>aro</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>plough.</i>	<b>juvo</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>help.</i>	<b>pugno</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>fight.</i>

Like **video** inflect the following : —

<b>doceo</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>teach.</i>	<b>noceo</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>injure.</i>	<b>timeo</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>fear.</i>
<b>habeo</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>have.</i>	<b>sedeo</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>sit.</i>	<b>valeo</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>be strong.</i>

See EXERCISE, page 49.

## Lesson 8.

### Simple Sentence: 3. Special Forms.

I. QUESTIONS. — Questions in Latin are introduced by Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs, or Particles, and are not distinguished by the order of the words, as in English.

a. A Question of *simple fact*, requiring the answer *yes* or *no*, is formed in Latin by adding the syllable *-ne* (*enclitic*) to the emphatic word: as,

**erāsne** **Caesaris** **amīcus**? *were you (in fact) Caesar's friend?*  
**tūne** **erās** **Caesaris** **amīcus**? *were YOU a friend of Caesar?*

NOTE. — Sometimes the interrogative particle is omitted, when no sign of a question appears except in the punctuation.



✓ *b.* A Question asking of some circumstance about the fact is formed by prefixing to the sentence an interrogative word. Such words are —

**quis?** *who?* **ubi?** *where?* **quando?** *when?* **quārē?** *why?*  
**quōmodo?** *how?* **quālis?** *of what sort?* **quantus?** *how great?*

NOTE. — A Question of this form becomes an exclamation by omitting the mark of interrogation, or (in speech) by changing the inflection of the voice.

*c.* When the syllable **-ne** is added to a negative word, — as **nōne**, — an affirmative answer is expected. The particle **num** implies a *negative* answer: as,

**nōne erās Caesaris amīcus?** *were you not Cæsar's friend?*

**num erās Caesaris inimīcus?** *were you an enemy of Cæsar's?*

(surely not): i.e. *you were not, were you?*

*d.* A double or alternative question is usually asked by **utrum** and **an** (see § 71, 2): as, **utrum amīcus Caesaris an inimīcus erās**, *were you a friend or an enemy of Cæsar?*

*e.* There is no word in Latin meaning simply *yes* or *no*. Hence, in answering a question, the verb is generally repeated: as,

**valēsne?** *are you well?* **valeo**, *yes* ("I am well").

**aderāsne?** *were you there?* **nōn aderam**, *no*.

2. CONJUNCTIONS. — Two simple sentences are often connected by Conjunctions, and make a single sentence.

*a.* The commonest Conjunctions are the following: —

✓ **et**, *and*.      **aut**, *vel*, *or*.      **nec** (*neque*), *nor* = *and not*.  
**sed**, *but*.      **-que** (*enclitic*), *and*.      **atque** (sometimes **ac** before a  
**at**, *but yet*.      **quoque**, *also*.      consonant), *and besides*.

*b.* The following are often repeated in the different parts of the sentence, for the sake of distinction or emphasis: —

✓ **et** or **-que**, *both* . . . *and*.      **nec** or **neque**, *neither* . . . *nor*.  
**aut** (**vel**), *either* . . . *or* (compare **utrum** . . . **an**, *whether* . . . *or*).

*c.* It is very common, in sentences thus made up of two or more members, to express in one part what must be understood in the rest (*ellipsis*): as,

**C.** **Gracchus amīcus plēbis erat**, **Scipiōnēs inimīcī** [**plēbis erānt**], *Caius Gracchus was a friend of the commons, the Scipios [were their] enemies.*

See EXERCISE, page 50.

## Lesson 9.

## Third Declension of Nouns.

## PART FIRST.

## 1. Decline the following (§ 11, iii.).

SING.	<sup>help</sup> <i>help</i> (F.).	<sup>king</sup> <i>king</i> (M.).	<sup>guide</sup> <i>guide</i> (C.).	<sup>soldier</sup> <i>soldier</i> (M.).	<sup>head</sup> <i>head</i> (N.).
N., V.	[ops]	rēx	dux	mīles	caput
GEN.	opis	rēgis	ducis	militis	capitis
DAT.	opī	rēgī	ducī	militī	capitī
ACC.	opem	rēgem	ducem	militem	caput
ABL.	ope	rēge	duce	milite	capite
PLUR.	<i>wealth.</i>				
N., V.	opēs	rēgēs	ducēs	militēs	capita
GEN.	opum	rēgum	ducum	militum	capitum
DAT.	opibus	rēgibus	ducibus	militibus	capitibus
ACC.	opēs	rēgēs	ducēs	militēs	capita
ABL.	opibus	rēgibus	ducibus	militibus	capitibus

## 2. In like manner decline :—

princeps, ipis (C.), *chief.*custōs, ōdis (M.), *guard.*aestās, ātis (F.), *summer.*apex, icis (M.), *peak.*cōr, cordis (N.), *heart.*poēma, atis (N.), *poem.*a. In these nouns, the Stem ends in a *mute consonant.*b. The nominative singular of masculine and feminine nouns is formed by adding *s* to the stem; sometimes (as in *mīles*) with a change of vowel.c. The letter *t* or *d* is lost before *s*; *c* or *g* is joined with *s* and becomes *x*.

d. In Neuter nouns, the accusative is always the same as the nominative.

e. In a few Greek nouns (as *lampas*), the genitive singular ends in *ōs*, and the accusative in *a*; and the accusative plural in *ās*.

## Examples (for analysis).

1. Opēs<sup>1</sup> amplās philosophus habet.
2. Nōn est vĕra voluptās sine virtūte.
3. Fāta nullae precēs commovēnt.
4. Nōn hospes ab hospite tūtus erat.

<sup>1</sup> The singular (meaning *help*) is not used in the Nominative.

PART SECOND.

1. Decline the following : —

SING.	<i>consul</i> (M.).	<i>lion</i> (M.).	<i>maiden</i> (F.).	<i>name</i> (N.).	<i>body</i> (N.).
N., V.,	cōnsul	leo	virgo	nōmen	corpus
GEN.	cōnsulis	leōnis	virginis	nōminis	corporis
DAT.	cōnsulī	leōnī ✓	virginī	nōminī	corporī
ACC.	cōnsulem	leōnem	virginem	nōmen	corpus
ABL.	cōnsule	leōne	virgine	nōmine	corpore
PLUR.					
N., V.	cōnsulēs	leōnēs	virginēs	nōmina	corpora
GEN.	cōnsulum	leōnum	virginum	nōminum	corporum
DAT.	cōnsulibus	leōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus	corporibus
ACC.	cōnsulēs	leōnēs	virginēs	nōmina	corpora
ABL.	cōnsulibus	leōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus	corporibus

2. In like manner decline : —

<i>homo, inis</i> (M.), <i>man.</i>	<i>ōrātiō, ōnis</i> (F.), <i>discourse.</i>
<i>mulier, eris</i> (F.), <i>woman.</i>	<i>fulgur, uris</i> (N.), <i>lightning.</i>
<i>pulvis, eris</i> (M.), <i>dust.</i>	<i>fulmen, inis</i> (N.), <i>thunderbolt.</i>
<i>honor (ōs), ōris</i> (M.), <i>honor.</i>	<i>genus, eris</i> (N.), <i>race, birth.</i>
<i>pater, tris</i> (M.), <i>father.</i>	<i>iter, itineris, (N.), journey.</i>

a. In these nouns the Stem ends in a *liquid* (l, n, r).

b. The nominative is *the same as the stem* (sometimes changing the vowel) ; but *n* in masculine and feminine nouns is dropped in the nominative, and some *apparently* *r*-stems have *s* (§ 11, ii. d).

c. Nouns in *o*, *ōnis* (as *leo*), are Masculine. Those in *io*, *iōnis*, are also masculine in many names of *visible objects*, as *scipio*, *a staff* ; but when *abstract* or *collective* — as *prōditio*, *treason* ; *legio*, *legion* — they are Feminine.

d. These four, *imber*, *linter*, *ūter*, *venter*, with *glīs*, *mās*, *mūs*, *rēn*, have the genitive plural in *ium* (see page 14).

Examples.

1. Hominēs vāna glōriæ imāgo tenet.
2. Nēmo vērē aestimat tempus.
3. Genus ex altō sanguine deōrum habēmus.
4. Mīra fulminis opera sunt. Fulmina fātōrum ordinem nuntiānt ; oleī et unguentī tēter post fulmen odor est.

## PART THIRD.

## 1. Decline the following : —

SING.	<i>tower</i> (F.).	<i>cloud</i> (F.).	<i>sea</i> (N.).	<i>animal</i> (N.).	<i>city</i> (F.).
N., V.	turris	nūbēs	mare	animal	urbs
GEN.	turris	nūbis	maris	animālis	urbis
DAT.	turrī ✓	nūbī	marī	animālī	urbī
ACC.	turrem (im)	nūbem	mare	animal	urbem
ABL.	turre (ī)	nūbe	marī	animālī	urbe
PLUR.					
N., V.	turrēs	nūbēs	maria	animālia	urbēs
GEN.	turrium ✓	nūbium	marium	animālium	urbium
DAT.	turribus	nūbibus	maribus	animālibus	urbibus
ACC.	turrēs (īs)	nūbēs (īs)	maria	animālia	urbēs (īs)
ABL.	turribus ✓	nūbibus	maribus	animālibus	urbibus

## 2. In like manner decline : —

ovis, is (F.), <i>sheep</i> .	calcar, āris (N.), <i>spur</i> .
clādēs, is (F.), <i>disaster</i> .	pars, partis (F.), <i>part</i> .
imber, bris (M.), <i>rain-storm</i> .	mūs, mūris (M.), <i>mouse</i> .

a. Nouns of this class are called *vowel* or *i-stems*. They are,  
 1. Those in *is, ēs* (mostly F.), with neuters in *e, al, ar*; 2. Mono-  
 syllables with *stem ending in two consonants*; 3. Most nouns in  
*ns* or *rs*, some in *ās*, with a few of one syllable. They are thus  
 distinguished : —

1. All have the gen. plur. in *ium*; 2. Neuters have nom. and acc. plur. in *ia*;  
 3. The acc. plur. (M. or F.) is often written *īs*; 4. A few in the acc. sing. end in  
*im*; 5. The abl. sing. of all neuters, and of many M. or F., ends in *ī*.

b. Masculine endings of this declension are *o, or, ōs, er, ēs*;  
 feminine are *ās, ēs, is, ys, x*; *do, go, io, ūs*; neuter are *a, e, i, y*;  
*c, t, l*; *men, ar, ur, ūs*.

## 3. Decline the following, of peculiar inflection : —

SING.	<i>ox</i> , C.	<i>old man</i> , M.	<i>flesh</i> , F.	<i>bone</i> , N.	<i>force</i> , F.	<i>swine</i> , C.
N., V	bōs	sēnex	caro	ōs	vīs	sūs
GEN.	bōvis	senis	carnis	ossis	vīs (rare)	suis
DAT.	bovī	senī	carnī	ossi	—	suī
ACC.	bovem	senem	carnem	os	vīm	suem
ABL.	bove	sene	carne	osse	vī	sue
PLUR.	<i>cattle</i> .				<i>strength</i> .	
N., A., V.	bovēs	senēs	carnēs	ossa	virēs	suēs
GEN.	bovm	senum	—	ossium	virium	suum
DAT., ABL.	bōbus	senibus	carnibus	ossibus	viribus	sūbus
	(būbus)					(suibus)

# Lesson 10.

## Adjectives of the Third Declension.

### PART FIRST.

LEARN the following inflections : —

SING.	M., F. <i>light.</i>	N.	M. <i>keen.</i>	F.	N.
N., V.	lēvis	lēve	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN.	levis	levis	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT.	levī	levī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	levem	leve	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL.	levī	levī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
PLUR.					
N., V.	levēs	levia	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	levium	levium	ācrum	ācrum	ācrum
DAT.	levibus	levibus	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	levēs (īs)	levia	ācrēs (īs)	ācrēs (īs)	ācria
ABL.	levibus	levibus	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Adjectives declined like *levis* are called *adjectives of two terminations*.

Twelve adjectives, — *ācer*, *alācer*, *campester*, *celeber*, *equester*, *palūster*, *puter*, *salūber*, *silvester*, *terrester*, *volūcer*, with *celer*, *celeris*, *celere* — are declined like *levis*, except that the masculine nominative and vocative singular end in *er*. They are called *adjectives of three terminations*.

### PART SECOND.

I. Decline the following : —

SING.	M., F. <i>fierce.</i>	N	M., F. <i>needy.</i>	N.
N., V.	atrōx		egēns	
GEN.	atrōcis		egentis	
DAT.	atrōcī		egentī	
ACC.	atrōcem	atrōx	egentem	egēns
ABL.	atrōce or atrōcī		egente or egentī	
PLUR.				
N., V.	atrōcēs	atrōcia	egentēs	egentia
GEN.	atrōcium		egentium	
DAT.	atrōcibus		egentibus	
ACC.	atrōcēs (īs)	atrōcia	egentēs (īs)	egentia
ABL.	atrōcibus		egentibus	

SING.	M., F. <i>rich.</i>	N.	M., F. <i>fertile.</i>	N.	M., F. <i>old.</i>	N.
N., V.	<i>dīves</i>		<i>ūber</i>		<i>vetus</i>	
GEN.	<i>dīvitīs</i>		<i>ūberis</i>		<i>veteris</i>	
DAT.	<i>dīvitī</i>		<i>ūberī</i>		<i>veterī</i>	
ACC.	<i>dīvitē</i> <i>dīves</i>		<i>ūberē</i> <i>ūber</i>		<i>veterē</i> <i>vetus</i>	
ABL.	<i>dīvite</i> (N)		<i>ūbere</i> (I)		<i>vetere</i> (I)	
PLUR.						
N., V.	<i>dīvitēs</i> [ <i>dītia</i> ]		<i>ūberēs</i> <i>ūbera</i>		<i>veterēs</i> <i>vetera</i>	
GEN.	<i>dīvitum</i>		<i>ūberum</i>		<i>veterum</i>	
DAT.	<i>dīvitibus</i>		<i>ūberibus</i>		<i>veteribus</i>	
ACC.	<i>dīvitēs</i> [ <i>dītia</i> ]		<i>ūberēs</i> <i>ūbera</i>		<i>veterēs</i> <i>vetera</i>	
ABL.	<i>dīvitibus</i>		<i>ūberibus</i>		<i>veteribus</i>	

a. These are called *adjectives of one termination*, having only one form in the nominative singular.

b. When used as nouns, they have the ablative singular in *e*; otherwise more commonly in *i*.

c. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension with the ending *ter* or *iter*; as, *leviter*, *lightly*; *atrōciter*, *fiercely*.

## 2. Decline the following Comparatives:—

SING.	M., F. <i>better.</i>	N.	M., F. <i>more.</i>	N.
N., V.	<i>melior</i>	<i>melius</i>	—	<i>plūs</i>
GEN.	<i>meliōris</i>		—	<i>plūris</i>
DAT.	<i>meliōrī</i>		—	—
ACC.	<i>meliōrē</i>	<i>melius</i>	—	<i>plūs</i>
ABL.	<i>meliōre</i> or <i>ī</i>		—	<i>plūre</i>
PLUR.				
N., V.	<i>meliōrēs</i>	<i>meliōra</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
GEN.	<i>meliōrum</i>		<i>plūrium</i>	
DAT.	<i>meliōribus</i>		<i>plūribus</i>	
ACC.	<i>meliōrēs</i>	<i>meliōra</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
ABL.	<i>meliōribus</i>		<i>plūribus</i>	

a. The singular *plūs* is used only as a neuter noun; the genitive (rarely ablative), as an expression of value.

b. The neut. sing. acc. of comparatives is used as an adverb: as, *levius*, *more lightly*; *atrōcius*, *more fiercely*.

### Examples.

1. Viri fortēs perīcula nōn timēt.
2. Nōn omnis via brevis est facilis.
3. Custōs es pauperis hortī.

See EXERCISE, page 53.

## Lesson II.

## Comparison of Adjectives.

1. The Comparative is formed by adding **ior**, and the Superlative by adding **issimus**, to the stem of the positive: as,

**altus**, *high*; **altior**, *higher*; **altissimus**, *highest*.

**levis**, *light*; **levior**; **levissimus**.

**atrōx**, *fierce*; **atrōcior**; **atrōcissimus**.

**egēns**, *needy*; **egēntior**; **egēntissimus**.

N. B. If the stem ends in a vowel, this vowel is dropped before these terminations. For the inflection of comparatives, see p. 16.

a. Adjectives in **er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus**: as,

**miser**, **miserior**, **miserrimus**;

**ācer**, **ācrior**, **ācerrimus**.

b. The following form the superlative by adding **-limus**: *facilis*, *difficilis*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *gracilis*, *humilis*: as,

**similis**, *like*; **similior**, **simillimus**.

c. The following are compared irregularly:—

**bonus**, **melior**, **optimus**, *good, better, best*.

**malus**, **pējor** (**pēior**), **pessimus**, *bad, worse, worst*.

**magnus**, **mājor** (**māior**), **maximus**, *great, greater, greatest*.

**parvus**, **minor**, **minimus**, *small, smaller, smallest*.

**multus** (N.), **plūs**, **plūrimus**, *much, more, most*.

**multī**, **plūrēs**, **plūrimī**, *many, more, most*.

For other irregular and defective forms, see Grammar, pp. 39, 40.

2. Adverbs formed from adjectives are compared as follows:—

**altus**, *high*: **altē**, **altius**, **altissimē**.

**miser**, *wretched*: **miserē**, **miserius**, **miserrimē**.

**levis**, *light*: **leviter**, **levius**, **levissimē**.

**similis**, *like*: **similiter**, **similius**, **simillimē**.

**bonus**, *good*: **benē**, **melius**, **optimē**.

**malus**, *bad*: **malē**, **pējus**, **pessimē**.

RULE.— *The comparative degree may be followed by the ablative*: as,

**ēloquentior** **Cicerōne**, *more eloquent than Cicero*.

See EXERCISE, page 54.

## Lesson 12.

## Fourth and Fifth Declensions.

## I. Decline the following : —

SING.	<i>hand</i> (F.).	<i>lake</i> (M.).	<i>house</i> (F.)	<i>knee</i> (N.).	<i>day</i> (M.).
N., V.	<b>manus</b>	<b>lacus</b>	<b>domus</b>	<b>genū</b>	<b>diēs</b>
GEN.	manūs	lacūs	domūs	genū( <b>ūs</b> )	diēi ✓
DAT.	manūi	lacui	domui	genū ✓	diēi ✓
ACC.	manum	lacum	domum	genū	diem
ABL.	manū	lacū	domō	genū	diē
PLUR.					
N., V.	manūs	lacūs	domūs	genua	diēs
GEN.	manuum	lacuum	domōrum	genuum	diērum
DAT.	manibus	lacubus	domibus	genibus	diēbus
ACC.	manūs	lacūs	domōs	genua	diēs
ABL.	manibus	lacubus	domibus	genibus	diēbus

a. The following nouns of the fourth declension have the dative and ablative plural in **-ubus**: *artus*, *partus*, *portus*, *tribus*, *veru*; with dissyllables in **-cus** (as *lacus*). Most in **us** are masculine.

b. *Domus*, *house*, has all the forms of the fourth declension; but the most usual are those given above. It has also the locative **domi** (sometimes **domui**), *at home*.

c. Most nouns of the Fifth Declension want the plural. The only ones complete in their inflection are **diēs**, *day*, and **rēs**, *thing*. All are feminine except **diēs**, (generally masc.), and **merīdiēs** (M.).

See EXERCISE, page 56.

## Lesson 13.

## Pronouns: 1. Personal and Demonstrative.

## PART FIRST.

The Personal Pronouns are thus declined: —

	FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.	
NOM.	<b>ego</b> , <i>I</i>	<b>nōs</b> , <i>we</i>	<b>tū</b> , <i>thou</i>	<b>vōs</b> , <i>ye or you</i>
GEN.	<b>mei</b> , <i>of me</i>	<b>nōstrum</b> , <b>trī</b> = <i>of us</i>	<b>tui</b>	<b>vestrum</b> , <b>trī</b>
DAT.	<b>mihi</b> , <i>to me</i>	<b>nōbīs</b> , <i>to us</i>	<b>tibi</b>	<b>vōbīs</b>
ACC.	<b>mē</b> , <i>me</i>	<b>nōs</b> , <i>us</i>	<b>tē</b>	<b>vōs</b>
VOC.	—	—	<b>tū</b>	<b>vōs</b>
ABL.	<b>mē</b> , <i>by me</i>	<b>nōbīs</b> , <i>by us</i>	<b>tē</b>	<b>vōbīs</b>

a. These are also used reflexively: as, **tē laudās**, *you praise yourself*.



b. The pronouns of the Third Person — *he, she, it, they* — are wanting in Latin; a demonstrative being sometimes used.

c. The Reflexive pronoun of the third person is the same in the singular and plural: viz.,

GEN.	suī,	<i>of himself, herself, themselves.</i>		
✓ DAT.	sibi,	to	„	„
ACC.	sē or sēsē	„	„	„
ABL.	„	„ with	„	„

N. B. — The Reflexive pronoun should not be confounded with the intensive *ipse*; thus, *ipse sē laudat*, *he [himself] praises himself.*

d. The genitives *nōstrum, vēstrum*, are used *partitively*: as, *ūnus nōstrum*, *one of us*; while *meī, tuī, suī, nōstri, vēstri*, are used *objectively*: as, *memor es nōstri*, *be mindful of us.*

e. For the genitive of *possession*, the adjectives *meus, tuus, suus, nōster, vēster*, are always used. They may stand in apposition with a genitive in any case: as,

*nōstra omnium patria*, *the country of us all.*

✓ f. The preposition *cum*, *with*, is joined *enclitically* with the ablative of the personal pronouns: as,

*vōbiscum loquitur*, *he speaks with you.*

g. The personal or demonstrative pronouns are in general used only for the sake of distinction or emphasis: as,

*tē voco*, *I call you*; but —

*quis mē vocat? ego tē voco*: *who calls me? it is I.*

# PART SECOND.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are thus declined: —

	<i>this.</i>			<i>that.</i>		
SING.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	✓ hic	haec	hōc	✓ is	ea	id
GEN.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	ējus	ējus	ējus
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	eī	eī	eī
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hōc	eum	eam	id
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	eō	eā	eō
PLUR.	<i>these.</i>			<i>those.</i>		
NOM.	hī	hae	haec	iī (eī)	eae	ea
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	✓ eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	hīs	hīs	hīs		eīs or iīs	
ACC.	hōs	hās	haec	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	hīs	hīs	hīs		eīs or iīs	

	<i>that.</i>			<i>self.</i>		
SING.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
GEN.	illius	illius	illius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
VOC.		—		ipse	ipsa	ipsum
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

Like *ille* decline *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, *that* (*yonder*).

The Plural of these words is regular, like that of *bonus*: as,  
*illī*, *illae*, *illa*, *those*, &c.

	SING.			<i>the same.</i>	PLUR.	
N.	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>iīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
G.	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
D.	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>		<i>eīdem</i> or <i>iīdem</i>	
A.	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
A.	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>		<i>eīdem</i> or <i>iīdem</i>	

The demonstrative pronouns are often used in the oblique cases as personal pronouns of the third person (see p. 19, *b*): as,

*eum et frātre*m *ējus* *video*, *I see him and his brother*.

See EXERCISE, page 57.

## Lesson 14.

Pronouns: Relative, Interrogative, &c.

I. The Relative Pronoun is thus declined: —

	SINGULAR.			<i>who, which.</i>	PLURAL.	
NOM.	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
GEN.	<i>cūjus</i>	<i>cūjus</i>	<i>cūjus</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
ACC.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
ABL.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

a. The affix *-cumque* (or *-cunque*), *-soever*, may be added to any relative word: as, *quicumque*, *whoever*; *ubicumque*, *wherever*; *quālisicumque*, *of whatever sort*.

b. The preposition *cum* is affixed to the ablative of *quī* as to the personal pronouns: as, *quōcum*, *quibuscum*, *with whom*.

c. The forms of the Relative are also Interrogative, as in English; but when used *substantively*, *quis* is used for *quī*, and *quid* for *quod*: as,

*quis vocat?* *who calls?* *quid vidēs?* *what do you see?* but —  
*quī* (or *quis*) *homo vocat?* *quod templum vidēs?*

2. COMPOUNDS of **quī** or **quis** are thus declined : —

✓ a. In the compounds **quīdam**, *some one* ; **quicumque**, *whoever* ; **quīvis**, **quīlibet**, **quispiam**, **quisquam**, *any one* ; the former part is declined like **quī** or **quis**.

✓ b. The compounds **aliquis**, *some* ; **sīquis**, *if any* ; **nēquis**, *lest any* ; **ecquis**, **numquis**, *whether any*, are declined as follows : —

	SINGULAR.	<i>some.</i>	PLURAL.
N.	aliquis <del>aliqua</del>	aliquid	aliqui aliquae <u>aliqua</u>
G.	alicujus	aliquorum	aliquarum <u>aliquorum</u>
D.	alicui		aliquibus
A.	aliquem <del>aliquam</del>	aliquid	aliquos <u>aliquas</u> <del>aliqua</del>
A.	aliquo <del>aliqua</del>	aliquo	aliquibus

✓ c. Of **quisquis**, *whoever*, both parts are declined ; but the feminine and most plural forms are wanting.

3. CORRELATIVES. — Many *pairs of words*, demonstrative and relative, are used in corresponding parts of a sentence (see the lists in § 22) : as,

**tantus** . . . **quantus**, *as great* . . . *as*.

**tālis** . . . **quālis**, *such* . . . *as*.

**tot** . . . **quot**, *as many* . . . *as*.

RULE. — *A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER and NUMBER ; but its CASE depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.*

See EXERCISE, page 59.

## Lesson 15.

### Numerals.

The following list of Cardinal and Ordinal numbers should be gradually committed to memory : —

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ROMAN NUMERALS.
1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>one</i> .	primus, a, um, <i>first</i> .	I.
2. duo, duæ, duo, <i>two</i> .	secundus (alter), <i>second</i> .	II.
✓ 3. trēs, tria, <i>three, &amp;c.</i>	tertius, <i>third, &amp;c.</i>	III.
4. quattuor	quartus	IV.
5. quinque	quintus	V.
6. sex	sextus	VI.
7. septem	septimus	VII.
8. octo	octāvus	VIII.
9. novem	nōnus	IX.
✓ 10. decem	decimus	X.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ROMAN NUMERALS.
11. undĕcim	ūndecimus	XI.
12. duodecim	duodecim	XII.
13. tredecim	tertius decimus	XIII.
14. quattuordecim	quartus decimus	XIV.
15. quindecim	quintus decimus	XV.
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI.
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII.
18. duodēvigintī (octōdecim)	duodēvicēsimum	XVIII.
19. ūndēvigintī (novendecim)	undēvicēsimum	XIX.
20. vīgintī	vicēsimum (vigēsimum)	XX.
30. trigintā	trīcēsimum ( <i>trigēsimum</i> )	XXX.
40. quādrāgintā	quadrāgēsimum	XL.
50. quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimum	L.
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimum	LX.
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimum	LXX.
80. octōgintā	octōgēsimum	LXXX.
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimum	XC.
100. centum	centēsimum	C.
200. ducentī, æ, a	ducentēsimum	CC.
300. trecentī	trecentēsimum	CCC.
400. quādringentī	quadringentēsimum	CCCC.
500. quingentī	quingentēsimum	IC, or D.
600. sexcentī	sexcentēsimum	DC.
700. septingentī	septingentēsimum	DCC.
800. octīngentī	octīngentēsimum	DCCC.
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsimum	DCCCC.
1000. mille	millēsimum	CIC, or M.

a. The inflection of **ūnus** and **duo** will be found in Lesson 5. That of **trēs** is like the plural of **levis**. The other Cardinal numbers, up to 100, are not declined; the hundreds, up to 1000, are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

b. **Mille**, a thousand, is not declined; **millia** (**mīlia**), thousands, is declined as a noun, like the plural of **mare**. Thus we say —

**cum mille hominibus**, with a thousand men; but —  
**cum duōbus millibus** (**mīlibus**) **hominum**; or,  
**cum bis mille hominibus**, with two thousand men.

c. The following are called **DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS**, and are inflected like the plural of **bonus** : —

1. singulī, one by one.	5. quīnī	9. novēnī
2. binī, two-and-two.	6. sēnī	10. dēnī
3. ternī, trīnī, by threes.	7. septēnī	11. ūndēnī
4. quaternī, by fours, &c.	8. octōnī	12. duodēnī

For the use of Distributives, see § 18, 2. a, b, c, d.

d. The following are **Numeral Adverbs** : —

1. <b>semel</b> , once.	3. <b>ter</b>	5. <b>quinqūiēs</b> ( <b>ēns</b> )
2. <b>bis</b> , twice.	4. <b>quater</b>	6. <b>sexiēs</b> ( <b>ēns</b> ), etc.

## Lesson 16.

Verbs: 1. Moods and Tenses.

## 1. There are four MOODS of the Latin verb: —

a. The INDICATIVE is used for *direct assertions* or *interrogations*: as, **vēnī, vidī, vīcī**, *I came, saw, conquered*.

b. The SUBJUNCTIVE is used chiefly in *commands, conditions, and dependent clauses*; as, **eāmus**, *let us go*; **sī adessēs**, *if you were here*; **adsum ut videam**, *I am here that I may see*.

N. B. — For the special uses of the Subjunctive, see “Constructions of Syntax,” pages 99–119.

c. The IMPERATIVE is used for *exhortation* or *command*: as, **adeste puerī**, *come, boys!* but its place is often supplied by the Subjunctive; in *prohibitions*, the perf. subj. is used with **nē**.

d. The INFINITIVE is used chiefly as the subject or object of another verb; as, **hūmānum est errāre**, *to err is human*; **volo vidēre**, *I wish to see*; **jubeo tē venīre**, *I bid you come*.

## 2. There are four PARTICIPLES: —

a. The PRESENT participle ends in **āns** or **ēns**: as, **vocāns**, *calling*; **legēns**, *reading*.

b. The FUTURE participle ends in **ūrus**, and is used to express purpose: as, **vēnit audītūrus**, *he came to hear*. As an adjective, it expresses what is likely or about to happen: as, **urbs est cāsūra**, *the city is about to fall*.

c. The PERFECT participle ends in **tus** or **sus**: as, **tectus**, *sheltered*. It is chiefly used with **esse** to form certain tenses in the passive: as, **vocātus est**, *he has been called, or was called*.

d. The GERUNDIVE ends in **dus**, and is used in the oblique cases in such phrases as —

**pācis petendae causā**, *for the sake of seeking peace* (§ 73, 3).

As an adjective, it expresses that which ought to be or must be done: as, **dēlēnda est Karthāgo**, *Carthage must be destroyed*.

## 3. The verb has also the following noun-forms: —

a. The GERUND is a verbal noun, in **dī, dō, dum**, corresponding to the English participial noun in **-ING**: as, **loquendī causā**, *for the sake of speaking*.

b. The SUPINES are verbal nouns ending in **um** and **ū**, usually translated by the English infinitive: as, **vēnit spectātum**, *he came to look*; **mirābile dictū**, *wonderful to tell*.

4. There are six TENSES; three of *incomplete* and three of *completed action*: viz.,

a. PRESENT: as, *adsum*, *here I am*; *diū aegrōto*, *I am* [and have long been] *sick*.

b. The IMPERFECT is used chiefly for *description*, or for *continued or repeated action*; as, *dicēbat*, *he said, was saying*, or *used to say*; *mōns impendēbat*, *a mountain overhung*.

c. FUTURE: as, *veniet*, *he will come*.

d. The PERFECT is either *definite* or *historical*: as, *vocāvit*, *he has called* (definite); or, *he called* (historical).

e. PLUPERFECT: as, *vēnerat*, *he had come*.

f. FUTURE PERFECT: as, *cum vēnero scribam*, *when I come* (shall have come), *I will write*.

NOTE.—The Future and Future Perfect are wanting in the Subjunctive; but are sometimes supplied by the future participle with the tenses of *esse*.

## Lesson 17.

Verbs: 2. The verb *ESSE*, *to be*.

PRESENT. INFIN. PERF. FUT. PART.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *sum esse fuī futūrus*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SING. 1.	<i>sum, I am.</i>	<i>sim, may I be!</i> <sup>1</sup> ( <i>I am, may or</i>
2.	<i>ēs, thou art (you are).</i>	<i>sīs, may you be.</i> [ <i>would be, &amp;c.</i> ]
3.	<i>est, he (she, it) is.</i>	<i>sit, let him be (may he be).</i>
PLUR. 1.	<i>sumus, we are.</i>	<i>sīmus, let us be.</i>
2.	<i>estis, you are.</i>	<i>sītis, may ye be.</i>
3.	<i>sunt, they are.</i>	<i>sīnt, let them be (may they be).</i>

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1.	<i>eram, I was.</i>	<i>essem, I should be.</i> <sup>2</sup>
2.	<i>erās, you were.</i>	<i>essēs, you would be.</i>
3.	<i>erat, he (she, it) was.</i>	<i>esset, he would be.</i>
PLUR. 1.	<i>erāmus, we were.</i>	<i>essēmus, we should be.</i>
2.	<i>erātis, you were.</i>	<i>essētis, you would be.</i>
3.	<i>erānt, they were.</i>	<i>essēnt, they would be.</i>

1. *si sim*, if I should be; *cum sim*, since I am.

2. *si essem*, if I were; *cum essem*, when (or since) I was.

3. *si fuerim*, if I should have been; *cum fuerim*, since I was.

4. *si fuissem*, if I had been; *cum fuissem*, when (or since) I had been.

FUTURE.

SING. 1.	ero, <i>I shall be.</i>	[futūrus sim]
2.	eris, <i>thou wilt be (you will be).</i>	
3.	erit, <i>he will be.</i>	
PLUR. 1.	erimus, <i>we shall be.</i>	
2.	eritis, <i>you will be.</i>	
3.	erunt, <i>they will be.</i>	

PERFECT.

SING. 1.	fui, <i>I was (have been).</i>	fuerim, <i>I may have</i>
2.	fuisti, <i>you were.</i>	fueris [been. <sup>3</sup> ]
3.	fuit, <i>he was.</i>	fuerit
PLUR. 1.	fuimus, <i>we were.</i>	fuerimus
2.	fuistis, <i>you were.</i>	fueritis
3.	fuērunt, <i>they were.</i>	fuerint
	or fuēre.	

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1.	fueram, <i>I had been</i>	fuissem, <i>I should have</i>
2.	fuerās, <i>you had been.</i>	fuissēs [been. <sup>4</sup> ]
3.	fuerat, <i>he had been.</i>	fuisset
PLUR. 1.	fuerāmus, <i>we had been.</i>	fuissēmus
2.	fuerātis, <i>you had been.</i>	fuissētis
3.	fuerānt, <i>they had been.</i>	fuissēnt

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1.	fuiro, <i>I shall have been.</i>
2.	fueris, <i>you will have been.</i>
3.	fuerit, <i>he will have been.</i>
PLUR. 1.	fuerimus, <i>we shall have been.</i>
2.	fueritis, <i>you will have been.</i>
3.	fuerint, <i>they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	ēs, <i>be thou.</i>	este, <i>be ye.</i>
FUTURE.	esto, <i>thou shalt be.</i>	estōte, <i>ye shall be.</i>
	esto, <i>he shall be.</i>	sunto, <i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	esse, <i>to be.</i>
PERFECT.	fuisse, <i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE.	fōre or futūrus esse, <i>to be about to be.</i>
FUTURE PARTICIPLE.	futūrus, a, um, <i>about to be.</i>

The verb *esse* is joined with the adjective *potis*, *able*, making the compound *possum*, *I can (am able)*. It is also compounded with *prō* (*prōd*), *for*, in *prōsum*, *I benefit or help*, and with several other prepositions. These compounds are inflected as follows : —

PRESENT.			
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>possum, I can.</i>	<i>possim</i>	<i>prōsum, I help.</i>	<i>prōsim</i>
<i>potes, you can.</i>	<i>possis</i>	<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōsis</i>
<i>potest, he can.</i>	<i>possit</i>	<i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsit</i>
<i>possumus, we can.</i>	<i>possimus</i>	<i>prōsumus</i>	<i>prōsimus</i>
<i>potestis, you can.</i>	<i>possitis</i>	<i>prōdestis</i>	<i>prōsitis</i>
<i>possunt, they can.</i>	<i>possint</i>	<i>prōsunt</i>	<i>prōsint</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>poteram, I could.</i>	<i>possem</i>	<i>prōderam</i>	<i>prōdessem</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>potero, I shall be able.</i>		<i>prōdero, I shall help.</i>	
PERFECT.			
<i>potui, I could.</i>	<i>potuerim</i>	<i>prōfui, I helped.</i>	<i>prōfuerim</i>
PLUPERFECT.			
<i>potueram</i>	<i>potuissem</i>	<i>prōfueram</i>	<i>prōfuissem</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.			
<i>potuëro, I shall have been able.</i>		<i>prōfuëro, I shall have helped.</i>	
IMPERATIVE.			
—		<i>prōdes, prōdesto, &amp;c.</i>	
INFINITIVE.			
PR. <i>posse</i>	PERF. <i>potuisse</i>	PR. <i>prōdesse</i>	PERF. <i>prōfuisse</i>
PARTICIPLES.			
<i>potēns</i> (adj.), <i>powerful.</i>		<i>prōfutūrus</i> , <i>about to help.</i>	

## Lesson 18.

### Verbs : 3. The Four Conjugations.

1. VERBS are inflected in four regular Conjugations, distinguished by the vowel before *-re* in the Infinitive : viz., 1. *āre*; 2. *ēre*; 3. *ěre*; 4. *īre*.

2. The Principal Parts of the verb, from which all the others are found, are —

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. The PRESENT INDICATIVE ; | 3. The PERFECT INDICATIVE ; |
| 2. The PRESENT INFINITIVE ; | 4. The SUPINE.              |



a. The regular forms of conjugation are these : —

1. amo, amāre, amāvī, amātum, to love.
2. dēleo, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, to destroy.
3. carpo, carpēre, carpsī, carptum, to pluck.
4. audio, audīre, audīvī, auditum, to hear.

b. In the second conjugation, a more common form is the following (omitting ē in the perfect and supine) : —

moneo, monēre, monuī, monitum, to warn.

c. The Perfect stem is sometimes the same as the present ; but it is usually changed in one of the following ways : —

1. By lengthening the vowel : as, lego, lēgī ; capio, cēpī.
2. By reduplication : as, cado, cecidī ; tondeo, totondī.
3. By adding s : as, carpo, carpsī ; dūco, dūxī ; tego, texī.
4. By adding u : as, domo, domuī ; aperio, aperuī.
5. By adding v (u) preceded by the vowel of conjugation (see page 10) : as, amo, amāvī ; audio, audīvī. This is found in almost all verbs of the first and fourth conjugations ; but the v is often dropped and the syllable contracted : as, amārat, audierat, for amāverat, audiverat ; amāsse, audisse (or audiisse), for amāvisse, audivisse.

d. The Supine stem is generally formed by adding t or s : as, dīco, dictum ; cado, cāsum ; flecto, flexum (see p. 12, c).

e. The SYNOPSIS of a verb consists of the *first person singular* of each tense, with infinitive and participles, given in regular order : as of āmo, I love —

(Present Stem.)		ACTIVE VOICE.	(Perfect Stem.)
INDIC.	amo, amābam, amābo	amāvī, amāveram, amāvero	
SUBJ.	amem, amārem	amāverim, amāvissem	
IMPER.	amā, amāto	—	
INFIN.	amāre	amāvisse	
		PASSIVE VOICE.	(Supine Stem.)
INDIC.	amor, amābar, amābor	amātus sum, — eram, — ero	
SUBJ.	amer, amārer	amātus sim, — essem	
IMPER.	amāre, amātor	—	
INFIN.	amārī	amātus esse, amātum irī	
PARTICIPLES.			
ACT.	amāns	amātūrus	
PASS.	amāndus	amātus	

## Lesson 19.

## Regular Verb ; First Conjugation.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.    INFIN.    PERFECT.    SUPINE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **amo amāre amāvī amātum**

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, *I love, or am loving. May I love* (see p. 24).

SING. 1.	<b>amo</b> , <i>I love.</i>	<b>amem</b>
2.	<b>amās</b> , <i>you love.</i>	<b>amēs</b>
3.	<b>amat</b> , <i>he (she, it) loves.</i>	<b>amet</b>
PLUR. 1.	<b>amāmus</b> , <i>we love.</i>	<b>amēmus</b>
2.	<b>amātis</b> , <i>you love.</i>	<b>amētis</b>
3.	<b>amānt</b> , <i>they love.</i>	<b>amēnt</b>

IMPERFECT, *I loved (used to love). I should love.*

SING. 1.	<b>amābam</b> , <i>I loved.</i>	<b>amārem</b>
2.	<b>amābās</b> , <i>you loved.</i>	<b>amārēs</b>
3.	<b>amābat</b> , <i>he loved.</i>	<b>amāret</b>
PLUR. 1.	<b>amābāmus</b> , <i>we loved.</i>	<b>amārēmus</b>
2.	<b>amābātis</b> , <i>you loved.</i>	<b>amārētis</b>
3.	<b>amābānt</b> , <i>they loved.</i>	<b>amārēnt</b>

FUTURE, *I shall love.*

SING. 1.	<b>amābo</b> , <i>I shall love,</i>
2.	<b>amābis</b> , <i>you will love.</i>
3.	<b>amābit</b> , <i>he will love.</i>
PLUR. 1.	<b>amābimus</b> , <i>we shall love.</i>
2.	<b>amābitis</b> , <i>you will love.</i>
3.	<b>amābunt</b> , <i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT, *I loved (have loved.)**I may have loved.*

SING. 1.	<b>amāvī</b> , <i>I loved.</i>	<b>amāverim</b>
2.	<b>amāvistī</b> , <i>you loved.</i>	<b>amāveris</b>
3.	<b>amāvit</b> , <i>he loved.</i>	<b>amāverit</b>
PLUR. 1.	<b>amāvimus</b> , <i>we loved.</i>	<b>amāverimus</b>
2.	<b>amāvistis</b> , <i>you loved.</i>	<b>amāveritis</b>
3.	<b>amāverunt</b> ( <b>ēre</b> ), <i>they loved.</i>	<b>amāverint</b>

PLUPERFECT, *I had loved.**I should have loved.*

SING. 1.	<b>amāveram</b> , <i>I had loved.</i>	<b>amāvissem</b>
2.	<b>amāverās</b> , <i>you had loved.</i>	<b>amāvissēs</b>
3.	<b>amāverat</b> , <i>he had loved.</i>	<b>amāvisset</b>
PLUR. 1.	<b>amāverāmus</b> , <i>we had loved.</i>	<b>amāvissēmus</b>
2.	<b>amāverātis</b> , <i>you had loved.</i>	<b>amāvissētis</b>
3.	<b>amāverānt</b> , <i>they had loved.</i>	<b>amāvissēt</b>

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have loved.*

SING.	1.	amāvero, <i>I shall have loved.</i>	
	2.	amāveris, <i>you will have loved.</i>	
	3.	amāverit, <i>he will have loved.</i>	
PLUR.	1.	amāverimus, <i>we shall have loved.</i>	
	2.	amāveritis, <i>you will have loved.</i>	
	3.	amāverint, <i>they will have loved.</i>	
SINGULAR.		IMPERATIVE.	PLURAL.
PRES.	2.	amā, <i>love thou.</i>	amāte, <i>love ye.</i>
FUT.	2.	amātō, <i>thou shalt love.</i>	amātōte, <i>ye shall love.</i>
	3.	amātō, <i>he shall love.</i>	amānto, <i>they shall love.</i>

Noun and Adjective Forms.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	amāre, <i>to love.</i>
PERFECT.	amāvisse, or amāsse, <i>to have loved.</i>
FUTURE.	amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	amāns, āntis, <i>loving.</i>
FUTURE.	amātūrus, a, um, <i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

- G. amāndī, *of [the act or state of] loving.*  
 D. amāndō, *for loving (with adjectives).*  
 Ac. amāndum, *loving (with ad and inter).*  
 Ab. amāndō, *by loving.*

SUPINE.

ACC. amātum, *to love (with verbs of motion).*

### First Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	amātūrus sum	... sim, <i>I am about to love.</i>
IMPERF.	amātūrus eram	... essem, <i>I was about to love.</i>
FUT.	amātūrus ero	
PERF.	amātūrus fui	... fuerim
PLUP.	amātūrus fueram	... fuisset

### Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

PRES.	amāndus sum	... sim, <i>I am to be loved.</i>
IMPERF.	amāndus eram	... essem, <i>I was to be loved.</i>
FUT.	amāndus ero	
PERF.	amāndus fui	... fuerim
PLUP.	amāndus fueram	... fuisset

See EXERCISE, page 60.

## Lesson 20.

## Regular Verb: First Conjugation.

## 2. PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.      INFINITIVE.      PERFECT.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **amor      amārī      amātus sum**

## INDICATIVE.

PRESENT, *I am loved.*

- SING. 1. **amor**, *I am loved.*  
 2. **amāris** (re), *you are loved.*  
 3. **amātur**, *he is loved.*

- PLUR. 1. **amāmur**, *we are loved.*  
 2. **amāmini**, *you are loved.*  
 3. **amāntur**, *they are loved.*

IMPERFECT, *I was loved.*

- SING. 1. **amābar**, *I was loved.*  
 2. **amābāris** (re), *you were loved.*  
 3. **amābātur**, *he was loved.*

- PLUR. 1. **amābāmur**, *we were loved.*  
 2. **amābāmini**, *you were loved.*  
 3. **amābāntur**, *they were loved.*

FUTURE, *I shall be loved.*

- SING. 1. **amābor**, *I shall be loved.*  
 2. **amāberis** (re), *thou wilt (you will) be loved.*  
 3. **amābitur**, *he will be loved.*

- PLUR. 1. **amābimur**, *we shall be loved.*  
 2. **amābimini**, *you will be loved.*  
 3. **amābuntur**, *they will be loved.*

PERFECT, *I was (have been) loved.*

- SING. 1. **amātus sum**, *I was loved.*  
 2. **amātus es**, *you were loved.*  
 3. **amātus est**, *he was loved.*

- PLUR. 1. **amātī sumus**, *we were loved.*  
 2. **amātī estis**, *you were loved.*  
 3. **amātī sunt**, *they were loved.*

**amātus sim**  
**amātus sis**  
**amātus sit**

**amātī simus**  
**amātī sitis**  
**amātī sint**

PLUPERFECT, *I had been loved.*

- SING. 1. **amātus eram**, *I had been loved.*  
 2. **amātus erās**, *you had been loved.*  
 3. **amātus erat**, *he had been loved.*

- PLUR. 1. **amātī erāmus**, *we had been loved.*  
 2. **amātī erātis**, *you had been loved.*  
 3. **amātī erānt**, *they had been loved.*

**amātus essem**  
**amātus essēs**  
**amātus esset**

**amātī essēmus**  
**amātī essētis**  
**amātī essēnt**

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have been loved.*

- SING. 1. amātus **ero**, *I shall have been loved.*  
 2. amātus **eris**, *you will have been loved.*  
 3. amātus **erit**, *he will have been loved.*  
 PLUR. 1. amātī **erimus**, *we shall have been loved.*  
 2. amātī **eritis**, *you will have been loved.*  
 3. amātī **erunt**, *they will have been loved.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.

IMPERATIVE.

PLURAL.

- PRES. 2. amāre, *be thou loved.* amāminī, *be ye loved.*  
 FUT. 2. amātor, *thou shalt be loved.* —  
 3. amātor, *he shall be loved.* amāntor, *they shall be loved.*

Noun and Adjective Forms.

INFINITIVE.

- PRESENT. amārī, *to be loved.*  
 PERFECT. amātus esse, *to have been loved.*  
 FUTURE. amātum iri (amātus fore), *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

- PERFECT. amātus, *loved (beloved, or having been loved).*  
 GERUNDIVE. amāndus, a, um, *to-be-loved (lovely).*

SUPINE.

ABL. amātū, *to love or to be loved (with adjectives).*

a. In the tenses of *completed action* in the passive, — the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, — the participle (amātus, &c.) is treated as an adjective, agreeing in gender and number with the subject of the verb : as,

bellum parātum est, *war has been prepared.*

Gallī domitī erānt, *the Gauls had been subdued.*

nāvēs dēpressae sunt, *the ships were sunk.*

b. In the passive construction, the object of the action becomes subject, while the subject (or agent), if a person, or treated as a person (personified), is put in the ablative with the preposition ā or ab, BY ; if not a person, in the ablative alone : as,

Caesar domuit Gallōs, *Cæsar subdued the Gauls ;*

Gallī ā Caesare domitī sunt, *the Gauls were subdued by Cæsar ;*

famēs necat hominēs, *hunger destroys men ;*

hominēs famē necantur, *men are destroyed by hunger.*

c. An Intransitive verb may be used *impersonally*, in the third person singular of the passive : as,

pugnātum est, *there was fighting ;* lit. *it [a battle] was fought.*

See EXERCISE, page 62.

## Lesson 21.

## Regular Verb: First Conjugation.

## 3. NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS.

## 1. The following are the uses of the Infinitive:—

a. The Infinitive is used with verbs where the sense would be incomplete without another action *of the same subject*: as,

**cōsilia nōn possum mūtāre**, *I cannot change [my] plans.*

Such verbs are *to be able, dare, begin, cease, wish*, and the like.

b. The Infinitive is used *like the nominative of a neuter noun*, in such sentences as—

**scribere est ūtile**, *to write (writing) is useful.*

c. It is used *like the accusative of a neuter noun*, in such sentences as—

**hostēs parānt expugnāre oppidum**, *the enemy prepare to storm the town.*

d. In either of these uses, it may take as subject the accusative of a noun or pronoun: as,

**senem saltāre indecōrum est**, *for an old man to dance is unbecoming.*

**video tē esse claudum**, *I see that you are lame.*

Here the object of **video**, i.e. the thing seen, is really the substantive clause **tē esse claudum**, not the simple accusative **tē**.

**RULE.**—*The infinitive with subject-accusative is used with verbs or other expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, or perceiving*: as,

**rūmor erat Catilinam servōs armāsse**, *there was a report that Catiline had armed the slaves* (see page 114. a).

## 2. The following are special participial uses:—

a. The participle is often used to describe some circumstance: as,

**arāntem L. Quinctium lēgātī salūtāvērunt**, *the envoys saluted Lucius Quinctius while ploughing (at the plough).*

b. A noun and participle are used together in the ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action (*ablative absolute*): as,

**hostibus fugātis Caesar suōs revocāvit**, *when the enemy were put to flight, Cæsar called back his men* (see p. 121).

For the Participles, Gerund, and Supine, see page 23. 2, 3.

See EXERCISE, page 63.

## Lesson 22.

Regular Verb : Second Conjugation.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ACT. **moneo monēre monuī monitum**  
 PASS. **moneor monērī monitus sum**

INDIC. ACTIVE. SUBJ.	INDIC. PASSIVE. SUBJ.
PRESENT, <i>I warn.</i> <span style="float:right"><i>I am warned.</i></span>	
<b>moneo</b> , <i>I warn.</i>	<b>moneor</b>
<b>monēs</b> , <i>you warn.</i>	<b>monēris</b> (re)
<b>monet</b> , <i>he warns.</i>	<b>monētur</b>
<b>monēmus</b>	<b>monēmur</b>
<b>monētis</b>	<b>monēmini</b>
<b>monēnt</b>	<b>monēntur</b>
<b>monēam</b>	<b>monear</b>
<b>monēas</b>	<b>moneāris</b> (re)
<b>moneat</b>	<b>moneātur</b>
<b>monēāmus</b>	<b>moneāmur</b>
<b>monēātis</b>	<b>moneāmini</b>
<b>monēānt</b>	<b>moneāntur</b>
IMPERFECT, <i>I warned (was warning).</i> <span style="float:right"><i>I was warned.</i></span>	
<b>monēbam</b>	<b>monēbar</b>
<b>monēbās</b>	<b>monēbāris</b> (re)
<b>monēbat</b>	<b>monēbātur</b>
<b>monēbāmus</b>	<b>monēbāmur</b>
<b>monēbātis</b>	<b>monēbāmini</b>
<b>monēbānt</b>	<b>monēbāntur</b>
FUTURE, <i>I shall warn.</i> <span style="float:right"><i>I shall be warned.</i></span>	
<b>monēbo</b>	<b>monēbor</b>
<b>monēbis</b>	<b>monēberis</b> (re)
<b>monēbit</b>	<b>monēbitur</b>
<b>monēbimus</b>	<b>monēbimur</b>
<b>monēbitis</b>	<b>monēbimini</b>
<b>monēbunt</b>	<b>monēbuntur</b>

PERFECT, <i>I warned (have warned).</i> <span style="float:right"><i>I was (have been) warned.</i></span>			
<b>monuī</b>	<b>monuerim</b>	<b>monitus sum</b>	<b>monitus sim</b>
<b>monuistī</b>	<b>monueris</b>	<b>monitus es</b>	<b>monitus sis</b>
<b>monuit</b>	<b>monuerit</b>	<b>monitus est</b>	<b>monitus sit</b>
<b>monuimus</b>	<b>monuerimus</b>	<b>monitī sumus</b>	<b>monitī simus</b>
<b>monuistis</b>	<b>monueritis</b>	<b>monitī estis</b>	<b>monitī sitis</b>
<b>monuerunt</b> (re)	<b>monuerint</b>	<b>monitī sunt</b>	<b>monitī sint</b>

PLUPERFECT, <i>I had warned.</i> <span style="float:right"><i>I had been warned.</i></span>			
<b>monueram</b>	<b>monuissē</b>	<b>monitus eram</b>	<b>monitus essem</b>
<b>monuerās</b>	<b>monuissēs</b>	<b>monitus erās</b>	<b>monitus essēs</b>
<b>monuerat</b>	<b>monuisset</b>	<b>monitus erat</b>	<b>monitus esset</b>
<b>monuerāmus</b>	<b>monuissēmus</b>	<b>monitī erāmus</b>	<b>monitī essēmus</b>
<b>monuerātis</b>	<b>monuissētis</b>	<b>monitī erātis</b>	<b>monitī essētis</b>
<b>monuerānt</b>	<b>monuissēnt</b>	<b>monitī erānt</b>	<b>monitī essēnt</b>

FUT. PERF., <i>I shall have warned.</i> <span style="float:right"><i>I shall have been warned.</i></span>	
<b>monuero</b>	<b>monitus ero</b>
<b>monueris</b>	<b>monitus eris</b>
<b>monuerit</b>	<b>monitus erit</b>
<b>monuerimus</b>	<b>monitī erimus</b>
<b>monueritis</b>	<b>monitī eritis</b>
<b>monuerint</b>	<b>monitī erunt</b>

ACTIVE.		IMPERATIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
PR. monē, warn.		monēte	monēre		monēmini
F. monēto		monētōte	monētor	—	
monēto		monēnto	monētor		monēntor
INFINITIVE.					
PR. monēre	PF. monuisse	PR. monērī	PF. monitus esse		
F. monitūrus esse		F. monitum iri (monitus fore)			
PARTICIPLES.					
PR. monēns	FUT. monitūrus	PF. monitus	GER. monēndus		
G. monēndī, dō, dum		SUP. monitum	monitū		

See EXERCISE, page 65.

## Lesson 23.

Regular Verb: Third Conjugation.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ACT. **tego tegere texī tectum**  
 PASS. **tegor tegi tectus sum**

INDIC. ACTIVE.	SUBJ.	INDIC. PASSIVE.	SUBJ.
PRES., <i>I cover.</i>		<i>I am covered (covering myself).</i>	
tego, <i>I cover.</i>	tegam	tegor	tegar
tegis, <i>you cover.</i>	tegās	tegeris (re)	tegāris (re)
tegit, <i>he covers.</i>	tegat	tegitur	tegātur
tegitur, <i>we cover.</i>	tegāmur	tegitur	tegāmur
tegitis, <i>you cover.</i>	tegātis	tegitur	tegāmini
tegit, <i>they cover.</i>	tegant	tegitur	tegantur
IMP., <i>I covered (was covering).</i>		<i>I was covered (covering myself).</i>	
tegēbam	tegerem	tegēbar	tegerer
tegēbās	tegerēs	tegēbāris (re)	tegerēris (re)
tegēbat	tegeret	tegēbātur	tegerētur
tegēbāmur	tegerēmus	tegēbāmur	tegerēmur
tegēbātis	tegerētis	tegēbāmini	tegerēmini
tegēbānt	tegerēnt	tegēbāntur	tegerēntur
FUT., <i>I shall cover.</i>		<i>I shall be covered.</i>	
tegam		tegar	
tegēs		tegeris (re)	
teget		tegetur	
tegēmus		tegemur	
tegētis		tegemini	
tegent		tegentur	
PERF., <i>I covered (have covered).</i>		<i>I was (have been) covered.</i>	
texī	texerim	tectus sum	tectus sim
texistī	texeris	tectus es	tectus sis
texit	texerit	tectus est	tectus sit
teximus	texerimus	tecti sumus	tecti simus
texistis	texeritis	tecti estis	tecti sitis
texērunt (re)	texerint	tecti sunt	tecti sint



INDIC.	ACTIVE.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	PASSIVE.	SUBJ.
PLUP., <i>I had covered.</i>			<i>I had been covered.</i>		
texeram	texissem	tectus eram	tectus essem		
texerās	texissēs	tectus erās	tectus essēs		
texerat	texisset	tectus erat	tectus esset		
texerāmus	texissēmus	tectī erāmus	tectī essēmus		
texerātis	texissētis	tectī erātis	tectī essētis		
texerānt	texissēnt	tectī erānt	tectī essēnt		

FUT. PERF., <i>I shall have covered.</i>			<i>I shall have been covered.</i>		
texero		tectus ero			
texeris		tectus eris			
texerit		tectus erit			
texerimus		tectī erimus			
texeritis		tectī eritis			
texerint.		tectī erunt			

IMPERAT.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Pr. 2.	tege, <i>cover</i>	tegite	tegere	teginini
Fut. 2.	tegito	tegitōte	tegitōr	—
3.	tegito	tegunto	tegitōr	teguntor
INFIN. Pr.	tegere	Perf. texisse	Pres. tegi	Pf. tectus esse
Fut.	tectūrus esse		Fut. tectum iri	(tectus fore)
PART. Pr.	tegēns	Fut. tectūrus	Perf. tectus	Ger. tegendus
GER.	tegendī, -dō, -dum		SUP. tectum	tectū

## Verbs in io.

capio, capere, cēpī, captum; capior, capī, captus sum

Pr.	capio, <i>I take.</i>	capiam	capior	capiar
	capis	capias	caperis (re)	capiaris (re)
	capit	capiat	capitur	capiatur
	capimus	capiamus	capimur	capiamur
	capitis	capiatīs	capimini	capiamini
	capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur
Imp.	capiebam	caperem	capiebar	caperer
Fut.	capiam, iēs, iet, &c.		capiar, iēris (re), &c.	
Perf.	cēpī	cēperim	captus sum	captus sim
Plup.	cēperam	cēpisse	captus eram	captus essem
F. P.	cēpero		captus ero	
IMPERAT.	cape	capite	capere	capimini
	capito	capitōte	capitor	—
	capito	capiunto	capitor	capiantor
IMP. Pr.	capere	Pf. cēpisse	Pr. capī	captus esse
Fut.	captūrus esse		captum iri	
Part.	capiens	captūrus	captus	capiens
Ger.	capiendī, dō, dum	Sup. captum		captū

See EXERCISE, page 66.

## Lesson 24.

Regular Verb: Fourth Conjugation.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ACT. audio audire audīvī audītum  
 PASS. audior audīrī audītus sum

INDIC. ACTIVE. SUBJ.	INDIC. PASSIVE. SUBJ.
<i>PRÆS., I hear.</i>	<i>I am heard.</i>
audio, I hear.	audior
audis, you hear.	audiris (re)
audit, he hears.	auditur
audīmus, we hear.	audīmur
audītis, you hear.	audīmini
audiunt, they hear.	audiuntur
<i>IMPERF., I heard (was hearing).</i>	<i>I was heard.</i>
audiēbam	audiēbar
audiēbās	audiēbāris (re)
audiēbat	audiēbātur
audiēbāmus	audiēbāmur
audiēbātis	audiēbāmini
audiēbānt	audiēbāntur
<i>FUT., I shall hear.</i>	<i>I shall be heard.</i>
audiam	audiar
audiēs	audiēris (re)
audiet	audiētur
audiēmus	audiēmur
audiētis	audiēmini
audiēnt	audiēntur
<i>PERF., I heard (have heard).</i>	<i>I was (have been) heard.</i>
audīvī	audītus sum
audivisti	audītus es
audivit	audītus est
audivimus	audītī sumus
audivistis	audītī estis
audivērunt (re)	audītī sunt
<i>PLUP., I had heard.</i>	<i>I had been heard.</i>
audiveram	audītus eram
audiverās	audītus erās
audiverat	audītus erat
audiverāmus	audītī erāmus
audiverātis	audītī erātis
audiverānt	audītī erānt
<i>FUT. PERF., I shall have heard.</i>	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>
audivero	audītus ero
audiveris	audītus eris
audiverit	audītus erit
audiverimus	audītī erimus
audiveritis	audītī eritis
audiverint	audītī erunt

ACTIVE.		IMPERATIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
PR. 2. audī, <i>hear.</i>		audīte	audīre	audiminī	
F. 2. audīto		audītōte	audītor	—	
3. audīto		audīunto	audītor	audiuntor	

INFINITIVE.

PR. audīre	PF. audīvisse	PR. audīrī	PF. audītus <sup>m</sup> esse.
F. audīturus <sup>m</sup> esse		F. audītum irī (audītus fore).	

PARTICIPLES.

PR. audiēns <sup>ie</sup>	FUT. audīturus <sup>3</sup>	PF. audītus <sup>3</sup>	GER. audiendus <sup>3</sup>
GER. audiendī, dō, dum		SUP. audītum, audītū	

See EXERCISE, page 68.

## Lesson 25.

### Deponent Verbs.

I. DEPONENT Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice, with an active or reflexive signification : as,

1. mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus, *admire* ;
2. vereor, verērī, veritus, *fear* ;
3. sequor, sequī, secūtus, *follow* ;
4. potior, potīrī, potītus, *possess*.

INDICATIVE.

PRES. mīror	vereor	sequor	potior
IMP'T. mīrābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT. mīrābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF. mīrātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP. mīrātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P. mīrātus ero	veritus ero	secūtus ero	potītus ero

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES. mīrer	verear	sequar	potiar
IMP'T. mīrārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF. mīrātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP. mīrātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem
IMP. mīrāre, ātor	verēre, ētor	sequere, itor	potīre, itor
FIN. mīrārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT. mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF. mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER. mīrāndus	verēndus	sequendus	potiendus

- a. Deponents have the participles of both voices ; as,  
*sequēns, following; secūtūrus, about to follow;*  
*secūtus, having followed; sequendus, to-be-followed.*
- b. The future infinitive is always to be given in the active form :  
 thus of *sequor* it is *secūtūrus esse*, not *secūtum iri*.
- c. The gerundive, being passive in meaning, is found only in  
 transitive verbs, or neuter verbs used impersonally : as,  
*potienda est tellūs, the land must be won;*  
*moriendum est omnibus, all must die.*
- d. The perfect participle is sometimes also passive : as, *mercātus, bought; adeptus, gained* (or, *having gained*).
- e. The following verbs have no perfect active, but form the perfect, &c., like deponents, and are called *semi-deponents* :

*audeo,*<sup>2</sup> *ausus, dare;*

*gaudeo,*<sup>2</sup> *gāvīsus, rejoice;*

*fīdo,*<sup>3</sup> *fīsus, trust;*

*soleo,*<sup>2</sup> *solitus, be accustomed.*

See EXERCISE, page 70.

## Lesson 26.

### Irregular and Defective Verbs.

#### PART FIRST.

Several verbs are irregular in *the tenses of the present stem*. The most common of these are —

1. *volo, velle, voluī, to wish.*
2. *nōlo (nōn volo), nōlle, nōluī, to be unwilling.*
3. *mālo (magis volo), mālle, mālūī, to wish rather.*

These three are inflected as follows : —

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT.					
<i>volo</i>	<i>velim</i>	<i>nōlo</i>	<i>nōlim</i>	<i>mālo</i>	<i>mālim</i>
<i>vis</i>	<i>velis</i>	<i>nōnvis</i>	<i>nōlis</i>	<i>māvis</i>	<i>mālis</i>
<i>vult</i>	<i>velit</i>	<i>nōnvult</i>	<i>nōlit</i>	<i>māvult</i>	<i>mālit</i>
<i>volumus</i>	<i>velimus</i>	<i>nōlumus</i>	<i>nōlimus</i>	<i>mālumus</i>	<i>mālimus</i>
<i>vultis</i>	<i>velitis</i>	<i>nōnvultis</i>	<i>nōlitis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>	<i>mālitis</i>
<i>volunt</i>	<i>velint</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>nōlint</i>	<i>mālunt</i>	<i>mālint</i>
IMPERFECT.					
<i>volēbam</i>	<i>vellem</i>	<i>nōlēbam</i>	<i>nōllem</i>	<i>mālēbam</i>	<i>māllem</i>
FUTURE.					
<i>volam</i>		<i>nōlam</i>		<i>mālam</i>	
PERFECT.					
<i>voluī</i>	<i>-erim</i>	<i>nōluī</i>	<i>-erim</i>	<i>mālūī</i>	<i>-erim</i>
PLUPERFECT.					
<i>volueram</i>	<i>-issem</i>	<i>nōlueram</i>	<i>-issem</i>	<i>mālueram</i>	<i>-issem</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.					
<i>voluero</i>		<i>nōluero</i>		<i>māluerō</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

nōlī, nōlīte, *do not.*  
 nōlīto, nōlītōte, *thou shalt not, ye shall not.*  
 nōlīto, nōlunto, *he shall not, they shall not.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. velle voluisse nōlle nōluisse malle māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. volēns, *willing.* nōlēns, *unwilling.*  
 GERUND. volendī, volendō nōlendī

4. fero, ferre, tulī, lātum,\* *to bear.*

	INDIC. ACTIVE. SUBJ.	INDIC. PASSIVE. SUBJ.
PRES.	fero fers fert ferimus fertis ferunt	feram ferās ferat ferāmus ferātis ferānt
IMPERF.	ferēbam ferrem	ferer feraris feratur
FUTURE.	feram	ferar
PERFECT.	tulī tulerim	lātus sum lātus sim
PLUPERF.	tuleram tulissem	lātus eram lātus essem
F. PERF.	tulero	lātus ero
IMPER. PR.	fero ferte	ferer ferimini
FUT.	ferō fertōte ferunto	feror feror feruntor
INFIN.	ferre, tulisse, lātūrus esse	ferri, lātus esse, lātum iri
PART.	ferēns, lātūrus	lātus, ferendus

5. eo, ire, ivī (iī), itum, *to go.*

IND., PRES. S.	eo, is, it	SUBJ. eam, eās, eat
P.	īmus, itis, eunt	eāmus, eātis, eānt
IMP.	ībam, ibās, ibat	īrem, irēs, iret
FUT.	ībo, ibis, ibit	
PERF.	ivī (iī)	iverim (ierim)
PLUP.	iveram (ieram)	ivissem (isse)
FUT. P.	ivero	
IMPERAT.	ī, ito; ite, itōte, eunto	
INFIN. PRES.	ire	PERF. ivisse (isse)
PART. PRES.	iēns, euntis	FUT. itūrus

6. fio, fieri, factus: † used as passive of facio,<sup>3</sup> *to make.*

PRES. S.	fīo, fīz, fit	fīam, fīās, fīat
P.	fīmus, fītis, fiunt	fīāmus, fīātis, fīānt
IMP.	fīēbam	fierem
FUT.	fīam, fīēs, &c.	

\* Regular of 3d Conjugation, omitting the connecting vowel in *fers*, &c.

† Regular of 4th Conjugation, except *fieri* and *fierem*.

PERF.	factus sum	factus sim
PLUP.	factus eram	factus essem
FUT. P.	factus ero	
IMPERAT.	fi, fite; fito, fitōte, fiunto	
INFIN. PRES.	fieri	PERF. factus esse
PART. PERF.	factus	GER. faciendus

## PART SECOND.

## 1. The following verbs are defective —

a. *coepī, I began* (for the present, use *incipio*; and with the passive infinitive, the form *coeptus sum*).

b. *ōdī, I hate*, with the participles *ōsus, ōsūrus*.

c. *meminī, I remember*; imperative *memento*.

The above are found only in the tenses of the Perfect.

d. *āio, I say, āis, āit, āiunt, āiēbam, etc.*

e. *inquam, said I; inquit, said he* (only in quotations). A few other forms are rarely used.

f. *queo, I can; nequeo* (or *nōn queo*), *I cannot*. These are inflected like *eo, ire*; but only a few of their forms are in use.

For other forms of defectives, see Gr. § 38.

## 2. The following are Impersonal: —

a. *pluit, it rains; grandinat, it hails; ningit, it snows; fulgurat, it lightens.*

b. *miseret, it grieves; paenitet, it repents; piget, it disgusts; pudet, it shames; taedet, it wearies*. These take an accusative of the person with a genitive or infinitive: as,

*miseret mē tuī, I pity you;*

*paenitet mē hōc fēcisse, I repent of having done this.*

c. *libet, it pleases; licet, it is allowed*, used with the dative of the person: as, *licet mihi loquī, I am permitted to speak*; also *oportet, there is need*: as, *oportet mē scribere, I must write*. These have the regular synopsis in the third person: as, *licet, licēbat, licēbit, licuit, &c.*; also *libitum* and *licitum est, &c.*

d. The third person passive of intransitive verbs (see Lesson 20): as, *pugnātur, there is fighting; mihi invidētur, I am envied*.

e. Several verbs are used impersonally in special meanings: as, *certum est, it is resolved; cōstat, it is clear; placet, vidētur, it seems good; decet, it is becoming; praestat, it is better; interest, rēfert, it concerns* (with genitive); *vacat, there is leisure*; with verbs of *happening* and the like.

## Lesson 27.

## Particles.

1. The regular Adverbs of manner are formed from Adjectives, as follows : —

*a.* Adjectives of the first and second declensions (ending in *us* or *er*) form the adverb in *ē* : as,

*callidus* (*cunning*), *callidē*; *dexter* (*skilful*), *dextrē*.

*b.* Those of the third declension form the adverb in *-ter* : as, *fortis* (*brave*), *fortiter*; *prūdēns* (*prudent*), *prūdentē*.

*c.* Many case forms of adjectives are used as adverbs : as, *multum*, *much*; *falsō*, *falsely*; *rectā*, *straightway*.

For the comparison of adverbs, see Lesson 11; for their classification, see Gr. § 41, 2.

2. The more common prepositions in the following lists should be committed to memory : —

*a.* The following Prepositions require the *accusative* : —

<i>ad</i> , to.	<i>ergā</i> , towards.	<i>post</i> , after.
<i>adversus</i> , <del>or</del>	<i>extrā</i> , outside.	<i>praeter</i> , beyond.
<i>adversum</i> , towards.	<i>infrā</i> , below.	<i>prope</i> , near.
<i>ante</i> , before.	<i>inter</i> , among.	<i>propter</i> , on account of.
<i>apud</i> , at, near.	<i>intrā</i> , inside.	<i>secundum</i> , next to.
<i>circā</i> , or	<i>juxtā</i> , near.	<i>suprā</i> , above.
<i>circum</i> , around.	<i>ob</i> , on account of.	<i>trāns</i> , across.
<i>circiter</i> , about.	<i>penes</i> , in the power.	<i>ultrā</i> , on the farther
<i>cis</i> , <i>citrā</i> , this side.	<i>per</i> , through.	side.
<i>contrā</i> , against.	<i>pōne</i> , behind.	<i>versus</i> , towards.

*b.* The following require the *ablative* : —

<i>ā</i> , <i>ab</i> , <i>abs</i> , from, by.	<i>ē</i> , <i>ex</i> , out of.
<i>absque</i> , but for, without.	<i>prae</i> , in comparison with.
<i>cōram</i> , in presence of.	<i>prō</i> , in front of, for.
<i>cum</i> , with.	<i>sine</i> , without.
<i>dē</i> , from.	<i>tenus</i> , up to, or as far as.

*c.* The following may take either case : —

*in*, *into*, *in*; *sub*, *under*; *subter*, *beneath*; *super*, *above*.

*In* and *sub*, when followed by the Accusative, signify *motion to*, when by the Ablative, *rest in*, a place.

## Lesson 28.

## Formation of Words: 1. Verb Stems.

1. The parts of a word which most commonly determine its meaning are: 1. the **ROOT**; 2. the significant ending found in the **STEM**; 3. the **INFLECTION**; 4. (in compounds) the **PREFIX**.

For example, the noun **flūmen**, *river*, is formed from the root **FLU**, *flow*, and the termination **men**, denoting *act, means, or result*. In the verb **conjēcerat**, *he had hurled*, we find: 1. the root **JAC**, *throw* (lengthened in the perfect to **jēc**); 2. the inflectional ending **erat** of the pluperfect third person (being the imperfect of **esse** added to the perfect stem); 3. the prefix **con**, signifying here the *force or vigor* of an action.

NOTE. — Many words (as most Particles) are primitive; and many others, though derivative, are simple, and do not apparently come under the rules of derivation.

2. The **ROOT** gives a word its *radical* meaning. Roots consist of a single syllable, and have a short vowel. Verb-stems are formed from roots in one of the following ways: —

1. By lengthening the vowel: as, **DIC**, **dīco**.
2. By reduplication: as, **GEN**, **gigno**; **STA**, **sisto**.
3. By inserting **m** or **n**: as, **CUB**, **-cumbo**; **FID**, **findo**.
4. By adding **d** or **n**: as, **TEN**, **tendo**; **TEM**, **temno**.
5. By doubling final **l** or **r**: as, **FAL**, **fallo**; **VER**, **verro**.
6. By adding **sc** (inceptive): as, **DIC**, **disco** (= **dic****sc**o).
7. By adding **t**: as, **MIT**, **mitto**; **PEC**, **pecto**.
8. By adding a vowel: as, **JAC**, **jacio**; **CAP**, **capio**.

N. B. — The added vowel, **a, e, i**, becomes the vowel of conjugation (characteristic or connecting vowel) in **amo** (= **amao**), **moneo**, **audio**.

For the formation of the Perfect and Supine stems, see Lesson 18.

3. Give the principal parts of the verbs which follow (consulting the Vocabulary), tracing the formation of the different stems from the root, and comparing the appended derivatives: —



N. B. — The small figures 1, 2, 3, 4, represent the conjugations.

1. **voco**<sup>1</sup> (VOC), *call*; **vōx**, *voice*.
2. **seco**<sup>1</sup> (SEC), *cut*; **segmentum**, *slice*.
3. **do**<sup>1</sup> (DA), *give*; **dōnum**, *gift*.
4. **augeo**<sup>2</sup> (AUG), *increase*; **augustus**, *august*.
5. **suādeo**<sup>2</sup> (SVAD), *make pleasant*; **suāvis**, *sweet*.
6. **cado**<sup>3</sup> (CAD), *fall*; **cāsus**, *accident*.
7. **sisto**<sup>3</sup> (STA), *stand* (compare **sto**, **stāre**).
8. **nosco**<sup>3</sup> (GNO), *know*; **nōmen**, *name*.
9. **crē-do**<sup>3</sup> (DHA), *trust* (*place confidence*).
10. **fīnio**<sup>4</sup> (from **fīni**-, stem of **fīnis**), *end*.
11. **salio**<sup>4</sup> (SAL), *leap*; **salto**, *dance*.
12. **eo** (I), *go* (compare **ven-eo**, *to be sold*); **iter**, *way*.

## Lesson 29.

Formation of Words : 2. Nouns and Adjectives.

1. The following are some of the more important *significant endings* : —

1. **tor** (M.), **trīx** (F.), DOER OR AGENT : as, **arātor**, *ploughman*; **victrix**, *she that conquers*.

This form is often used as an adjective : as, **victor exercitus**, *a victorious army*; **victricia arma**, *conquering arms*.

2. **men**, **mentum**, **bulum**, **culum** (N.), MEANS : as, **tegmen**, *covering*; **frumentum**, *corn* (*fruor*, *enjoy*).

3. **ulus** (**olus**, **ellus**), **a**, **um**, DIMINUTIVE : as, **rivulus**, *a brook*; **filiolus**, *a little son*; **capella**, *a she-goat*; **mūnuscūlum**, *a trifling gift*; **catellus**, *a young puppy* (**catulus**).

4. **āx**, **idus**, **bundus**, ACTIVE VERBAL : as, **pugnāx**, *apt to fight*; **lūcidus**, *shining*; **vagābundus**, *wandering*.

5. **ilis**, **bilis**, **ivus**, **mnus**, PASSIVE VERBAL : as, **fragilis**, *frail* (**frango**); **nōbilis**, *well-known* (**nōsco**); **captivus**, *prisoner* (of war); **alumnus** (**alo**), *foster-child*.

6. **ia**, **io**, **tās**, **tūdo** (F.), QUALITY : as, **prudentia**, *prudence*; **cāritās**, *deariness*; **lātītūdō**, *breadth*.

7. **ālis**, **āris**, **ārius**, **ācius**, **ilis** (adj.), BELONGING TO : **militāris**, *of a soldier*; **hostilis**, *of the enemy*; **ovile**, *sheep-fold*; **būbile** (N.), *a stall for cattle*; **argentārius**, *silversmith* or *money-lender*.

8. **eus**, **āceus**, **ōsus**, **ilus**, denoting MATERIAL OR ABUNDANCE : as, **aureus**, *golden*; **aerumnōsus**, *full of grief*.

9. *ium, ētum*, OFFICE OR GROUP : as, *servitium*, *slavery*, or the *servile class* ; *quercētum*, *oak-forest*.

10. *ātus, itus, ūtus*, PARTICIPIAL : as, *galeātus*, *helmeted* ; *auritus*, *long-eared* ; *cornūtus*, *having horns*.

11. *idēs, adēs*, (M.), as, *is, ēis* (F.), PATRONYMIC : as, *Priamidēs*, *son of Priam* ; *Tyndaris*, *daughter of Tyndarus*.

12. *ānus, ēnsis*, PATRIAL : as, *Romānus*, *Roman* ; *Athēniēnsis*, *Athenian*.

2. Give the meaning of the following derivatives, as shown by the termination : —

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>vēnātrīx</i> : <i>vēnor</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>hunt</i> .      | 15. <i>facilis</i> : <i>facio</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>to do</i> .     |
| 2. <i>nūbilus</i> : <i>nūbēs</i> , <i>cloud</i> .                   | 16. <i>edāx</i> : <i>edo</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>to eat</i> .         |
| 3. <i>mōbilis</i> : <i>moveo</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>move</i> .       | 17. <i>migrātio</i> : <i>migro</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>emigrate</i> . |
| 4. <i>fertilitās</i> : <i>fero</i> , <i>bear</i> .                  | 18. <i>dūmētum</i> : <i>dūmus</i> , <i>bramble</i> .                |
| 5. <i>flāmen</i> : <i>flo</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>to blow</i> .       | 19. <i>arbustum</i> : <i>arbor</i> , <i>tree</i> .                  |
| 6. <i>puerulus</i> : <i>puer</i> , <i>boy</i> .                     | 20. <i>cantor</i> : <i>cano</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>sing</i> .        |
| 7. <i>misellus</i> : <i>miser</i> , <i>wretched</i> .               | 21. <i>hospitium</i> : <i>hospes</i> , <i>host</i> .                |
| 8. <i>moribundus</i> : <i>morior</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>to die</i> . | 22. <i>cīvilis</i> : <i>cīvis</i> , <i>citizen</i> .                |
| 9. <i>castrēnsis</i> : <i>castra</i> , <i>camp</i> .                | 23. <i>urbānus</i> : <i>urbs</i> , <i>city</i> .                    |
| 10. <i>calidus</i> : <i>caleo</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>to be hot</i> . | 24. <i>nōdōsus</i> : <i>nōdus</i> , <i>knot</i> .                   |
| 11. <i>fortitūdo</i> : <i>fortis</i> , <i>brave</i> .               | 25. <i>absentia</i> : <i>absēns</i> , <i>absent</i> .               |
| 12. <i>levitās</i> : <i>levis</i> , <i>light</i> .                  | 26. <i>Crētēnsis</i> : <i>Crēta</i> (an island).                    |
| 13. <i>levāmen</i> : <i>levo</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>lift</i> .       | 27. <i>Atridēs</i> : <i>Atreus</i> .                                |
| 14. <i>mercātor</i> : <i>mercor</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>trade</i> .   | 28. <i>Nērēis</i> : <i>Nēreus</i> (a sea-god).                      |

## Lesson 30.

Formation of Words : 3. Derivatives and Compounds.

1. The following are the forms of the *derivative verbs* : —

1. *sco*<sup>3</sup> (*inceptive* or *inchoative*), BEGINNING : as, *flōresco*, *to put forth flowers* ; *calesco*, *to grow warm*.

2. *esso*,<sup>3</sup> *isso*<sup>3</sup> (*intensive*), ATTEMPT : as, *capesso*, *lay hold on* ; *facesso*, *to do* (with energy) ; *petisso*, *seek* (eagerly).

3. *to*,<sup>1</sup> *ito*<sup>1</sup> (*intensive, frequentative*), FORCE OR REPETITION : as, *jacto*,<sup>1</sup> *to hurl* ; *dictito*,<sup>1</sup> *to keep on saying*.

4. *illo*<sup>1</sup> (*diminutive*), FEEBLENESS : as, *cantillo*<sup>1</sup>, *to chirp* or *warble*.

5. *urio*<sup>4</sup> (*desiderative*), DESIRE : as, *ēsurio*,<sup>4</sup> *I am hungry* (from *edo*,<sup>3</sup> *eat*). [The last three are added to the Supine stem.]

6. Many verbs of the first conjugation are formed from nouns or adjectives : as, **milito**,<sup>1</sup> *to serve as a soldier* ; **caeco**,<sup>1</sup> *to make blind* ; **vigilo**,<sup>1</sup> *to keep watch* ; **dominor**,<sup>1</sup> *to be master, or tyrant*.

## 2. COMPOUNDS are formed in two ways : —

a. By joining two or more words in one, each retaining its own meaning : as, **armiger**, *armor-bearer* ; **maledīco**,<sup>3</sup> *to speak ill* ; **magnanimus**, *great-hearted* ; **tubicen** (*tuba, cano*), *trumpeter* ; **multiformis**, *of many shapes* ; **suōvētaurilia** (*sūs, ovis, taurus*), a ceremony including the sacrifice of a *hog*, a *sheep*, and a *bull*.

b. By prefixing a Particle : most frequently a Preposition to a Verb. The meaning of the most common prefixes is seen in the following : —

1. **ā, ab**, AWAY : as, **aufero** (*abfero*), *take away*.
2. **ad**, TO, TOWARDS : as, **affero** (*adfero*), *bring*.
3. **ante**, BEFORE : as, **antefero**, *prefer* ; **antecello**,<sup>3</sup> *excel*.
4. **circum**, AROUND : as, **circummūnio**,<sup>4</sup> *fortify completely*.
5. **con**, TOGETHER OR FORCIBLY : as, **cōnfero**, *bring together* ; **colloco**,<sup>1</sup> *to set firm*.
6. **dē**, DOWN, UTTERLY : as, **dēspicio**,<sup>3</sup> *despise (look down on)* ; **dēstruo**,<sup>3</sup> *destroy*.
7. **dī** or **dis**, ASUNDER : as, **dīdūco**,<sup>3</sup> *draw apart* ; **disjungo**,<sup>3</sup> *unbind*.
8. **ē, ex**, OUT : as, **effero** (*ecfero*), *carry forth, uplift*.
9. **in** (with nouns or adjectives), NOT : as, **īnfīnitus**, *boundless*.
10. **in** (with verbs), IN, ON, AGAINST : as, **īnfero**, *bear against*.
11. **inter**, BETWEEN, TO PIECES : as, **interrumpo**,<sup>3</sup> *interrupt*.
12. **ne, nec**, NOT : as, **nequeo**, *cannot* ; **necopinātus**, *unlooked for*.
13. **ob**, TOWARDS, TO MEET : as, **offero**, *offer* ; **obvenio**,<sup>4</sup> *meet*.
14. **per, prae**, VERY : as, **permagnus**, *very great* ; **praeclārus**, *glorious*.
15. **por**, FORWARD : as, **porrectus**, *outstretched*.
16. **re, red**, BACK, AGAIN : as, **refero**, *report* ; **redeo**, *return*.
17. **sē**, APART : as, **sēparo**,<sup>1</sup> *separate* ; **sēcerno**,<sup>3</sup> *put aside*.
18. **sub**, UNDER, in LOW DEGREE : as, **subdolus**, *crafty* ; **substruo**,<sup>3</sup> *build beneath*.
19. **super**, UPON, OVER AND ABOVE : as, **superfluo**,<sup>3</sup> *overflow* ; **superstes**, *a survivor*.

See EXAMPLES, pp. 126–128.

## PARALLEL EXERCISES

ON THE FOREGOING LESSONS.

## LESSON 3.

First Declension of Nouns.

Vocabulary.

<i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> , <i>from</i> (with abl.).	<i>in</i> , <i>in</i> (with abl.).
<i>ad</i> , <i>to</i> (with acc.).	<i>in</i> , <i>into</i> (with acc.).
<i>cum</i> , <i>with</i> (with abl.).	<i>inter</i> , <i>between</i> , <i>among</i> (acc.).
<i>ē</i> or <i>ex</i> , <i>out of</i> (with abl.).	<i>per</i> , <i>through</i> (with acc.).
<i>āla</i> , <i>ae</i> (F.), <i>wing</i> .	<i>nympha</i> , <i>ae</i> (F.), <i>nymph</i> .
<i>aquila</i> , <i>ae</i> (F.), <i>eagle</i> .	<i>umbra</i> , <i>ae</i> (F.), <i>shadow</i> .
<i>et</i> or <i>-que</i> , <i>and</i> ; <i>sed</i> , <i>but</i> ; <i>nōn</i> , <i>not</i> .	

Translate into English.

- |                           |                             |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Nautae filia.          | 8. In insula.               |
| 2. Nympha aquarum.        | 9. Ad portas.               |
| 3. Via per silvas.        | 10. Cometes inter stellas.  |
| 4. Agricola cum filiabus. | 11. Inter lunam et stellas. |
| 5. Amicitia puellarum.    | 12. In umbra silvae.        |
| 6. Ex aqua.               | 13. Ad reginae filias.      |
| 7. In aquam.              | 14. Aquilae alis.           |

Write in Latin.

- |                                       |                                 |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. The queen's <sup>1</sup> daughter. | 4. Between Rome and Athens.     |
| 2. The wings of eagles.               | 5. To the gates of Rome.        |
| 3. A way through the wood.            | 6. From the island to the land. |

<sup>1</sup> Genitive : observe that "queen's" is the same as "of the queen."

## LESSON 4.

Second Declension of Nouns.

Vocabulary.

<i>argentum</i> , <i>i</i> (N.), <i>silver</i> .	<i>mūrus</i> , <i>i</i> (M.), <i>wall</i> .
<i>ager</i> , <i>gri</i> (M.), <i>field</i> .	<i>oculus</i> , <i>i</i> (M.), <i>eye</i> .
<i>folium</i> , <i>i</i> (N.), <i>leaf</i> .	<i>somnus</i> , <i>i</i> (M.), <i>sleep</i> .
<i>hortus</i> , <i>i</i> (M.), <i>garden</i> .	<i>taurus</i> , <i>i</i> (M.), <i>bull</i> .
<i>multum</i> , <i>i</i> (N.), <i>much</i> .	<i>templum</i> , <i>i</i> (N.), <i>temple</i> .

Translate into English.

- |                        |                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Servi filius.       | 10. Umbrae foliorum.              |
| 2. Magistrorum libri.  | 11. Bella Romanorum.              |
| 3. Tauri oculus.       | 12. Magister cum pueris.          |
| 4. Cum Marco puero.    | 13. Nauta cum filiis.             |
| 5. Marce fili.         | 14. Multum argenti. <sup>1</sup>  |
| 6. Corinthi murus.     | 15. Belli pericula.               |
| 7. In somno.           | 16. Via ad oppidum.               |
| 8. In agris magistris. | 17. Ager inter silvam et oppidum. |
| 9. In agros viri.      |                                   |

Write in Latin.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. In the gardens.                         | 7. Into the town.                  |
| 2. Into the master's fields.               | 8. To the walls of the town.       |
| 3. The queen's slaves.                     | 9. Among the leaves of the forest. |
| 4. The walls of Rome.                      |                                    |
| 5. In the wars of the Romans. <sup>2</sup> | 10. In the temples of the gods.    |
| 6. Between land and water.                 |                                    |

<sup>1</sup> Words of Quantity, as *much, more, less*, are in Latin used with the genitive: thus, *much silver* is *much* (a great deal) *of silver*.—<sup>2</sup> *Rōmānis*.

LESSON 5.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

Vocabulary.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| collum, i (N.), <i>neck</i> .        | angustus, a, um, <i>narrow</i> .                   |
| pōmum, i (N.), <i>apple, fruit</i> . | fūnestus, a, um, <i>fatal</i> .                    |
| socius, i (M.), <i>companion</i> .   | mātūrus, a, um, <i>ripe</i> .                      |
| tenebrae, ārum (F.), <i>gloom</i> .  | sanctus, a, um, <i>holy</i> .                      |
| noster, tra, trum, <i>our</i> .      | pulcer, <sup>1</sup> cra, crum, <i>beautiful</i> . |

Translate into English.

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Regina cum parvis filiabus.                     | 6. In via angusta.                |
| 2. In magno funestoque bello.                      | 7. Niger equus in agro.           |
| 3. Templā sanctarum dearum.                        | 8. Multa folia in silvis.         |
| 4. Cum sociis et filio et magnis dis. <sup>2</sup> | 9. Sancte deus!                   |
| 5. Via angusta inter silvam et oppidum.            | 10. Roma patria nostra.           |
|  | 11. Tenebrae sub foliis silvarum. |

<sup>1</sup> Later and commoner form, *pulcher*.      <sup>2</sup> See page 5, e.

## Write in Latin.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. My friend (voc.).                      | 5. Shadows of the dense forests.          |
| 2. The long neck of the swan.             | 6. A long way through fields and forests. |
| 3. Many gifts in the temples of the gods. | 7. Italy our native-land.                 |
| 4. Ripe apples in the master's garden.    | 8. Seven <sup>1</sup> black bulls (acc.). |

<sup>1</sup> septem.

## LESSON 6.

Simple Sentence: 1. Subject and Predicate.

## Vocabulary.

ancōra, ae (F.), <i>anchor.</i>	apertus, a, um, <i>open.</i>
cōnstāntia, ae (F.), <i>firmness.</i>	arduus, a, um, <i>difficult.</i>
dominus, i (M.), <i>master, lord.</i>	curvus, a, um, <i>crooked.</i>
sōlātium, i (N.), <i>comfort.</i>	fīdus, a, um, <i>faithful.</i>
acūtus, a, um, <i>keen.</i>	serēnus, a, um, <i>clear, still.</i>

## Translate into English.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Filia reginae est pulcra.                         | 11. Magna sunt periculā belli.                  |
| 2. Ancorae curvae sunt.                              | 12. Nihil viris bonis arduum est.               |
| 3. Portae sunt apertae.                              | 13. Miseri semper sumus sine beneficiis deorum. |
| 4. In silvis multae erant ferae.                     | 14. Maximis curis remedium est patientia.       |
| 5. Oculi nautarum sunt acuti.                        | 15. Nullius omnino vita est libera curis.       |
| 6. Agricola erat in agro.                            | 16. In medio templo sedet regina.               |
| 7. Lucida est luna in caelo sereno.                  | 17. Mucius vir erat Romanae constantiae.        |
| 8. Corinthi portae altae patent ( <i>are open</i> ). |   |
| 9. Pueri sumus non viri.                             |   |
| 10. Seneca philosophus erat clarus inter Romanos.    |   |

## Write in Latin.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. The son of Aeneas was Ascanius.                     | 5. Great men [are] the gift of the gods.            |
| 2. Anger is a great fault.                             | 6. The moon and stars were bright in the clear sky. |
| 3. Athens was the native-city of many great men.       | 7. You are men, not boys.                           |
| 4. Few slaves were faithful to [their] masters (dat.). | 8. The forces of the Romans were great.             |

LESSON 7.

Simple Sentence: 2. Object-Accusative.

Vocabulary.

fugo,<sup>1</sup> drive.

fulgeo,<sup>2</sup> shine.

garrulus, a, um, chattering.

impleo,<sup>2</sup> fill.

intro,<sup>1</sup> enter.

libum, i (N.), cake.

liquidus, a, um, transparent.

magis, more, (adv.).

mico,<sup>1</sup> glitter.

minus, less.

moveo,<sup>2</sup> move.

placidus, a, um, calm.

tener, era, erum, tender.

turbo,<sup>1</sup> disturb.

unda, ae (F.), wave.

ventus, i (M.), wind.

Translate into English.

1. Lunam et stellas videmus in caelo sereno.
2. Magnam periculi procellam Horatius sustinet.
3. Silvam magnam, atram tenebris, prope oppidum intramus. *ave enter quat.*
4. Ignavus nauta ventos et undas culpatur.
- ✓ 5. Bona consilia dat filio.
6. Locum vera gloria habet inter astra.
- ✓ 7. Bonos laudamus, improbos vituperamus.
8. Aquam liquidam agnus non turbat.
9. Atra cura placidum somnum membris non dat.
10. Tua fata docet aliorum fortuna.
- ✓ 11. Romani castra movent e campo.
12. Saevus lupus agnam teneram lacerat.
13. Servi pocula magna vino implent.
14. Fessi nautae fretum angustum intrant.
15. Puellae garrulae multa inter se<sup>1</sup> narrant.
16. Poëtae antiqui sapientiam docent.
17. Agricola lupos ex agris suis fugat.

Write in Latin.

1. Slaves fear a cruel master.
2. The black<sup>2</sup> darkness of the forest terrifies<sup>5</sup> small boys.
3. We give cakes to children.<sup>3</sup>
4. The queen is walking in [the] garden with<sup>4</sup> [her] two daughters.

<sup>1</sup> among themselves (to one another).    <sup>2</sup> ater.    <sup>3</sup> puer.    <sup>4</sup> cum.

<sup>5</sup> Plural.

5. We owe a great [sum of] money to the jeweller.
6. Few [men] love glory more than life.<sup>1</sup>
7. We often see wolves in the forest.
8. We praise the good less than we blame the bad.
9. The Tyrians<sup>2</sup> praise the beautiful queen.
10. We have riches [as] a gift of the bountiful gods.
11. The son of Anchises enters the shades of Avernus.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>3</sup> *Avernus, i.*<sup>1</sup> Accusative.<sup>2</sup> *Tyrii.*

## LESSON 8.

## Simple Sentence: 3. Special Forms.

## Vocabulary.

*caecus, a, um, blind.**impiger, gra, um, vigorous.**canōrus, a, um, melodious.**invideo,<sup>2</sup> envy (with dat.).**cygnus, i (M.), swan.**noceo,<sup>2</sup> do harm (dat.).**ergā (with acc.), towards.**potius, rather.**frigidus, a, um, cold.**stultus, a, um, foolish.**ignāvus, a, um, lazy.**valeo,<sup>2</sup> prevail, be strong.*

## Translate into English.

1. Num tu laudas stultum? nonne potius rides?
2. Ubinam in terris cygnum canorum videmus?
3. Cur pericula belli timetis?
4. O quam frigida est aqua!
5. Et oculis<sup>1</sup> et animo videmus.
6. Quomodo vita tyrannorum veram amicitiam habet?
7. Quanta sunt tua erga me beneficia!
8. Virum bonum inimici non terrent.
9. Inter stultos maxime valet prudentia.
10. Quando eras tu Romae aut Corinthi?
11. Et stultos et caecos saepe videmus multos.
12. Nec nocet inimicis vir bonus nec invidet.
13. Alter puerorum impiger est, alter ignavus.

<sup>1</sup> Translate *with* (ablative of means).

## Write in Latin.

1. Do you see a narrow road in the forest? Yes ("I see").
2. How-great are the gifts of the gods!
3. We were both<sup>1</sup> weary and frightened.

<sup>1</sup> *et.*



4. We do not see wholly either with the eyes or with the mind (use *neque . . nec*).
5. The queen has two slaves, the one<sup>2</sup> tall, the other<sup>2</sup> stout.
- ✓ 6. We have neither riches nor glory.
7. Does a good man ever envy the bad?
8. The perils of war frighten cowards, but not strong men.
9. How-many fingers have-you on<sup>3</sup> the right-hand? how many on the left?
10. Pompey was an honest man, no-doubt,<sup>4</sup> and a good general; but proud, jealous, sullen, and-not<sup>5</sup> a true friend.
- ✓ <sup>2</sup> alter (acc.).      <sup>3</sup> in.      <sup>4</sup> quidem.      <sup>5</sup> neque.

# LESSON 9.

## Third Declension of Nouns.

### Vocabulary.

cōram (abl.), <i>in presence of.</i>	quiēs, ētis (F.), <i>rest.</i>
hirundo, inis (F.), <i>swallow.</i>	sōl, sōlis (M.), <i>the sun.</i>
iter, itineris (N.), <i>journey, march.</i>	sōlum, i (N.), <i>soil, land.</i>
jūcunditās, ātis (F.), <i>delight.</i>	tempus, oris (N.), <i>time.</i>
latro, ōnis (M.), <i>robber.</i>	vēnātor, ōris (M.), <i>hunter.</i>
mē (acc. or abl.), <i>me.</i>	vēr, vēris (N.), <i>spring.</i>
mūtatio, ōnis (F.), <i>change.</i>	vulnus, eris (N.), <i>wound.</i>

### Translate into English.

- Cantat vacuus cōram latrone viator.
- Milites Romani in hostium finibus pugnant.
- Mare vastum sub oculis militum patet.
- Hirundines veris tempore videmus.
- Virtus in astra spectat; in mortem timor.
- ✓ Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus.
- Inter heroas<sup>1</sup> veteres Herculem, Thesea,<sup>2</sup> Persea,<sup>2</sup> Iasona,<sup>3</sup> Bellerophonta<sup>3</sup> memoramus.
- ✓ Somnus est mortis imago.
- ✓ Immensas arbor habet opes.
- Subita formido occupat corda Romanorum.
- ✓ Rectores civitatis boni strenique erant multi.
- Hostes vim legionum atque equitum non sustinent.

<sup>1</sup> page 12. e.

<sup>2</sup> page 5. g.

<sup>3</sup> § 11, iii. 6. c, d.

- ✓ 13. Homo sum : humani<sup>4</sup> nihil a me alienum puto.
- ✓ 14. Fontem liquidum agnus non turbat.
- ✓ 15. L. Junius Brutus et L. Tarquinius Collatinus primi erant consules Romae.
- ✓ 16. Lampadas facesque dextris tenemus.
17. Fortuna spondet multa multis ; praestat nemini.
18. Senex bubulcus libertatem frustra orat.
19. Post equitem sedet atra Cura.
- ✓ 20. Pallida Mors aequo puls<sup>at</sup> pede pauperum tabernas regumque turres.
21. In sōlis defectionibus, sōli luna obstat.
22. Habet multum jucunditatis sōli caelique mutatio.
23. Ver praebet flores, formosa est messibus aestas.
24. Navita de ventis, de tauris narrat arator ;  
Enumerat miles vulnera, pastor oves.
- ✓ 25. Venator feras canibus agitat.
- ✓ 26. Labor et requies sunt pariter necessaria.<sup>5</sup>
- ✓ 27. Itinere et frigore et vulneribus fessus erat miles.
- ✓ 28. Senum multorum consilia sunt sana, corpora infirma.
29. Agricola laudat nemora sua amoena, et rura plena jucunditatis.
30. Neque est trepidatio diligentia, neque impudentia fortitudo.

<sup>4</sup> That is, "of what belongs to man."

<sup>5</sup> Neuter plural (§ 47, 2. b).

#### Write in Latin.

1. The ramparts<sup>1</sup> of the city are high and long.
2. The boy is in the garden with [his] father and mother.
3. The hunter's dogs are-hastening to the woods.
4. Riches, honor, [and] beauty are uncertain.
5. The enemy (plur.) puts-to-flight<sup>2</sup> the Roman legions.
6. A fox and a lion were once partners<sup>3</sup> in the chase.<sup>4</sup>
7. The virtue of [one's] parents is a great dower.<sup>5</sup>
8. A constant dropping wears-away<sup>6</sup> a stone.
9. The mind of man (plur.) is ignorant of future destiny.

<sup>1</sup> *moenia*.

<sup>2</sup> *fugo*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>3</sup> *socius*.

<sup>4</sup> *venatio*.

<sup>5</sup> *dos* (F.).

<sup>6</sup> *cavo*.<sup>1</sup>

10. The broad tree of Jove furnishes acorns for swine.<sup>7</sup>
- ✓ 11. The nymphs are guards of the fountains.
12. Vulcan furnishes thunderbolts to Jove.
13. A thousand shining fishes are-swimming<sup>8</sup> in the stream.

<sup>7</sup> page 14, 3.

<sup>8</sup> nato.<sup>1</sup>

## LESSON 10.

### Adjectives of the Third Declension.

#### Vocabulary.

adhibeo, <sup>2</sup> <i>apply.</i>	ingēns, tis, <i>vast, mighty.</i>
aequor, ōris (N.), <i>level, sea.</i>	iners, tis, <i>idle, inefficient.</i>
civitās, ātis (F.), <i>state.</i>	mergus, i (M.), <i>sea-gull.</i>
fallāx, ācis, <i>treacherous.</i>	pauper, eris, <i>poor</i> (not destitute).
fidēlis, e, <i>faithful.</i>	paupertās, ātis (F.), <i>poverty.</i>
ferēns, tis, <i>bringing.</i>	recēns, tis, <i>fresh.</i>
ferōx, ōcis, <i>fierce.</i>	revolo, <sup>1</sup> <i>fly back.</i>
fortis, e, <i>brave.</i>	scelerātus, a, um, <i>wicked.</i>
impleo, <sup>2</sup> <i>fill.</i>	torqueo, <sup>2</sup> <i>hurl.</i>

#### Translate into English.

1. Silvam veterem in montibus videmus.
2. Inertes semper maxime laborant.<sup>1</sup>
3. Medio celeres revolant ex aequore mergi.
- ✓ 4. Impia sub dulci melle venena latent.
5. Amicorum omnia<sup>2</sup> sunt communia.
6. Semper gravis est ira regum.
7. Filius sapiens laetificat patrem.
- ✓ 8. Fortuna fortes<sup>3</sup> juvat.
- ✓ 9. Ignis aurum probat, miseria fortes viros.
- ✓ 10. Paupertas omnes artes docet.
- ✓ 11. Alteri<sup>4</sup> divitiae, alteri ingentes opes sunt.
- ✓ 12. Senex est debilis et annis et morbo.
- ✓ 13. Timeo hostes et<sup>5</sup> dona ferentes.
- ✓ 14. Servi fideles pocula vino recenti implent.
- ✓ 15. Ferox leo agnum asperis lacerat dentibus.
- ✓ 16. Voluptas fallax est, et inimica virtuti.

<sup>1</sup> i.e. take most trouble.

<sup>2</sup> all things (every thing).

<sup>3</sup> "the brave," i.e. brave men. <sup>4</sup> "to the one are," i.e. the one has. <sup>5</sup> even.

17. Salus civitatis est civium virtus.
18. Vires<sup>6</sup> virorum sunt inter se<sup>7</sup> dispares.
19. Terribilia sunt fulmina Jovis, et sceleratis inimica.
20. Gravibus morbis<sup>8</sup> curationes adhibemus periculōsas.
21. Tu frigus amabile fessis tauris et pecori vago praebes.
22. Navi fragili omnes venti sunt contrarii.

<sup>6</sup> See page 14, 3.    <sup>7</sup> from one another (see § 19, 3. d).    <sup>8</sup> Dative.

Write in Latin.

1. The lion's strength (plur.) is vast.
2. In the tomb the poor [man] is equal to the rich.
3. With mighty force<sup>1</sup> the soldier hurls [his] spear.
4. The wicked fear the dreadful thunderbolts of Jove.
5. The valor<sup>2</sup> of general and **soldiers is the safety** of the state.
6. All good citizens call-on<sup>3</sup> the gods with humble prayers.
7. A wise father often has a foolish son.
8. Why do-you-fear the tiger?<sup>4</sup> Because he has mighty teeth and dreadful claws.
9. The horseman pricks-up<sup>5</sup> [his] horse with sharp spurs.
10. We fill the bowls daily with fresh milk.
11. In a short time the enemy (plur.) move [their] camp from the plain.

<sup>1</sup> vis.    <sup>2</sup> virtus.    <sup>3</sup> invoco.<sup>1</sup>    <sup>4</sup> tigris (§ 11, iii. 6. b).    <sup>5</sup> stimulo.<sup>1</sup>

LESSON II.

Comparison of Adjectives.

Vocabulary.

aequālis, e, of one's own age.	jūcundus, a, um, pleasant
aequitās, ātis (F.), justice.	plērique, aequē, aque, most.
egēns, tis, needy.	posterī, ōrum, posterity.
facētus, a, um, cheerful, funny.	sagāx, ācis, sagacious.
fēlix, icis, fortunate.	validus, a, um, strong.
gravis, e, heavy.	vēlōx, ōcis, swift.

Translate into English.

1. Quid est in otio jucundius quam sermo facetus?
2. Quis animi maximi aequitatem summam non laudat?
3. Labor voluptasque, dissimillima naturā, societate naturali sunt conjuncta.

4. Argentum vilius est auro,<sup>1</sup> virtutibus aurum.
5. Nihil est praestantius sapientiā.
6. Romam, urbem Italiae clarissimam, laudant poëtae.
7. Liberi saepe parentibus sunt simillimi.
8. O matre pulcrā filia pulcrior !
9. Caesarem, et virum fortissimum et imperatorem summum, nos posterī laudamus.
10. P. Clodius erat nequissimus<sup>2</sup> omnium aequalium.
11. Hostes maximum oppidum Hispanorum oppugnant.
12. Hieme pauperes sunt egentissimi.
13. Senem sapientissimum omnes Catonem vocant.
14. Magister noster omnium est doctissimus.
15. Lupi ferociores sunt quam canes.
16. Feliciores erant filii quam patres.
17. Filia pulchra pulcherrimae matri est simillima.
18. Permulti<sup>3</sup> senes validiores sunt quam plerique pueri.
19. Omnium animalium ferocissimus est tigris, sagacissimus elephātus, callidissima vulpes.

<sup>1</sup> *than gold* (abl.).

<sup>2</sup> See § 17, 2.

<sup>3</sup> See § 17, 5. *d.*

Write in Latin.

1. No one of the Romans was more eloquent than Cicero, no one more wise than Cato.
2. It was a very-heavy<sup>1</sup> load.
3. Care is swifter than the winds.
4. The glory of the Roman people was greatest in war.
5. The deeds of brave men are often very obscure.
6. Dogs are more sagacious than cats.
7. A queen is often the most wretched of all women.
8. Cornelia was the elder of the [two] sisters.
9. Men often dread even the smallest evils.
10. In the forest are very-many fierce animals, among others boars, wolves, and bears.
11. The children were more fortunate than [their] parents.
12. The farmer's servant is-giving very poor fodder<sup>2</sup> to his cattle.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Superlative.

<sup>2</sup> *malum pabulum*.

<sup>3</sup> *boves* (see page 14, 3).

## LESSON 12.

## Fourth and Fifth Declensions.

## Vocabulary.

aciēs, ēi (F.), <i>edge, line-of-battle.</i>	orno, <sup>1</sup> <i>adorn.</i>
adventus, ūs (M.), <i>coming.</i>	partus, a, um, <i>gotten.</i>
caesariēs, ēi (F.), <i>hair, locks.</i>	pendeo, <sup>2</sup> <i>hang, depend.</i>
contrā, <i>against.</i>	posterus, a, um, <i>the next.</i>
fluctus, ūs (M.), <i>billow.</i>	praeclārus, a, um, <i>glorious.</i>
glaciēs, ēi (F.), <i>ice.</i>	roscidus, a, um, <i>dewy.</i>
male, <i>ill, badly.</i>	sūdo, <sup>1</sup> <i>sweat, distil.</i>
mināx, ācis, <i>threatening.</i>	unguis, is (M.), <i>claw.</i>

## Translate into English.

1. Ex parvis rebus saepe magnae pendent.
2. Durae quercus sudant roscida mella.
- ✓ 3. Est mihi domi pater, est optima mater.
4. Altas quercus in silvis videmus.
5. In alto lacu plurimi sunt pisces.
- ✓ 6. Puerum minacia tauri cornua terrent.
7. Domus sunt splendidae in oppido.
8. Plurimas naves in portu videmus.
9. In magnis fluctibus maris natant pueri.
10. Validis arcubus Persae pugnant, longissimis hastis Macedōnes.
11. Circiter meridiem milites ad magistratus festinant.
12. Postero die Caesar cum omni equitatu confertissimā acie pugnat.
13. Pecunia male parta materies est plurimorum malorum.
14. Soror fidei est iustitia.
- ✓ 15. Solis occasu Caesar aciem Gallorum militibus suis monstrat.
16. Filio suo Aeneae alma Venus caesariem dat decōram.
17. Spes victoriae milites delectat.
18. Tauri contra leones cornibus pugnant.
19. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum.
20. Cantibus avium parvarum magnopere gaudemus.
- ✓ 21. Non domus nostra corpus est, sed hospitium, et quidem breve.

Write in Latin.

1. The father's coming delights the children.
2. The face of the goddess was most beautiful.
3. Caesar, with all his cavalry, fights against the line-of-battle of the Gauls.
- ✓ 4. We see very-hard ice upon<sup>1</sup> the lake.
- ✓ 5. A good man always keeps his promise.<sup>5</sup>
6. Bulls fight with [their] horns, boars with their tusks, lions with their claws.
7. In the most wretched case,<sup>2</sup> hope sustains<sup>3</sup> [our] minds.
8. About sunset the enemy (plur.) hasten towards<sup>4</sup> the city.
9. Of all things the sun is most glorious.

<sup>1</sup> *in* (with abl.).

<sup>2</sup> *status*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>3</sup> *sustento*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>4</sup> *ad*.

<sup>5</sup> *fides*.

LESSON 13.

Pronouns: Personal and Demonstrative.

Vocabulary.

**artifex, icis** (M.), *craftsman*.

**collēga, ae** (M.), *colleague*.

**formīca, ae** (F.), *ant*.

**frūgī** (indecl. § 17, 2), *thrifty*.

**mandātum, i** (N.), *command*.

**nonnullus, a, um, some** (§ 41, 2 e, R.).

**occāsus, ūs** (M.), *setting*.

**ortus, ūs** (M.), *rising*.

**pār, paris, equal** (§ 16, 3. a),

**poēma, atis** (N.), *poem*.

**respondeo, <sup>2</sup> answer**.

**rīdeo, <sup>2</sup> laugh, laugh at**.

**seges, etis** (F.), *standing corn*.

**vehementer, exceedingly**.

Translate into English.

1. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae.
2. Saepe eadem mandata servis suis dat artifex.
3. Cur stulta ista rana bovi magnitudinem<sup>1</sup> invidet?
4. Nemo hanc animi maximi aequitatem in ipsā morte<sup>2</sup> non laudat.
- ✓ 5. Pastor canisque ejus sunt fessi.
6. Ego et tu et frater tuus unā ambulamus.
7. Et tu et nonnulli collegae tui vehementer erratis.
8. Formica cibum sibi aestate parat.

<sup>1</sup> *envy to the ox his size, i.e. envy the ox for his size.*

<sup>2</sup> *at the very point of death.*

9. Labor voluptasque, dissimillima naturā, societate inter se naturali sunt conjuncta.

10. Ranae stultae regem a Jove orant. Pater deorum ridet, atque eis dat parvum tigillum.

11. Illa seges votis respondet frugi agricolae.

12. Sol nobis signa dat, sive ortu sive occasu.

13. Nemo hostis nobiscum<sup>3</sup> paribus armis pugnāt.

14. Ille dies erat tristissimus ; haec nox est laetissima.

✓ 15. Omnia mea<sup>4</sup> mecum porto.

16. Vos vobiscum<sup>5</sup> pugnatis.

17. Stultus sibi est inimicus.

18. Virtus et vitium semper inter se<sup>6</sup> pugnant.

19. Ista poëmata nobis sunt grata.

✓ 20. Non omnes eadem laudamus.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 19, f.

<sup>4</sup> my possessions.

<sup>5</sup> Less. 13, a.

<sup>6</sup> See § 19, 3. d.

#### Write in Latin.

1. Fools and the impatient are always fighting with themselves.<sup>1</sup>

2. These apples are sweet, those [are] sour.

3. We are wretched, you are happy.

4. Covetous [men] are hostile to themselves.

5. You<sup>2</sup> praise yourself too-much.

6. These songs are most pleasing to us.

7. I am a shepherd, you are a robber.

8. He has his brother with him at-home.

9. One of these boys is diligent, the other lazy.

<sup>1</sup> *secum, or inter se.*

<sup>2</sup> *ipse.*

#### LESSON 14.

Pronouns: Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite.

#### Vocabulary.

aestus, ūs (M.), *tide.*

aliquamdiū, *for some time.*

auctōritās, ātis (F.), *authority.*

cruor, ōris (M.), *blood (when shed).*

fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring.*

īnstō,<sup>1</sup> *to be at hand.*

maritīmus, a, um, *of the sea.*

obtinēo,<sup>2</sup> *hold, keep.*

ōra, ae (F.), *shore.*

postulo,<sup>1</sup> *claim, demand.*

quīvis (§ 21, 2. c), *any, every.*

sanguis, inis (M.), *blood.*

tolero,<sup>1</sup> *endure.*

tumultus, ūs (M.), *confusion.*



Translate into English.

1. Cuius dolori remedium est patientia.
2. Num quod<sup>1</sup> eloquentiae vestigium in Numa Pompilio appāret?
3. Miles quem laudas fidem non servat.
4. Quem deorum non invocamus?
5. Omnia animalia quae sanguinem habent, habent etiam cor.
6. Dies instat, quo die populus Romanus magistratus quotannis creat.
- ✓ 7. Bestiae in quo loco natae sunt, se ex eo<sup>2</sup> non commōvent.
- ✓ 8. Erat luna plena, quo die maximi sunt aestus maritimi.
- ✓ 9. Sunt nonnulli, quorum auctoritas apud<sup>3</sup> plebem plurimum valet.
- ✓ 10. Milites, quibus rex gratissimus erat, maestum aliquamdiu silentium obtinent.
- ✓ 11. Hic quoque sunt matres miserorum et parvuli liberi, quorum utrorumque<sup>4</sup> aetas laborem meum postulat.
12. Thebae ipsae, quod Boeotiae<sup>12</sup> caput est, in magno tumultu erant.<sup>5</sup>
13. Ibi vides quicquid<sup>6</sup> habeo copiarum.
14. Res Romana cuilibet finitimarum civitatum par erat.
15. Quo<sup>7</sup> major exercitus, eo<sup>7</sup> gravior clades est.
16. Ut quisque est exercitus maximus,<sup>8</sup> ita gravissima clades.
- ✓ 17. Quibus precibus virgines sanctae Vestam fatigant !
18. Quae caret<sup>9</sup> ora cruore nostro ?
19. Quem virum aut heroa<sup>10</sup> lyrā celebramus ?
20. Tu, quae<sup>11</sup> tua est fortitudo, adversam fortunam facillime toleras.

<sup>1</sup> any (§ 21, 1. a).

<sup>2</sup> Supply *loco*, and translate before *in quo*.

<sup>3</sup> with.

<sup>4</sup> of both of whom (§ 21, 2. c).

<sup>5</sup> Translate *was*, as to us the name *Thebes* is singular.

<sup>6</sup> See § 21, 2. b.

<sup>7</sup> See § 22, c.

<sup>8</sup> i.e. *the greater any army is* (See § 17, 5. c).

<sup>9</sup> *is without*, i.e. *is clear from the stain*.

<sup>10</sup> See § 11, iii. 6. f.

<sup>11</sup> *such is*, &c.

<sup>12</sup> *Boeotia*, a district of Greece.

21. Estne quisquam<sup>12</sup> (*or*, num quis est) omnium mortaliū justior ac fortior quam hic, quem merito laudas?

22. Quemcumque<sup>13</sup> videmus amicum, eum gratum habemus.

<sup>12</sup> § 21, 2. *h.*

<sup>13</sup> See p. 20, *a.*

**Write in Latin.**

1. The boys whom you praise are very idle.
2. What was the cause<sup>1</sup> of the war? Who is-tending the wounded<sup>2</sup> soldiers?
3. Those are good citizens who adorn the state by their warlike<sup>3</sup> glory, and their own homes by their virtues.
4. Whatever I have of riches, I give all to you.
5. We honor Rome, which<sup>4</sup> is the head of all Italy.
6. There was war between the Romans and Samnites, both of whom<sup>5</sup> were brave and warlike people.<sup>6</sup>
7. Anybody<sup>7</sup> enters the town in-the-day-time.<sup>8</sup>
8. Which do you consider the greatest general, Cæsar, Scipio, or Hannibal? Which the better<sup>9</sup> orator, Cicero or Demosthenes?

<sup>1</sup> *causa.*

<sup>2</sup> *vulneratus*

<sup>3</sup> *bellicus.*

<sup>4</sup> Neuter.

<sup>5</sup> Nominative.

<sup>6</sup> Plural.

<sup>7</sup> *quisvis.*

<sup>8</sup> *interdiu.*

<sup>9</sup> § 17, 5. *a.*

**LESSON 19.**

**Regular Verb: First Conjugation (*Active*).**

*Vocabulary.*

*āvoco*,<sup>1</sup> *call away.*

*cānus*, *a, um*, *gray, hoary.*

*colōnus*, *i (M.)*, *farmer (colonist).*

*ēgregius*, *a, um*, *remarkable.*

*foedus*, *a, um*, *disgraceful.*

*gēns*, *gentis (F.)*, *race, nation.*

*illūstro*,<sup>1</sup> *make famous.*

*lītus*, *oris (N.)*, *shore.*

*lūctus*, *ūs (M.)*, *grief.*

*lūstro*,<sup>1</sup> *purify.*

*nex*, *necis (F.)*, *death.*

*occupo*,<sup>1</sup> *seize.*

*quondam*, *once, formerly.*

*vehementer*, *exceedingly.*

**Translate into English.**

1. In medio campo errabant timidae oves.
2. Ferox lupus agnum nece injusta laceravit, nam fontem liquidum agnus miser non turbaverat.

3. Lauda mare : litus ama.
4. Humida solstitia atque hiemes orate serenas,  
Agricolae.
5. Me ne commendaveris<sup>1</sup> Caesari tuo.
6. Et tu et nonnulli collegae tui vehementer erravistis.
- ✓ 7. Nihil sine magno labore vita dedit mortalibus.
8. Magna fuit quondam capitis reverentia cani.
9. Foedus hostium timor omnem exercitum occupaverat.
10. Sulpiciorum<sup>2</sup> familiam egregia juris scientia illustravit.
11. Filium meum a conjunctione Caesaris<sup>3</sup> avocavi.
- ✓ 12. Luctus filii<sup>4</sup> mortui animum patris agitabat.
13. Me vexant luctus et longae taedia vitae.
14. Suevi,<sup>5</sup> Germanorum gens bellicosissima, fertilissima  
Germaniae loca occupaverant.
15. Cum hostes agros devastaverint, urbem ipsam oppug-  
nabunt.

<sup>1</sup> Prohibition (see p. 23, I. c).

<sup>2</sup> *The Sulpicii*, a Roman family.

<sup>3</sup> Translate *with Caesar*.

<sup>4</sup> Translate *for*, &c.

<sup>5</sup> *The Suevi*, or Swabians.

Write in Latin.

1. The enemy had seized<sup>1</sup> the camp by night.
2. You had asked, I refused.
3. If the enemy are-holding<sup>2</sup> the woods, they will easily  
drive our cavalry.
4. The soldiers carry ladders with them,<sup>3</sup> and easily enter  
the town.
5. Let<sup>4</sup> the soldiers carry<sup>4</sup> corn with them into the camp.
6. A stag praised his branching horns, but blamed the  
extreme thinness<sup>5</sup> of his legs.
7. Citizen (plur.) strove with citizen in valor.<sup>6</sup>
8. Do not carry all the corn with you.
9. Let us take-a-walk<sup>7</sup> in the garden.
- ✓ 10. The farmer sailed-over<sup>8</sup> the fields which he lately  
ploughed.

<sup>1</sup> *occupo*.

<sup>2</sup> *teneo*.

<sup>3</sup> *secum*.

<sup>4</sup> Present subj.

<sup>5</sup> *nimia tenuitas*.

<sup>6</sup> *virtus*.

<sup>7</sup> *deambulo*.

<sup>8</sup> *navigo*.

## LESSON 20.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation (*Passive*).

## Vocabulary.

appello, <sup>1</sup> <i>call, address.</i>	oppugno, <sup>1</sup> <i>attack.</i>
domo, <sup>1</sup> <i>ui, itum, subdue.</i>	perturbo, <sup>1</sup> <i>alarm.</i>
effemino, <sup>1</sup> <i>enfeeble.</i>	repudio, <sup>1</sup> <i>reject.</i>
extrā, <i>outside of.</i>	trepido, <sup>1</sup> <i>tremble.</i>
fautor, ōris (M.), <i>partisan.</i>	voluntās, ātis (F.), <i>will.</i>
honōrificus, a, um, <i>honorable.</i>	vulnero, <sup>1</sup> <i>wound.</i>

## Translate into English.

1. Agnus miser nece injusta laceratus est a lupo.
2. Monstrum ingens a virgine domitum est.
3. Nos omnium miserrimae virginum appellatae sumus.
4. Vos a Senatu honorificentissime<sup>1</sup> appellati estis.
5. Totis<sup>2</sup> trepidatum est<sup>3</sup> castris.<sup>2</sup>
6. Diu a Gallis acerrime<sup>1</sup> pugnabatur.
7. Illis locis<sup>4</sup> extra moenia non habitatur.
8. Haec urbs nostra a Gallis oppugnata est.
9. Regio imperio<sup>5</sup> duo sunt, iique consules appellantur.
10. Illius viri voluntati semper obtemperatur.<sup>6</sup>
11. Cur tantum perturbamini, cives?
12. Maria magna a Carthaginensibus navigabantur.
13. A fautoribus utriusque poëtae<sup>7</sup> diu disputatum est.
14. De agro cum regis legatis disceptatum est.
15. Ea quae animos effeminant non importantur.
16. Vera gloria nunquam a bonis viris repudiatur.
17. Ab omnibus promissa perpetuo servantur.
- ✓ 18. A dis quoque habitabuntur silvae.
19. Templis<sup>8</sup> deorum a Romanis temperatum est.

<sup>1</sup> See § 17, 1. c; 4.    <sup>2</sup> Translate, *throughout the camp* (see § 55, 3, f).

<sup>3</sup> *there was terror.*

<sup>4</sup> *in, &c.*

<sup>5</sup> *of royal power.*

<sup>6</sup> Translate *is heeded*, taking *the will* as subject.

<sup>7</sup> *of both poets.*

<sup>8</sup> See Note 6.

## Write in Latin.

1. All the soldiers will be wounded.
- ✓ 2. The faithful<sup>1</sup> guards were praised by all the citizens.

<sup>1</sup> *fidus.*

3. The nightingale<sup>2</sup> is charmed<sup>3</sup> by her-own songs.
4. Wreaths had been given to the victorious<sup>4</sup> soldiers.
5. Let the mountain be occupied<sup>5</sup> by our [men].
6. [A battle] will be fought to-morrow.<sup>6</sup>
7. Between the wolf and dog there was a long<sup>7</sup> dispute.<sup>8</sup>
8. Are you alarmed, Romans, at<sup>9</sup> the dangers of war?
9. There was-terror<sup>8</sup> throughout<sup>10</sup> the city.

<sup>2</sup> *lusciniā.*      <sup>3</sup> *delecto.*      <sup>4</sup> *victor.*      <sup>5</sup> *occupo.*      <sup>6</sup> *cras.*  
<sup>7</sup> *diu.*      <sup>8</sup> Verb, impers. passive.      <sup>9</sup> Ablative.      <sup>10</sup> *totus.*

## LESSON 21.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation (*Noun and Adjective Forms*).

### Vocabulary.

aedifico, <sup>1</sup> <i>build.</i>	quamvis, <i>however.</i>
apto, <sup>1</sup> <i>fit.</i>	redundo, <sup>1</sup> <i>overflow.</i>
calco, <sup>1</sup> <i>tread.</i>	vacat, <sup>1</sup> <i>there is leisure.</i>
dēbeo, <sup>2</sup> <i>owe, ought.</i>	vasto, <sup>1</sup> <i>ravage.</i>
jubeo, <sup>2</sup> jussi, <i>command.</i>	veto, <sup>1</sup> ui, itum, <i>forbid.</i>
maneo, <sup>2</sup> <i>wait, await.</i>	virilis, e, <i>manly.</i>
numero, <sup>1</sup> <i>count.</i>	volo, <sup>1</sup> <i>fly.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Turpe est terga<sup>1</sup> hostibus dare in armis.
2. Beatus esse sine virtute nemo potest.
3. Aut prodesse volunt, aut delectare poëtae.
4. Aptari onus viribus debet.
5. Sine pennis volare haud facile est.
6. Ciconiae, in alienas terras migraturae, in unum locum congregantur.

7. Ager quamvis fertilis sine cultura fructuosus esse non potest.

- ✓ 8. Neque abesse quicquam debet, neque redundare.
- ✓ 9. Arandi an<sup>2</sup> navigandi ars utilior est?
- ✓ 10. Omnes una manet nox, et calcanda<sup>3</sup> semel via leti.<sup>4</sup>
- ✓ 11. Animo cupido nihil satis festinatur.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *show the back to, i.e. retreat before.*

<sup>2</sup> or (§ 71, 2. a).

<sup>3</sup> i.e. *we must tread.*

<sup>4</sup> Understand *est*.

<sup>5</sup> i.e. *goes fast enough.*

12. Num potest esse bonus imperator sine usu rei-militaris,<sup>4</sup>  
aut sine scientia regionum terrestrium<sup>5</sup> aut maritimarum?
13. Summae dementiae<sup>6</sup> est in vitiis perseverare.
14. Aequam memento rebus in arduis servare mentem.
15. Divitem me esse vicini falso existimant.
16. Leges duo ex una familia magistratus creari vetuerunt.
17. Contra libidines est pugnandum.<sup>7</sup>
18. Te hilari esse animo valde me juvat.
19. Inchoare (*or*, incohare) haec studia non vacabit.
20. Armatos video stantes in limine primo.
21. Magna pars hominum, navigatura,<sup>8</sup> de tempestate non cogitat.
22. Anco regnante<sup>9</sup> Lucumo Romam<sup>10</sup> commigravit.
23. Hannibal ad vastandam Italiam paratus erat.
24. Infandum, regina, jubes renovare dolorem.

<sup>4</sup> soldiership.<sup>5</sup> See § 16, 2. a.<sup>6</sup> a mark of, &c.<sup>7</sup> i.e. we must, &c.<sup>8</sup> intending to sail.<sup>9</sup> in the reign of Ancus.<sup>10</sup> to Rome.

## Write in Latin.

1. We are good men if we help<sup>1</sup> those<sup>2</sup> whom<sup>2</sup> we can help.
2. Cæsar denies that he<sup>3</sup> can<sup>4</sup> give to any a way<sup>5</sup> through the province.
3. No-one beholding the whole<sup>6</sup> earth will doubt of<sup>7</sup> divine providence.
4. While fighting,<sup>8</sup> keep an even temper.
5. I see that you are of a cheerful temper (gen. or abl.).
6. No one [when] about-to-sail ought to think of storms.
7. Can any-one<sup>9</sup> be a good commander without knowledge of soldiership?
8. For a soldier<sup>10</sup> to refuse obedience is disgraceful.<sup>11</sup>
9. The Germans were prepared to ravage Gaul.<sup>12</sup>
10. The ancient laws forbade a plebeian<sup>13</sup> to be elected consul.
11. We are about-to-remove into the city.

<sup>1</sup> *prosum*.<sup>2</sup> Dative.<sup>3</sup> *se*.<sup>4</sup> Infinitive.<sup>5</sup> *iter*.<sup>6</sup> *universus*.<sup>7</sup> *de*.<sup>8</sup> *inter* with acc. of gerund.<sup>9</sup> *num quis*.<sup>10</sup> Accusative.<sup>11</sup> *turpis* (neut.).<sup>12</sup> *Gallia*.<sup>13</sup> *plebeius*.

LESSON 22.

Regular Verb : Second Conjugation.

Vocabulary.

adflicto,<sup>1</sup> dash about.

coetus, ūs (M.), assembly.

dēlectus, ūs (M.), a levy (of troops).

habeo,<sup>2</sup> ui, itum, have, hold.

improbis, a, um, wicked.

inrīdeo,<sup>2</sup> rīsi, rīsum, deride.

mītis, e, gentle.

pāreo,<sup>2</sup> ui, itum, obey (with dat.).

pendeo,<sup>2</sup> pependi, hang.

principium, i (N.), beginning.

sentēs, ium (M.), thorns.

stipula, ae (F.), stubble.

sustineo,<sup>2</sup> ui, tentum, sustain.

tondeo,<sup>2</sup> totondi, tōnsum, cut, mow.

vehementer, vigorously.

vigo,<sup>2</sup> ui, thrive, flourish.

Translate into English.

1. Urbem Romam a principio reges habuere.
2. Hostes impetum legionum atque equitum non sustinebant.
3. Ne invideris<sup>1</sup> fratri tuo.
4. In Romana civitate nulla umquam vehementius quam eloquentiae studia viguerunt.
5. Necessitati parere semper sapientis<sup>2</sup> est habitum.
6. Ille patris magni parere parabat imperio.
7. Nullum ad nocendum tempus angustum<sup>3</sup> est improbis.
8. Non mihi quicquam praestare vis videtur quam posse eloquentiam tenere hominum coetus.
9. Impius ne audet<sup>4</sup> placare donis iram deorum.
10. Uno tempore longas-naves<sup>5</sup> aestus complevit, et onerarias<sup>6</sup> tempestas adflictabat.
11. Non modo non invidetur juventuti, verum etiam favetur.
12. Bonus homo civibus suis gratum se videri studet.
13. Delectum haberi prohibebo.
14. Populi Romani auctoritati parendum est.
15. Nostrī milites a pugnando non abhorrebant.
16. Caesar Catonem inridere visus est.
17. Conscia mens recti famae mendacia ridet.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 23, I. c.

<sup>2</sup> wise, i.e. the act of a wise man.

<sup>3</sup> too-short.

<sup>4</sup> let not, &c. (see § 35, 2).

<sup>5</sup> galleys.

<sup>6</sup> [ships] of burden.

## Write in Latin.

- ✓ 1. You seem to me to be of a very cheerful mind.  
 2. The enemy kept themselves hidden in the woods.  
 3. The consul forbade the army to move from winter-quarters.<sup>1</sup>  
 4. We shall always obey the laws of the country.  
 5. Here the soldiers stood, and stoutly<sup>2</sup> sustained the attack of the enemy.  
 ✓ 6. Carthage was destroyed by the younger<sup>3</sup> Scipio Africanus.  
 7. It is difficult for a coward<sup>4</sup> to appear brave.<sup>4</sup>  
 8. No one should<sup>5</sup> envy anybody.<sup>6</sup>  
 9. Gaul is bounded by the river Rhine and the ocean.  
 10. The power of the Romans was feared by all nations.  
 11. Our friends were warned in vain.  
 ✓ 12. The frogs were frightened by the sound of the log.  
 13. A monkey sat [as] judge between a wolf and a fox.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative.<sup>2</sup> fortiter.<sup>3</sup> minor.<sup>4</sup> Accusative.<sup>5</sup> debet.<sup>6</sup> quisquam.

## LESSON 23.

## Regular Verb: Third Conjugation.

## Vocabulary.

ago,<sup>3</sup> ēgi, actum, *pass, act.*cēspes, itis (M.), *turf.*cinis, eris (M.), *ashes.*exsisto,<sup>3</sup> stiti, stitum, *arise.*mitto,<sup>3</sup> mīsi, missum, *send.*nātus. a, um, *born.*peto,<sup>3</sup> petīvi (ii), itum, *seek.*rector, ōris (M.), *ruler.*rumpo,<sup>3</sup> rūpi, ruptum, *break.*tango,<sup>3</sup> tetigi, tactum, *touch.*tolerābilis, e, *passable.*traho,<sup>3</sup> xi, ctum, *drag, bring.*

## Translate into English.

1. Rectores civitatis boni sapientesque exstītēre multi; oratores autem diu nulli boni, vix singulis<sup>1</sup> aetatibus singuli<sup>1</sup> tolerabiles inveniuntur.

2. Incipe, parve puer, risu cognoscere matrem.

3. Ex ducentis viginti navibus triginta fugerunt, non-aginta cum pugnatoribus captae sunt, demersae ceterae.

<sup>1</sup> See Grammar, § 18, 2. a.



4. Ranae ab Jove regem petiēre.<sup>2</sup> Pater deorum risit, atque illis dedit parvum tigillum.

5. Homines amplius oculis quam auribus credunt.

6. Vita omnis Germanorum in venationibus atque in rebus militaribus agitur; ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student.

7. Aratus, homo ignarus astrologiae, optimis versibus de caelo stellisque dixit.

8. Hominis<sup>3</sup> est animum praeparare, Dei autem est regere eventus.

9. Cur times cavum Tiberim tangere?

10. Non vivere bonum est, sed bene vivere.

11. Philosophia ars et ratio est bene vivendi.

12. Ne necesse habueris<sup>4</sup> epistolam reddere.

13. Homines ad intelligendum et ad agendum nati sumus.

14. Hoc ne<sup>5</sup> nunc quidem<sup>5</sup> difficile factu est.

15. Ne sapiens quidem semper sapit; stultus non semper desipit.

16. Haedui<sup>6</sup> legatos ad Caesarem miserant rogatum<sup>7</sup> auxilium.

17. Pontem in Arari Caesar faciendum curat.

18. Non est injussu<sup>8</sup> imperatoris, id est Dei, de statione vitae decedendum.

19. Veritas et justitia vel<sup>9</sup> amicitiae sunt anteponenda.

20. Theramenes<sup>10</sup> conjectus in carcerem venenum hilariter ac fortiter bibisse dicitur.

21. Alba ligustra cadunt, vaccinia nigra leguntur.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 27, c<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> man's part.

<sup>4</sup> do not consider, &c.

<sup>5</sup> not even.

<sup>6</sup> The Aedui, a people of Gaul.

<sup>7</sup> Supine.

<sup>8</sup> See § 12, 4. b.

<sup>9</sup> even.

<sup>10</sup> Theramēnes, a politician of Athens, one of the Thirty Tyrants, put to death by his colleagues.

# Write in Latin.

1. Cicero wrote many letters to his friend Atticus.

2. Unrelenting<sup>1</sup> labor conquers all [things].

3. Cæsar with all [his] cavalry made an attack<sup>2</sup> upon<sup>3</sup> the Germans, who presently<sup>4</sup> sent ambassadors to him to ask peace.

<sup>1</sup> improbus.

<sup>2</sup> impetus.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>3</sup> in (with acc.).

<sup>4</sup> mox.

4. Antony married<sup>5</sup> Octavia, the sister of Octavianus.
5. Octavia, the sister of Octavianus, married<sup>6</sup> Antony.
6. The mischievous<sup>8</sup> boys were running through my garden.
7. The forces of the Romans were led by Crassus.
8. The [commander's] tent<sup>9</sup> had been set-on-fire by the barbarians.
9. Two stags of vast size<sup>10</sup> were caught by the hunters.
10. The women weeping threw<sup>11</sup> themselves at<sup>12</sup> Cæsar's<sup>13</sup> feet.
11. After the log, Jupiter sent a water-snake<sup>14</sup> to the wretched frogs, which devoured them daily.
12. The senate decreed rewards to the soldiers who had not betrayed the town.

<sup>5</sup> *duco*.<sup>6</sup> *nubo*.<sup>7</sup> Dative.<sup>8</sup> *improbis*.<sup>9</sup> *praetorium*.<sup>10</sup> *corpus* (abl.).<sup>11</sup> *projicio*.<sup>12</sup> *ad*.<sup>13</sup> Dative.<sup>14</sup> *hydrus*.

## LESSON 24.

## Regular Verb: Fourth Conjugation.

## Vocabulary.

ahēneus, a, um, *of-brass*.aperio,<sup>4</sup> ui, apertum, *open*.catēna, ae (F.), *chain*.coerceo,<sup>2</sup> ui, itum, *check*.cōnscio,<sup>4</sup> *be-conscious*.invenio,<sup>4</sup> vēni, ventum, *find*,*discover*.maestus, a, um, *sorrowing*.nūtrio,<sup>4</sup> *feed, nourish*.palūs, ūdis (F.), *marsh*.salio,<sup>4</sup> ui, saltum, *leap*.sentio,<sup>4</sup> si, sum, *feel, judge*.ūro,<sup>3</sup> ussi, ustum, *burn*.urtica, ae (F.), *nettle*.vincio,<sup>4</sup> vinxi, vinctum, *bind*.vineā, ae (F.), *trellis* (for vines).

## Translate into English.

1. Ubinam in tertis cygnum nigrum inuenimus?
2. Ad rivum eundem lupus et agnus venerant.
3. Nutritur vento, vento restinguitur ignis.
4. Saepius<sup>1</sup> ventis agitatur ingens  
Pinus, et celsae graviore casu  
Decidunt turres, feriuntque summos  
Fulgura montes.

<sup>1</sup> See § 17, 5. a.

5. Aliud<sup>2</sup> est audire, aliud intelligere.
6. Hic murus aheneus esto :  
Nil conscire sibi, nullā pallescere culpā.
7. Alius alio<sup>3</sup> plura invenire potest, nemo omnia.
8. Athenis summa dicendi vis et inventa est et perfecta.
9. Famē coacta<sup>4</sup> vulpes uvam altā in vineā pendentem appetebat, summis saliens viribus.
10. Minime sibi quisque notus est, et difficillime de se quisque sentit.
11. Terra salutiferas herbas, eademque nocentes  
Nutrit ; et urticae proxima saepe rosa est.
12. Cn.<sup>5</sup> Julius Agricola primā in juventute studium philosophiae acrius hausit : prudentia matris incensum animum coercuit.
13. Divitis audita est cui<sup>6</sup> non opulencia Croesi ?
14. Ludibrio fratris Remus novos transiliit muros. Inde ab irato Romulo interfectus est.
15. Impium lenite clamorem, sodales.
16. Jugurtha, Numidarum rex, regie vestitus et vinctus catenis, cum duobus filiis, currum victoris antecessit.
17. Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito neque urito.
18. In montibus castellum erat ingens, naturā munitum.
19. Oppidani portas patefaciunt Romanis.
20. Summo labore urbs erat munita.
21. Corneliae filii maximā curā a matre eruditi erant.
22. Militum corpora a sociis sepulta sunt.
23. Vere colles arvaeque floribus vestiuntur.
24. Asinus rudit, bos mugit, canis latrat, catulus gannit, equus hinnit, gallus canit, corvus crocit, leo rugit, ovis balat, serpens sibilat, sus grunnit, infans vagit.

<sup>2</sup> one thing.

<sup>3</sup> See § 47, 9.

<sup>4</sup> cogo.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>5</sup> See § 15, 4.

<sup>6</sup> by whom ?

**Write in Latin.**

1. The body of Cæsar was buried by his sorrowing friends.
2. The Roman camp had been fortified by Labienus with great labor.

3. The Helvetii had now<sup>1</sup> arrived-at<sup>2</sup> the territory<sup>3</sup> of the Sequani.

✓ 4. A great crash is heard in the woods, from falling trees.<sup>4</sup>

5. The Britons<sup>5</sup> were clothed with skins, and lived<sup>6</sup> in the woods and marshes.

6. Those scoundrelly<sup>7</sup> robbers were severely punished.

✓ 7. Let the gates of the city be opened to the conquering army.

✓ 8. In spring the trees are clad with blossoms, in summer are laden<sup>8</sup> with fruits.

9. The soldiers bound the prisoner with chains.

10. In punishing,<sup>9</sup> anger is by-no-means<sup>10</sup> to-be-admitted.<sup>11</sup>

11. Let the voice of justice be-heard.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> jam.    <sup>2</sup> pervenio in.    <sup>3</sup> fines.    <sup>4</sup> Genitive.    <sup>5</sup> Britannus.

<sup>6</sup> habito.<sup>1</sup>    <sup>7</sup> scelestus.    <sup>8</sup> onero.<sup>1</sup>    <sup>9</sup> Gerund.    <sup>10</sup> minime.

<sup>11</sup> adhibendus.    <sup>12</sup> Pres. subjunctive.

## LESSON 25.

### Deponent Verbs.

#### Vocabulary.

adipiscor, <sup>3</sup> adeptus, gain, get.	loquor, <sup>3</sup> locūtus, speak.
adsequor, <sup>3</sup> secūtus, gain, reach.	māternus, a, um, of a mother.
aggredior, <sup>3</sup> aggressus, attack.	mentior, <sup>4</sup> speak falsehood.
arx, arcis (F.), tower.	nascor, <sup>3</sup> nātus, be born.
classis, is (F.), fleet.	polliceor, <sup>2</sup> itus, promise.
ēgredior, <sup>3</sup> ēgressus, go out.	pōpuleus, a, um, of the poplar.
frōns, tis (F.), brow.	queror, <sup>3</sup> questus, bewail.
fruo, <sup>3</sup> fructus, enjoy.	sequor, <sup>3</sup> secūtus, follow.
irascor, <sup>3</sup> irātus, be angry.	ūtor, <sup>3</sup> ūsus, use, employ.

#### Translate into English.

1. Testis fidelis non mentitur.
2. Nunquam sapiens irascitur.
3. De multis rebus locuti sumus. *we have spoken of many things*
4. Subita tempestas morabatur classem.
5. Saepe suas Liber<sup>1</sup> miratus-est uvas.
6. Vocalem Orphea<sup>2</sup> insecutae-sunt silvae.

<sup>1</sup> A name of Bacchus.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 5, g.

7. Improbis plurima pollicetur, pauca perficit.
- ✓ 8. Populeā Philomela<sup>3</sup> sub umbrā  
Amissos queritur pullos.
9. Nemo potentes aggreditur tutus.<sup>4</sup>
10. Sine studio et ardore quodam amoris nihil egregium  
quisquam adsequetur. *gain*
11. Cur stulta ista rana bovem imitatur?
12. Frons, oculi, vultus, saepe mentiuntur.
13. Nox atque praeda hostes remorata sunt.
14. Deos deasque omnes ne eveniat<sup>5</sup> precamur.
15. Omnia vetustate labuntur, nec quicquam tutum a  
senectute est.
16. Aliquando oculi suo munere non funguntur.
17. Omnibus in vita commodis<sup>6</sup> unā cum amicis frui.<sup>7</sup>
- to 18. Puppibus egressus Latīā stetit exsul in herbā. 27
19. Deos solos venerabantur Germani Solem et Vulcanum  
et Lunam. In fluminibus saepe lavabantur, et pellibus aut  
parvis tegimentis utebantur.
20. Sine ullo vulnere victoriā Cæsar potitur.
21. Tu voluptate frueris, ego utor.
22. Senectutem omnes sperant, eandem accusant adeptam.<sup>8</sup>
23. Orpheus arte maternā<sup>9</sup> rapidos fluminum lapsus mora-  
batur.
24. Non rastros patietur humus, non vinea falcem;  
Robustus quoque jam tauris iuga solvet arator.
25. Nocens omnis<sup>10</sup> de se loquentes audire videtur.

<sup>3</sup> nightingale.

<sup>4</sup> See § 47, 6.

<sup>5</sup> that it may not happen.

<sup>6</sup> advantages (see p. 163, 31).

<sup>7</sup> Imperative.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 38, d.

<sup>9</sup> with his mother's skill: Orpheus was the son of Apollo and the Muse Calliope.

<sup>10</sup> Acc. plur. (see § 16, 3. c<sup>2</sup>).

Write in Latin.

1. The Rauraci go-forth<sup>1</sup> along with the Helvetii into Gaul.

2. Many of<sup>2</sup> the Greeks, who had gone forth [to] Troy *once*  
never returned<sup>3</sup> home.

3. Orgetorix persuades Dumnorix to-attempt<sup>4</sup> the same.

<sup>1</sup> proficiscor.<sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup> ex. <sup>3</sup> revertor,<sup>3</sup> sus. <sup>4</sup> conor (use ut with pres. subj.).

4. Cato the elder died in the eighty-fifth year of his age.
  5. On-every-side<sup>5</sup> flowers sprang-up<sup>6</sup> in the fields and meadows.
  6. A violent storm delayed Cæsar [when] about-to-sail for<sup>7</sup> Greece.
  7. Speak little,<sup>8</sup> promise with-caution,<sup>9</sup> and remember always to keep [your] word.<sup>10</sup>
  8. The lieutenant will measure-out<sup>11</sup> corn to the soldiers.
  9. I entirely forgot myself.<sup>12</sup> *voluit*
  10. Pity me,<sup>12</sup> pity our hardships.
  11. My son has reached<sup>13</sup> the same grades<sup>14</sup> of honor.
- <sup>5</sup> *undique*.    <sup>6</sup> *nascor*.    <sup>7</sup> *in*.    <sup>8</sup> *pauca* (N. plur.).    <sup>9</sup> *caute*.  
<sup>10</sup> *servare fidem*.    <sup>11</sup> *metior*.    <sup>12</sup> Genitive.    <sup>13</sup> *consequor*.  
<sup>14</sup> *gradus*.

## LESSON 26.

## Irregular, Defective, and Impersonal Verbs.

## Vocabulary.

cōspicio, <sup>3</sup> <i>spexi</i> , <i>ctum</i> , <i>behold</i> .	rōfero, <i>display</i> .
dēmum, <i>in short</i> .	repentinus, a, um, <i>sudden</i> .
fīnio, <sup>4</sup> <i>put an end to</i> .	retro, <i>backward</i> .
irācundus, a, um, <i>passionate</i> .	supplex, <i>icis</i> , <i>suppliant</i> .
nemus, oris (N.), <i>grove</i> .	vēnor, <sup>1</sup> <i>hunt</i> .

## Translate into English.

1. Acriores fiebant dux militesque.
2. Quid est tam regium quam opem ferre supplicibus?
3. Idem<sup>1</sup> velle atque idem nolle, ea demum vera est amicitia.
4. Noli esse amicus homini iracundo.
5. Virtuti retro ire non licet. *dat*.
6. Potest ex casa magnus vir exire; virtus omni loco nascitur.
7. Aut prodesse volunt aut delectare poëtae.
8. Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.
9. Venatum Aeneas unaque miserrima Dido  
In nemus ire parant.

<sup>1</sup> *alike*.

10. Famē coacta vulpes uvam altā in vinea pendentem adpetebat, summis saliens viribus. Tangere autem non potuit. Tunc discedens, "Nondum" inquit "est matura; nolo acerbam sumere."

11. Ipse animi discessus a corpore fit sine dolore, et fit plerumque sine sensu, nonnunquam etiam cum voluptate.

12. Romani Sabini<sup>1</sup>que in mediā valle redintegrarunt<sup>2</sup> proelium. Tum Sabinae mulieres, crinibus passis<sup>3</sup> scissāque veste,<sup>4</sup> ausae sunt se inter tela volantia inferre, hinc patres hinc viros orantes. Movet res cum<sup>5</sup> multitudinem tum<sup>5</sup> duces. Silentium et repentina fit quies. Inde duces prodeunt, nec pacem modo sed civitatem unam ex duabus faciunt, regnum consociant, imperium omne conferunt Romam.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 27, c<sup>b</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Participle of *pando*.

<sup>4</sup> with dishevelled locks and torn garments.

<sup>5</sup> See § 22, d.

#### Write in Latin.

1. Many cannot bear the pain of sickness.
2. Bad citizens bore arms against [their] country.
3. The river Rhine flows<sup>1</sup> a long distance through the territory of the Germans.
4. The Helvetii wonder that Cæsar<sup>2</sup> has so-long borne<sup>2</sup> the wrongs brought on by them.
- ✓ 5. The sapling at length becomes a tree.
6. Do-not<sup>3</sup> tell-a-lie.
7. What we wish we gladly believe.
8. Love others, if you wish to be loved yourself.
9. Many will hate you, if you love yourself alone.
10. We<sup>5</sup> are-allowed<sup>4</sup> to be free.<sup>5</sup>
11. Remember that you are mortal.
12. Then the god said: "Because you would-not<sup>6</sup> bear your good, endure<sup>7</sup> the evil."
13. At length Cæsar (acc.) was weary of the business.
14. While the greedy dog wishes to grasp the shadow, he lets-fall<sup>8</sup> the meat from his mouth.

<sup>1</sup> Lit. "is borne."

<sup>2</sup> Accus. and infin.

<sup>3</sup> *noli* (§ 57, 7. a).

<sup>4</sup> *licet*.

<sup>5</sup> Dative.

<sup>6</sup> *nolo*.

<sup>7</sup> *perfero*.

<sup>8</sup> *omitto*

## EXAMPLES IN POETRY.

1. Jam glacialis hiemps squalentia protulit ora,  
Terraque marmoreo candida facta gelu est;  
Nix jacet, et glaciem nec sol pluviaeve resolvunt,  
Indurat Boreas, perpetuamque facit. — *Ovid.*
2. Jam satis terris nivis atque dirae  
Grandinis misit. Pater, et rubente  
Dexterā sacras jaculatus arces  
Terruit urbem. — *Horace.*
3. Diffugere nives, redeunt jam gramina campis,  
Arboribusque comae;  
Mutat terra vices, et decrescentia ripas  
Flumina praetereunt;  
Frigora mitescunt Zephyris; Ver proterit Aestas. — *Id.*
4. Molli paulatim flavescet campus aristā,  
Incultis rubens pendebit sentibus uva,  
Et durae quercus sudabunt roscida mella. — *Virgil.*
5. Cespes Tyrio mollior ostro  
Solet impavidos ducere somnos:  
Aurea rumpunt tecta quietem,  
Vigilesque trahit purpura noctes;  
Pectora pauper secunda gerit.
6. Beatus ille qui procul negotiis,  
Ut prisca gens mortalium,  
Paterna rura bubus exercet suis,  
Solutus omni fenore;  
Neque excitatur classico miles truci,  
Neque horret iratum mare;  
Forumque vitat, et superba civium  
Potentiorum limina. — *Horace.*
7. Justum ac tenacem propositi virum  
Non civium ardor prava jubentium,  
Non vultus instantis tyranni,  
Mente quatit solidā. — *Id.*



## PART SECOND.

### CONSTRUCTIONS OF SYNTAX.

NOTE. — It may be best to proceed at once from the foregoing lessons to the course of reading provided in Part Fourth, reserving the following section to be studied as the constructions occur in reading, and for systematic practice in writing Latin, once a week or oftener, at the convenience of the teacher. It should be compared with the “Synopsis of Constructions” given at the end of this volume. The letter R. refers to the short rules on pages 162, 163 (Grammar, § 75).

#### A. — Uses of Cases : 1. As Objects of Verbs.

Notice that all of the four Oblique cases may be used in Latin with different classes of verbs, being represented alike in English by the Objective case. Thus, —

1. **hominem video**, *I see the man* (ACCUSATIVE).
2. **homi*n*i servio**, *I serve the man* (DATIVE).
3. **homi*n*is misereor**, *I pity the man* (GENITIVE).
4. **homine amicō ūtor**, *I treat the man as a friend* (ABLATIVE).

#### 1. Accusative as Direct Object.

LEARN § 52, 1. (Object-Accusative), with *a*, *b*, *d* (verbs of *feeling*, cognate accusative, and compounds).

*a.* The accusatives in *a* are usually rendered with a preposition in English, though sometimes a transitive verb may be supplied : as, **ridēre**, *to laugh at or ridicule*; **dolēre**, *to grieve at or lament*, &c.

*b.* With the compounds in *d* compare those of § 51, 2. *d*; noticing that there is usually no difference in the translation of the two classes of verbs, which are generally transitive in English : as, **adire aliquem**, *to approach one*; **obstare alicui**, *to withstand one*.

## Examples.

1. Africano<sup>1</sup> industria virtutem, virtus gloriam, gloria aemulos comparavit.

2. Tres jam copiarum partes Helvetii flumen traduxerant.

3. Saepe suas Liber<sup>2</sup> miratus est uvas.

4. Rastros non patietur humus.

5. Paulatim Germani Rhenum transire consueverant.

6. Posthac vitam<sup>3</sup> tutiorem vivemus.

7. Joca tua plena facetiarum risimus satis.

8. Iram demetitur Deus suam; clementiam profundit.

9. Suas quisque miseras dolet.

10. Nec te, juvenis memorande, silebo. *quoniam non*

<sup>1</sup> Dative.      <sup>2</sup> A name of Bacchus.      <sup>3</sup> Cognate accus. (§ 52, 1. b).

## Write in Latin.

1. A sudden tempest had delayed the ships.

2. A soft answer subdues<sup>1</sup> wrath.

3. Appius Claudius, the censor, brought<sup>2</sup> the Appian water into the city, and laid<sup>3</sup> the Appian Way.

4. Hannibal had already crossed the Alps.

5. Cæsar led his forces across the Rhine.

6. They afterwards lived a safer life.

7. Poverty teaches all the arts.

8. My son complains<sup>4</sup> [of] his fortune.

9. We shall go once [on] the last journey.

10. All men laugh-at folly: all men grieve-at misery.

<sup>1</sup> *frango.*

<sup>2</sup> *induco.*

<sup>3</sup> *sterno.*

<sup>4</sup> *queror.*<sup>3</sup>

## 2. Two Accusatives.

§ 52, 2. with *a* and *c* (appositive and secondary object: R. 25); also *b* and *d* (compounds, and verbs of *hiding*).

## Examples.

1. Te tua fata docebo.

2. Deos deasque omnes pacem oramus.

3. Quid me ista rogas? Stoicos roga.

4. Iter omnes celabo.

5. Nonnulli utilia solum pueros docent, honesta negligunt.
6. Tu modo posce deos veniam.
7. Juvenes avum Numitorem regem salutabant.
8. Consul primus rogatus est sententiam.
9. Illud puer saepe admonitus erat.
10. Nos hoc diu celamur.
11. Helvetii pacem a Cæsare petierunt.

Write in Latin.

1. I will teach you your destiny.
2. We beseech<sup>2</sup> peace [of] all the gods and goddesses.
3. I did not hide from you [my] friend's opinion.
4. Why do you ask me that? Ask your father.
5. The consul Nero<sup>1</sup> skilfully concealed his march [from] Hannibal.
6. The senate saluted Cicero [as] father of [his] country.
7. Lucius Junius Brutus was called the liberator of Rome.
8. The people elected Lucius Junius Brutus and Lucius Tarquinius Collatinus [as] first consuls.
9. An old herdsman in vain begged<sup>2</sup> [his] liberty [of] Vespasian.

<sup>1</sup> Put the name before the title.

<sup>2</sup> *oro*.

### 3. Dative of Indirect Object.

§ 51, 1. and 2. with *a* and *d'* (R. 14, 16); also *c*, *e*, *f*, reading carefully the classes of verbs in *a* and *b*.

*a*. These classes of verbs will be learned gradually, in the course of practice. Some of those in *a* (as *to favor*, *envy*, *serve*, &c.) seem to be transitive. In fact, however, the Latin retains a primary meaning which is lost in English: as, **invidere** (*to envy*) is *to look* [askance] *at one*; **servire** is *to be a slave*; **suadere** is *to make* [a thing] *pleasant to any one* (compare **suāvis**, *sweet*). See Remark 1 (page 123), and the second paragraph of the Note on page 121 of the grammar.

*b*. The verbs in 2. *c* are to be compared with those of Giving, &c., in 1: though different in kind *as seen from the English point of view*, their construction in Latin is the same: thus in the sen-

tence **invidet mihi divitias**, *he envies me for my riches*, **divitiās** is the direct and **mihi** the indirect object of **invideo**, though the opposite is the case in English.

#### Examples.

1. Nil pictis timidus navita puppibus fidit.
2. Homines amplius oculis quam auribus credunt.
3. Nonnulli levissimam delectationem gravissimae utilitati anteponunt.
4. Dii immortales hoc tibi delictum ignoscent.
5. Servi dominis suis maledixerunt.
6. Milites integri et recentes fessis succurrunt.
7. Innocentiae nostrae, iudices, subvenite.
8. A bono filio matri semper parebitur.
9. A victore milite templis deorum parcendum est.
10. Uterque consul legioni illi indulserat.
11. Invidetur praestanti florentique fortunae.
12. Mihi numquam persuaderi potuit, animos esse mortales.

#### Write in Latin.

1. The ant gets itself food in summer-time.
2. The sun shall give thee signs.
3. You pardon yourself ; others you pardon not.
4. Men believe their eyes more than their ears.<sup>6</sup>
5. Patience heals<sup>1</sup> any<sup>2</sup> pain.
6. He told me every thing.
7. I mercifully spared the wretched man.
8. A faithful soldier serves the state.
9. The soldiers spared<sup>3</sup> the temples of the gods.
10. Our men pressed-hard<sup>4</sup> the flying Gauls.

(Passive.)

11. Your glory is envied.<sup>5</sup>
12. Liars are not believed.<sup>7</sup>
13. The temples of the gods were spared.
14. That age is not envied, but even favored.
15. The authority of the senate will be obeyed.
16. Clodius was distrusted by all good citizens.

<sup>1</sup> *medeor.*

<sup>2</sup> *quivis.*

<sup>3</sup> *tempero.*

<sup>4</sup> *insto.*

<sup>6</sup> *auris.*

<sup>5</sup> See Examples 10 and 19, on page 62.

<sup>7</sup> *credo.*

4. *Genitive as Object.*

§ 50, 4. *a*, *b*, *c* (verbs of *memory*, *feeling*, &c.), observing the peculiar genitives of *b*, and the construction of the Impersonals in *c*<sup>2</sup> and *d*; also *e* (*egeo*).

Examples.

1. Senex veterum meminit dolorum.
2. Hunc puerum ignaviae suae neque pudet neque taedet.
3. Taedet me quotidianarum harum molestiarum.
4. At vos, Arcadii, caeci miserescite regis.
5. Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupidinis suae.
6. Suae quemque fortunae paenitet.
7. Arguitur Verres repetundarum.
8. Conjurati omnes capitis damnati sunt.
9. Reminiscere, inquit, pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.

Write in Latin.

1. Cato admonished the judges of the laws and of [their] *ath.*<sup>1</sup>
2. We have-no-need<sup>2</sup> of your help.
3. I shall always remember this day and place.
4. The man is neither ashamed nor sorry for his cowardice.
5. The Athenians charged Socrates with impiety.
6. Forget slaughter and conflagration.
7. I lack not gold or silver.
8. You have charged me in-my-absence<sup>3</sup> with a capital offence.<sup>5</sup>
9. Brutus condemned to death<sup>4</sup> his two sons.

<sup>1</sup> *religio*.

<sup>2</sup> *nihil indigēre*.

<sup>3</sup> *absens*.

<sup>4</sup> § 50, 4. *b*.

<sup>5</sup> *res capitalis*.

5. *Ablative as Object.*

§ 54, 6. *d* (ablative with *utor*, &c. : R. 31).

Observe that these are in reality ablatives of *means*, and that they may generally be represented in English by a phrase with a preposition : as, *vescitur carne*, *he eats (feeds on) flesh*; *amicitiā meā abutuntur*, *they abuse (take advantage of) my friendship*.

## Examples.

1. Impedimentis castrisque Romani potiti sunt.
2. Aliquando oculi suo munere non funguntur.
3. Omnibus in vita commodis unā cum amicis fruimur.
4. Frater meus omnibus vitae officiis fungitur.
5. Divitiis, nobilitate, viribus male utimini.
6. Britanni aere pro nummo utebantur.
7. Dii nec escis nec potionibus vescuntur.
8. Lacte, caseo, carne vescor, scribit Anacharsis Scythes.
9. Quo usque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientia nostra?

## Write in Latin.

1. The ancient Germans fed<sup>1</sup> chiefly on milk and meat.
2. The Macedonian<sup>7</sup> phalanx employed<sup>2</sup> very-long<sup>3</sup> spears.
3. We deem<sup>4</sup> Cicero worthy<sup>4</sup> of the highest praise of eloquence.
4. A brave man bravely performs his duty.
5. A base man takes-advantage-of<sup>5</sup> the ignorance or folly of others.
6. We enjoy the gifts of the earth, which therefore we call fruits and crops.
7. The soldiers of-the-legion<sup>6</sup> used a shield, a javelin, and a short sword.

<sup>1</sup> vescor.    <sup>2</sup> utor.    <sup>3</sup> praelongus.    <sup>4</sup> dignor.<sup>1</sup>    <sup>5</sup> abutor.    <sup>6</sup> legionarius.

<sup>7</sup> Macedonicus.

**B. — Uses of Cases : 2. As Modifying Adjectives.**

NOTE. — Some of the following are also to be classed among the adverbial uses of cases ; but they are distinguished by being used to *complete the meaning* of the adjective on which they depend.

6. *Genitive with Adjectives.*

§ 50, 3. *b, c, d* (relative adjectives, genitive of *specification*, adjectives of *likeness*, &c.).

Compare the lists of adjectives in § 50, 3. *d* with that in § 51, 6. *c*. These adjectives, when followed by the genitive, have in fact become nouns (compare § 47, 3) : as. **cognatus Ciceronis**, *Cicero's kinsman* ; **Ciceroni cognatus**, *kindred with Cicero*. [Compare such phrases as **meus aequalis**, *my contemporary*.]

Examples.

1. Galli sunt barbari, et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti.
2. Mens hominum nescia fati est, sortisque futurae.
3. Misi homines earum regionum peritissimos.
4. Habetis ducem memorem vestri oblitum sui.
5. Cassandrae inerat mens provida rerum futurarum.
6. Homini erat mens ferox, impotens irae.
7. Corpus patiens erat inediae, vigiliae, alioris.
8. Nostra vita insidiarum est et metus plena.
9. Nulla aetas virtutis feracior erat.
10. Orbus auxilii opumque ad te confugio.

Write in Latin.

1. This man is eager<sup>1</sup> for glory and greedy<sup>2</sup> of praise.
2. Most boys are careless<sup>3</sup> about antiquities.
3. Catiline was able-to-endure<sup>4</sup> fasting, watching, cold.
4. Gaul is full of Roman citizens.
5. Night alone was conscious of this deed.<sup>5</sup>
6. This boy is very like his father.
7. The consul was full of plans, sparing<sup>6</sup> in words.
8. The river Rhine is common to Gaul and Germany.
9. Achilles, bravest of the Greeks, was ungovernable<sup>7</sup> in wrath.

<sup>1</sup> cupidus.      <sup>2</sup> avidus.      <sup>3</sup> negligens.      <sup>4</sup> patiens.      <sup>5</sup> facinus.  
                          <sup>6</sup> parcus.      <sup>7</sup> impotens.

7. Dative of Nearness, &c.

§ 51, 6. (words of likeness, nearness, fitness, service or help: R. 15), with *a*, *b* (use of prepositions), and *d* (propior, &c.).

Examples.

1. Amara sunt vitiosis, ac male viventibus, praecepta justitiae.
2. Auctumnus gravis est urbi agrisque.
3. Tyrannis aliena virtus semper formidolosa est.
4. Rex infidis consiliis semper est obnoxius.
5. Ista oratio dignitati tuae alienissima est.

6. Mantua, vae, miserae nimium vicina Cremonae.
7. Unicuique virtutum finitimum vitium est.
8. Ceteri filii superstites patri erant.
9. Is dolor communis erat tribus fratribus.
10. Haec virtus fructuosa vobis, mihi periculosa est.
11. Patres filiis suis nonnunquam sunt iniqui.
12. Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cygno.

## Write in Latin.

1. Death is like a sleep.
  2. To a frail ship all winds are contrary.
  3. The death of Socrates was harmonious<sup>1</sup> with his life.
  4. I have noticed a harbor fit<sup>2</sup> for our ships.
  5. Livius was of-the-same-age<sup>3</sup> with Ennius.
  6. Not even the gods — so they boast — are a-match-for<sup>4</sup> the Swabians.<sup>5</sup>
  7. Radishes<sup>6</sup> are bad<sup>7</sup> for the teeth, says Pliny.<sup>9</sup>
  8. This thing is easy for me, [but] hard for you.
  9. Simple food is good<sup>8</sup> for children.
  10. The speech of Marius was very pleasing to the people.
- <sup>1</sup> *consentaneus.*    <sup>2</sup> *idoneus.*    <sup>3</sup> *aequalis.*    <sup>4</sup> *par.*    <sup>5</sup> *Suevi.*  
<sup>6</sup> *raphanus, i, m.*    <sup>7</sup> *inimicus.*    <sup>8</sup> *utilis.*  
<sup>9</sup> *ait Plinius.*

## 8. Ablative of Want.

§ 54, I. *c, d* (adjectives of freedom and want, with *opus* and *usus*: R. 28).

## Examples.

1. Urbs nuda praesidio poscit opem.
2. Animus per somnum sensibus et curis vacuus est.
3. Nos plerique patriae, sed omnes famā atque fortunis expertes sumus.
4. Auctoritate tua mihi opus est.
5. Etiam sapienti amicis opus est.
6. Priusquam incipias consulto, et ubi consulueris mature facto opus est.
7. Exempla nobis opus sunt.



Write in Latin.

1. What Roman is free from this dishonor<sup>1</sup>?
2. The army was in lack<sup>2</sup> of all necessities.
3. The common-people were-in-terror [when] deprived of tribunes.
4. Cato, said his friends, was clear<sup>3</sup> of every human fault.
5. This counsel is foreign to<sup>4</sup> the dignity of the empire.
6. The senate was bereft<sup>5</sup> of counsel and authority.
7. I have need<sup>6</sup> of your help.

<sup>1</sup> *dedecus.*    <sup>2</sup> *egens.*    <sup>3</sup> *vacuus.*    <sup>4</sup> *alienus a.*    <sup>5</sup> *orbis.*    <sup>6</sup> *opus.*

9. *Ablative of Source.*

§ 54, 2. *a* (participles of birth and origin: R. 29).

Examples.

1. Ti. Gracchus, *matre nobilissima genitus.*
2. Nate *deā, quae nunc animo sententia surgit?*
3. Natus erat *pulcra origine Cæsar.*
4. Consul *loco obscuro tenuique fortuna ortus.*
5. Non *sanguine humano sed stirpe divina satus es.*

Write in Latin.

1. Æneas was son<sup>1</sup> of Anchises and Venus.
2. Thou art sprung<sup>2</sup> not from human blood, but from divine stock.
3. The youth was born of a most noble mother.
4. The consul Marius was sprung from an obscure place and slender fortune.

<sup>1</sup> *natus.*

<sup>2</sup> *ortus.*

10. *Ablative of Comparison.*

§ 54, 5 (ablative after comparatives: R. 32), with *a, c* (use of *quam*, construction of *plus, etc.*).

Examples.

1. *Honesta mors turpi vitā potior est.*
2. *Quaedam remedia ipsis periculis sunt graviora.*
3. *Nihil inter homines rarius perfecto oratore inventum est.*

4. Humana omnia inferiora virtute ducimus.
5. Non ego hac nocte longiorem vidi.
6. Punico bello secundo nullum neque majus neque periculosius Romani gessere.
7. Saepe dixi Graecam linguam locupletiore esse quam Latinam.
8. Hujus orationes exiliores sunt et redolentes magis antiquitatem quam aut Laelii aut Scipionis.
9. Hispanorum non plus quam quattuor milium effugerunt.
10. Plus septingenti aut in proelio aut in castris capti sunt.
11. Spatium est non amplius pedum DC.
12. Apes nunquam plus unum regem patiuntur.
13. Amplius sunt sex menses (*it is more than, &c.*).
14. Bella fortius quam felicius gerebat.
15. Consilium magis honestum quam utile.

## Write in Latin.

1. The earth is larger than the moon, the sun than the earth.
2. Ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge.
3. From<sup>1</sup> the tongue of the old Nestor, says<sup>2</sup> Homer, flowed speech sweeter than honey.
4. A base escape from death<sup>3</sup> is worse than any<sup>4</sup> death.
5. All riches we hold inferior to wisdom.
6. These things are harder than-one-would-think.<sup>5</sup>
7. In this march the Romans suffered more than usual<sup>6</sup> from hunger and cold.
8. You have rendered<sup>7</sup> no man more kindnesses than to me.
9. This thing has in it more joy<sup>3</sup> than grief.<sup>3</sup>
10. In the battle at-Cannæ the Romans lost more than 40,000 men.
11. The speech of the consul was more true than pleasing<sup>8</sup> to the people.
12. A pestilence more threatening than destructive<sup>9</sup> fell<sup>10</sup> upon the city.
13. There is nothing stupider<sup>11</sup> than a stupid laugh.

<sup>1</sup> ex.    <sup>2</sup> ait.    <sup>3</sup> Genitive.    <sup>4</sup> omnis.    <sup>5</sup> opinio.    <sup>6</sup> solitum.    <sup>7</sup> tribuo.

<sup>8</sup> Comparative (§ 47, 7).    <sup>9</sup> perniciosus.    <sup>10</sup> incido.    <sup>11</sup> ineptus.

## 11. Ablative of Means and Supply.

§ 54, 6. (accompaniment, means, and instrument: R. 30), with *c* (words of *filling*, &c.).

*a.* All the words under § 54, 6. *c* are either participles, like **abundans**, **completus**; or were originally participles, as **plenus**. When used as *pure adjectives*, they take the genitive under § 50, 3. *b*.

*b.* The ablatives under Rule 30 (§ 75) are of various origin, and must be translated according to the English idiom: as, **dignus**, *worthy of*; **praeditus**, *gifted with*, &c. (compare § 54, 3. *a*; 10. *a*).

### Examples.

1. Verris domus plena erat raptis ornamentis.
2. Exercitum Ti. Sempronius domum reportavit plenissimum praeda.
3. Erant plena laetitia et gratulatione omnia.
4. Alveus Tiberis completus erat rudibus.
5. Pater ille tuus florebat omni genere virtutis.
6. Sum pecore et multā dives tellure.
7. Macte virtute diligentiaque esto.
8. Boni homines metuunt vitam plenam et confertam voluptatibus.

### Write in Latin.

1. Twelve ships were laden<sup>1</sup> with the spoil.
2. The house of Cræsus was full of treasures.<sup>2</sup>
3. The city was full of grief and lamentation.<sup>3</sup>
4. Sulla advanced with his army into a region abounding<sup>4</sup> in all good things.
5. Corinth was the richest city of Greece in pictures,<sup>5</sup> statues,<sup>6</sup> and gold.

<sup>1</sup> onustus.    <sup>2</sup> divitiae.    <sup>3</sup> luctus.    <sup>4</sup> abundans.    <sup>5</sup> tabula.    <sup>6</sup> signum.

## 12. Ablative of Difference.

§ 54, 6. *e*, with Remark (degree of difference).

Notice that § 54, 5 (ablative of comparison) and 6. *e* (ablative of difference), expressing different relations, may be used together with the same adjective: as, **multo divitior Crasso**, *much richer than Crassus*.

**Examples.**

1. Quo occultius est periculum, hoc difficilius vitatur.
2. Recte non credis de numero militum: ipso dimidio<sup>1</sup> plus scripsit Clodia.
3. Hibernia dimidio minor est, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia.
4. Iter alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius.
5. Quanto diutius abest, magis cupio tanto.
6. Galli segnius sequebantur, quanto longius ab domo trahebantur.
7. Romani duobus milibus plures erant quam Sabini.
8. Decem post diebus pugnatum est.
9. Catilina paucis ante diebus eruperat ex urbe.
10. Sol multis partibus major atque amplior est, quam terra universa.

<sup>1</sup> full half.**Write in Latin.**

1. Cicero was six years older than Cæsar.
2. The empire of Rome was much more powerful and lasting than [that] of Athens.
3. The more cautiously you go, the sooner<sup>7</sup> you will arrive.
4. The greater severity he showed,<sup>1</sup> the more numerous<sup>2</sup> were the mobs.
5. Veii was<sup>3</sup> about twenty miles distant<sup>8</sup> from Rome.
6. The battle of Cannæ<sup>4</sup> was fought seventeen years before<sup>5</sup> [that] of Zama.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> utor.<sup>2</sup> creber.<sup>3</sup> abesse a.<sup>4</sup> Cannensis.<sup>5</sup> Insert quam.<sup>6</sup> Zamensis.<sup>7</sup> citius.**C.—Uses of Cases: Miscellaneous.****13. Adverbial Accusative.**

§ 52, 3. with *a*, *b*, *c* (use with intransitive verbs, adverbial phrases, Greek accusative: R. 24).

NOTE.—The accusatives under *a* are usually translated as adverbs (see examples). Those under *c* are mostly poetical, and should be avoided in writing Latin prose.

Examples.

1. Suevi maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt.
2. Tuam vicem magnopere gaudeo.
3. Nostram vicem indignaris.
4. Vir erat cetera egregius.
5. Id temporis eos venturos esse dixeram.
6. Cum esset illud aetatis, imperator factus est.
7. Dexterum genu lapide ictus est.
8. Os humerosque deo similis.
9. Feminae Germanorum nudae erant brachia et lacertos.

Write in Latin.

1. The Suevi live for-the-greatest-part<sup>1</sup> on milk and meat.
2. I am often sorry on your account.<sup>2</sup>
3. At that time Romulus was king.
4. A man at that age ought to be more discreet<sup>3</sup> than daring.<sup>4</sup>
5. Hannibal was severely wounded right in the thigh<sup>5</sup> with a dart.<sup>6</sup>
6. They bind their [own] heads with wreaths of-myrtle.
7. The commander exhorted his [men] at-length.<sup>7</sup>
8. The maidens put on a long robe.

<sup>1</sup> plurimum.      <sup>2</sup> vicis.      <sup>3</sup> prudens.      <sup>4</sup> audax (comparative).  
<sup>5</sup> adversum femur.      <sup>6</sup> tragula.      <sup>7</sup> multa.

14. *Accusative of Exclamation.*

§ 52, 4. *a.*

Examples.

1. Heu dementiam hominum !
2. Beatos quondam duces Romanos !
3. In balneis delituerunt : testes egregios !
4. Huncine<sup>1</sup> hominem ! hancine impudentiam, iudices !  
hanc audaciam !
5. O fallacem hominum spem, fragilemque fortunam, et inanes nostras contentiones !

Write in Latin.

1. O the folly<sup>2</sup> of man, and [his] uncertain fortune, and our idle<sup>3</sup> hopes !

<sup>1</sup> See § 20, 1. Note.

<sup>2</sup> dementia.

<sup>3</sup> inanis.



6. The name of this disease is avarice.
7. In this man was a manly soul.<sup>2</sup>
8. My letter will do<sup>3</sup> you no good.<sup>3</sup>
9. We used to give him the nickname<sup>4</sup> of sluggard.
10. Cæsar had been-present-at<sup>5</sup> many battles.

<sup>2</sup> *ingenium.*

<sup>3</sup> *prosum.*

<sup>4</sup> *cognomen.*

<sup>5</sup> *intersum.*

## 16. Dative of Service.

§ 51, 5 (purpose or end : R. 20).

The Dative (of service) under § 51, 5. may sometimes be translated as *predicate nominative*; but more commonly with the preposition OF. It is sometimes called the *Predicate Dative*.

### Examples.

1. Mihi ea res curae erit.
2. Magno malo est hominibus avaritia.
3. Is fuit et mihi et liberis meis magno usui.
4. Sic et vobis honori, et amicis utilitati eritis.
5. Ea res magno tibi erit impedimento.
6. Ea gens mihi semper odio erit.
7. Tua amicitia maximo mihi erat detrimento.
8. Testimonio hujus rei sunt clarissimi poëtae.
9. Nos diis immortalibus curae sumus.
10. Consul Hannibali ludibrio erat.
11. Plerumque Gallis brevitās nostra contemptui est.
12. Veteribus Romanis divitiæ oneri miseriaeque fuere.

### Write in Latin.

1. This book was of great service<sup>1</sup> to me.
2. Cæsar left two legions as a guard<sup>2</sup> to the camp.
3. That thing will be a great hindrance<sup>3</sup> to you.
4. We are the care of the immortal gods.
5. We regard this as a fault in Cicero.
6. For whose advantage<sup>4</sup> is this?
7. The Germans came to our relief.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *usus.*

<sup>2</sup> *praesidium:*

<sup>3</sup> *impedimentum.*

<sup>4</sup> *bonum.*

<sup>5</sup> *auxilium.*

17. *Dative of Reference.*§ 51, 7 (*dativus commodi et incommodi*).

The Dative (of reference) in § 51, 7. merely expresses a *more remote relation* than those under 2 (indirect object) : compare the first examples under each.

## Examples.

1. Quis huic rei testis est?
2. Domus pulcra dominis aedificatur, non muribus.
3. E bestiarum corporibus multa remedia morbis et vulneribus eligimus.
4. Non mihi ex cujusquam amplitudine aut praesidia periculis aut adjumenta honoribus quaero.
5. Duo milites nequaquam visu ac specie aestimantibus pares.
6. Sita Ortygia est in dextra parte portum magnum Syracusarum intrantibus.
7. Hic mihi quisquam misericordiam nominat?
8. Quid sibi vult haec oratio?
9. Ova alia sunt candida, ut columbis, perdicibus; alia pallida, ut aquaticis; alia punctis distincta, ut meleagridum; alia rubri coloris, ut phasianis.

## Write in Latin.

1. I seek for myself no defence against danger<sup>1</sup> or helps to honors.<sup>1</sup>
2. The Germans chose them<sup>2</sup> a place for an abode.
3. A good man seeks wealth not for himself only, but for his children and friends.
4. The calamity of the Sicilians came-before<sup>3</sup> my eyes.
5. [Is it] for Hannibal [that] you have saved this city?
6. Such<sup>4</sup> lamentation<sup>5</sup> stirs the temper of the fiery<sup>6</sup> youth.
7. The wood strews<sup>7</sup> you wild<sup>8</sup> leaves<sup>9</sup> and acorns.
8. We cull<sup>10</sup> many remedies for sickness and wounds.
9. Anticyra is situated<sup>11</sup> on the left as you enter the Corinthian gulf.

<sup>1</sup> Dative.<sup>2</sup> sibi.<sup>3</sup> obversor.<sup>1</sup><sup>4</sup> tantus.<sup>5</sup> comploratio.<sup>6</sup> ferox.<sup>7</sup> stergo.<sup>8</sup> agrestis.<sup>9</sup> frons.<sup>10</sup> eligo.<sup>11</sup> situs.



18. *Ablative of Separation.*

§ 54, 1. (verbs meaning *remove*, *deprive*, &c.), with *a* (compounds), and *e* (*egeo*, *indigeo*, with genitive). For the translation, see examples.

Examples.

1. L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit.
2. Usu urbis prohibere peregrinos sane inhumanum est.
3. Apud veteres Germanos quemcumque mortalium arcere tecto<sup>1</sup> nefas habebatur.
4. Cedo vobis possessione hortorum.
5. Ea philosophia spoliatur nos iudicio, privat approbatione.
6. Ne ab obsidibus quidem iram belli hostis abstinuit.
7. Ego te culpā absolvo, supplicio non libero.
8. Ciceroni aquā atque igni interdicatur.
9. Caesaris oratio Helvetios ea spe dejecit.
10. Illa lex tyrannos reditu semper arcebit.
11. Adventus peditatus equites metu levaverat.
12. Desine, quaeso, istis laudationibus.

<sup>1</sup> i.e. to turn any stranger from the door.

Write in Latin.

1. The Helvetii, cast down from that hope, desisted from their attempt.
2. I am quite free from fever, and feel finely.<sup>1</sup>
3. The engines<sup>3</sup> presently stripped<sup>2</sup> the wall of its defenders.
4. Cæcilius had cheated<sup>4</sup> Varius of a large sum-of-money.
5. The barbarians, having caught-sight-of<sup>5</sup> the standards afar-off,<sup>6</sup> desist from the attack.
6. Cæsar departed from<sup>7</sup> Italy, and led his army into Gaul.
7. Sulla laid-down<sup>8</sup> the dictatorship.<sup>9</sup>
8. The engines drove the enemy from the walls.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *belle se habere.*    <sup>2</sup> *nudo.*<sup>1</sup>    <sup>3</sup> *tormenta* (plur.).    <sup>4</sup> *fraudo.*<sup>1</sup>

<sup>5</sup> *conspicor.*<sup>1</sup>    <sup>6</sup> *procul.*    <sup>7</sup> *ex.*    <sup>8</sup> *se abdicare.*    <sup>9</sup> *dictatura.*

<sup>10</sup> *moenia.*

## 19. Ablative of Cause.

§ 54, 3. with *a, b, c* (certain verbs and adjectives; *ob* or *propter*; *causa, gratia*).

## Examples.

1. Ser. Tullius regnare coepit non jussu sed voluntate atque concessu civium.

2. Quidam morbo aliquo et sensus stupore suavitatem cibi non sentiunt.

3. Quod benevolentia fit, id odio factum<sup>1</sup> criminari.

4. Multi homines officia deserunt molliam animi.

5. Quam multi luce indigni sunt, et tamen dies oritur!

6. Amplissimis honoribus dignus erat adulescens Scipio.

7. Ignavia ac stultitia saepe fit<sup>2</sup> ut res maximae dilabantur.

8. Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.

9. Non te Romanus populus illo magistratu dignatus est.

<sup>1</sup> as being done.

<sup>2</sup> happens

## Write in Latin.

1. Tarquin, relying<sup>1</sup> on [his] victories, was-wanton in insolence.

2. For the sake of the republic, I accuse Lucius Catiline.

3. He wept at the grief<sup>2</sup> of his friends.

4. The Roman people held<sup>3</sup> the young Scipio worthy<sup>3</sup> of the highest honors.

5. I judge<sup>4</sup> him most unworthy of every honor.

6. Do this for my sake.

7. Ducks delight<sup>5</sup> chiefly in marshy<sup>6</sup> places.

<sup>1</sup> subnixus.

<sup>2</sup> dolor.

<sup>3</sup> dignor.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>4</sup> aestimo.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>5</sup> delector.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>6</sup> paluster.

## 20. Ablative of Means.

§ 54, 6. (accompaniment, means, instrument), with *a, b*, (use of *cum*).

Examples.

1. Venatio et<sup>1</sup> cibi genere et quotidiana exercitatione et libertate vitae vires alit.

2. Non viribus aut celeritate corporum res maximae geruntur.

3. Dei providentiā mundus administratur.

4. Summis suppliciis fures afficiuntur.

5. Caelum hominibus virtute recluditur.

6. Pax ornata venit ramo felicitis olivae.

7. Galli huic terrae igni ferroque minitantur.

8. Luctantes ventos vasto rex Aeolus antro  
Imperio premit, ac vinclis et carcere frenat.

9. Frondibus et stipula tauri pascuntur, et herba.

10. Armis munimenta, non munimentis arma, tuta esse debent.

11. Nutritur vento, vento restinguitur ignis ;  
Lenis alit flammas, grandior aura necat.

<sup>1</sup> both.

Write in Latin.

1. We accomplish more by wisdom than by force.

2. Rome fell by her own strength.

3. Bulls defend themselves with [their] horns, boars with [their] tusks.

4. The priest's head was covered with a long mantle.

5. Great things are-done<sup>1</sup> not by strength or speed of body, but by counsel and valor.

6. Links of-steel<sup>2</sup> are worn-out<sup>3</sup> by constant use.

<sup>1</sup> gero.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>2</sup> ferreus.

<sup>3</sup> contero.<sup>3</sup>

21. Ablative of Manner and Quality.

§ 54, 7. with *a*, *b* (description ; manner with *cum*) ; compare § 50, 1. *g* (genitive of quality).

Examples.

1. Vir acerrimo ingenio civitatem tum regebat.

2. Campi suapte natura humentes inutiles sunt.

3. Regina ad templum formā pulcherrima Dido incessit.
4. Sabini brachio laevo gemmatos magna specie anulos gerebant.
5. Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis.
6. Duo viri egregia virtute consulatum eo anno petebant.
7. Haec res immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit.
8. Galli eadem celeritate ad nostra castra contenderunt.
9. Horridiores sunt Britanni in pugna adspectu; capilloque sunt promisso, atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius.
10. Agesilāus et staturā fuit humili, et corpore exiguo, et claudus altero pede.

## Write in Latin.

1. The barbarians were of vast size<sup>1</sup> of body (plur.).
2. Three Graces, of exquisite<sup>2</sup> beauty, wait-on<sup>3</sup> Venus.
3. A mountain of great height overhangs<sup>4</sup> the town.
4. Cæsar was a man of extraordinary force<sup>5</sup> of intellect,<sup>6</sup> and of remarkable skill<sup>7</sup> in-war.<sup>8</sup>
5. A giant of monstrous stature, whose<sup>9</sup> name was Polyphemus, devoured<sup>10</sup> the companions of Ulysses.

<sup>1</sup> magnitudo.    <sup>2</sup> eximius.    <sup>3</sup> comitor.<sup>1</sup>    <sup>4</sup> impendo.<sup>2</sup>    <sup>5</sup> vis.  
<sup>6</sup> ingenium.    <sup>7</sup> scientia.    <sup>8</sup> rei bellicae.    <sup>9</sup> Dative.    <sup>10</sup> devoro.<sup>1</sup>

## 22. Ablative of Price.

§ 54, 8. with *a* (genitive of indefinite value: R. 11; compare § 50, 1. *i*).

## Examples.

1. Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit.
2. Eriphyle auro viri sui vitam vendidit.
3. Hunc fundum maxima pecunia mercatus sum.
4. Duobus milibus nummūm hunc equum emi.
5. Ea Poenis victoria multo sanguine stetit.
6. Tritici modius duobus sestertiis veniit.
7. Domum meam ternis sestertiis locavi.
8. Mea mihi conscientia pluris est quam omnium sermo.

Write in Latin.

1. I have sold my house for fifteen talents.
2. Virtue is not salable<sup>1</sup> for gold or gems.<sup>5</sup>
3. That oration cost<sup>2</sup> him a-great-deal-of labor.
4. Mean men are bribed<sup>3</sup> with money; the ambitious<sup>4</sup> with honors and vain glory.

<sup>1</sup> *venalis*.

<sup>2</sup> *sto*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>3</sup> *corrumpo*.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>4</sup> *ambitiosus*.

<sup>5</sup> *gemma*.

23. Ablative of Specification.

§ 54, 9. (that in respect to which; in accordance with which).

Examples.

1. Specie urbs libera est, non re verā.
2. Ex omnibus filiis natu minimus Marcus erat.
3. Scelere par es Marco, industriā inferior.
4. Iste servus aeger est pedibus.
5. Altero oculo captus erat Hannibal.
6. Tota mente et omnibus artibus contremuit.
7. Omnes Galli lingua institutis legibus inter se differunt.
8. Belgae omnibus Gallis virtute praestant.
9. Latini Trojanis studio ac fide erga regem cessere.
10. Non tu quidem tota re sed temporibus erras.

Write in Latin.

1. In glory Cicero was far inferior to Cæsar,<sup>1</sup> but superior in eloquence and wisdom.
2. In laws and language the Greeks widely<sup>2</sup> differ from the Romans, but in warlike<sup>3</sup> glory they are nearly equal.
3. My brother is lame of the left<sup>4</sup> foot.
4. The Spartans excelled<sup>5</sup> all the other Greeks<sup>6</sup> in fidelity and reverence to the laws.<sup>7</sup>
5. The Germans were a race of tall<sup>8</sup> stature, fair complexion, blue<sup>10</sup> eyes, courage in war,<sup>7</sup> and great bodily<sup>9</sup> strength.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative.

<sup>2</sup> *multum*.

<sup>3</sup> *rei bellicae* (gen.).

<sup>4</sup> *lævus*.

<sup>5</sup> *antecello*.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>6</sup> Dative.

<sup>7</sup> Genitive.

<sup>8</sup> *grandis*.

<sup>9</sup> *corporis* (gen.).

<sup>10</sup> *caeruleus*.

24. *Locative Ablative.*

§ 54, 10. (idiomatic expressions), with *a* (list of verbs and verbals under this use).

**Examples.**

1. Castra opportunis locis posita erant.
2. Terra marique res maximae gestae sunt.
3. Meliore loco res nostrae sunt.
4. Parentis loco habebatur patris amicus.
5. Reliquis oppidi partibus acriter pugnatum est.
6. De amicitia alio libro dictum est.
7. Vehementer animo angebar.
8. Silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent.
9. Urbe tota gemitus fit.
10. Caesar nuntios tota civitate Aeduorum dimittit.
11. Menippus tota Asia illis temporibus disertissimus erat.
12. Adventu Caesaris in Galliam, Helvetii bellum parabant.
13. Bello Punico secundo, tota Italia Hannibal paene potiebatur.
14. Extrema pueritia, Caesar Cinnae filiam in matrimonium duxit.

**Write in Latin.**

1. At the death of Cæsar grief and terror prevailed<sup>1</sup> throughout the city.
2. The Romans carried-on<sup>2</sup> war by land and sea.
3. At this news I was glad at heart.
4. I regard<sup>3</sup> my father's brother in the light<sup>4</sup> of a parent.
5. Cæsar pitched<sup>5</sup> his camp on favorable ground.<sup>4</sup>
6. Your affairs are in excellent case.<sup>4</sup>
7. This subject<sup>6</sup> is discussed<sup>7</sup> in the third book.

<sup>1</sup> *existo.*<sup>3</sup><sup>2</sup> *gero.*<sup>3</sup><sup>3</sup> *habeo.*<sup>2</sup><sup>4</sup> *locus.*<sup>5</sup> *pono.*<sup>3</sup><sup>6</sup> *de hac re.*<sup>7</sup> *dissero*<sup>3</sup> (impers.).

25. *Predicate Genitive.*

§ 50, 1. *c, d* (for predicate appositive; use of phrase or clause), with Remark (*sapientis, &c.*).

Examples.

1. Omnia quae mulieris fuerant matrimonio viri fiebant.
2. Ego totus Pompeii sum.
3. Hic versus Plauti non est.
4. Thebae populi Romani belli jure factae sunt.
5. Non gloriam meam laborem illorum faciam.
6. Albani dicionis alienae facti sunt.
7. Hoc non est iudicii mei.
8. Marcellus id nec juris nec potestatis suae esse dixit.
9. Boni imperatoris est hostium consilia antecapere.
10. Ut Athenae et Lacedaemon Atheniensium Lacedaemoniorumque causam conditae sunt, omniaque quae sunt in his urbibus eorum populorum recte esse dicuntur, sic quaecumque sunt in omni mundo deorum atque hominum putanda sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. All the property<sup>1</sup> of the father became the son's by inheritance.<sup>2</sup>
2. That oration is not Cicero's.
3. After the battle of Cannae, Capua became [the possession] of the Carthaginians.
4. The kingdom was [the share] of Numitor; the wealth,<sup>3</sup> of Amulius.
5. That is not [an affair] for your decision.<sup>4</sup>
6. Desire<sup>5</sup> belongs more to the young<sup>6</sup> than to the old.

<sup>1</sup> *bona* (plur.).

<sup>2</sup> *hereditas*.

<sup>3</sup> *pecunia*.

<sup>4</sup> *judicium*.

<sup>5</sup> *libido*.

<sup>6</sup> *adulescens*.

26. *Relations of Time and Space.*

§ 55, 1. with *b* (relations of time); 3. with *a, b, c, d* (relations of place, with locative forms) and *f* (locative use of ablative).

Compare the Note, § 55, 3. (relations of Place) with § 42, 1. (on prepositions) and the note on p. 113 (on the use of Cases).

**Examples.**

1. Proxima nocte Caesar castra movit.
2. Tota aestate vos expectamus.
3. Quadraginta annis Alba stetit.
4. Frater meus decimo aetatis anno Romā abiit.
5. Vere diffugiunt nives.
6. Primo silentio noctis Tiburtes Romam venerunt.
7. Tertia vigilia Caesar castris excessit.
8. Heroicis aetatibus non multi florebant philosophi.
9. Per decem dies Latini ludos fecerunt.
10. Sum totos dies cum Marco, noctisque saepenumero partem.
11. Hanc urbem decem aestates continuas circumsedimus.
12. Triduo servus miserrime peribit.
13. Paucis diebus ad te veniam.
14. Altero et tricesimo anno aetatis suae Galba mortuus est.
15. Gaia testamentum fecit, atque his paucis diebus obiit.
16. Ab Africa ad Siciliam Aeneas navigavit.
17. Consul legiones per Italiam in Galliam duxit.
18. Ex Hispania per Galliam in Italiam exercitum duxit Hannibal.
19. Servos Romae, Tarenti, Athenis, Veiis, Karthagini, Sardibus alui.
20. Numa Curibus habitabat ; sed postea Romae quadraginta annos regnavit.
21. Delo Rhodum pater meus navigavit.
22. Milites Albae constitere, in oppido munito.
23. Archias Antiochiae vixit, celeberrima quondam urbe.
24. Nunc domi sum : cras rus ibo.
25. Frater meus mox rure domum redibit.
26. M. Regulus Karthagine Romam de pace missus est.
27. Multa corpora fessorum vulneratorumque humi jacebant.
28. Maximam domi militiaeque gloriam Cn. Pompeius adulescens erat adsecutus.
29. Is dies erat ante diem sextum (A. D. vi.) Kalendas Martias (see § 56, 1. f).



Write in Latin.

1. In winter and summer the Arabs roam-over<sup>1</sup> the plains.
2. At the beginning of summer the consul passed<sup>2</sup> into Spain.
3. Agamemnon scarcely in ten years took one city.
4. Within three days I will finish<sup>3</sup> the work.
5. Cæsar moves [his] camp, and in about fifteen days arrives at the bounds<sup>4</sup> of the Belgæ.
6. I was yesterday at Cæsar's house (*apud Cæsarem*).
7. That most illustrious<sup>5</sup> commander had strengthened<sup>6</sup> the republic at home and abroad by his victories.
8. Brutus learned philosophy at Athens, eloquence in Rhodes.
9. My sisters are passing<sup>7</sup> their life in the country.<sup>8</sup>
10. I have lived in Rome, Carthage, Athens, Sardis, and Corinth; and have now been<sup>11</sup> three years at home in Gaul.
11. Amynder sent ambassadors both to Rome to the Senate, and to the Scipios in Asia.<sup>9</sup>
12. Cicero after [his] exile sailed<sup>10</sup> from Greece to Italy, and remained a few days at Brundisium; then, through friendly cities, returned to Rome.

<sup>1</sup> *peragro*.<sup>1</sup>      <sup>2</sup> *transeo*.      <sup>3</sup> *perficio*.<sup>3</sup>      <sup>4</sup> *fines*.      <sup>5</sup> *clarus*.  
<sup>6</sup> *augeo*.<sup>2</sup>      <sup>7</sup> *ago*.<sup>3</sup>      <sup>8</sup> § 55, 3. *d.*      <sup>9</sup> Accusative.      <sup>10</sup> *navigo*.<sup>1</sup>  
<sup>11</sup> Present.

D. — Use of Moods and Tenses.

27. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive.

§ 57, 2. with *a* (classification: R. 43); 3, 4, 6 (hortatory, optative, dubitative); compare § 60, 2. *a*, *b* (potential, hypothetical); and § 57, 7. *a* (prohibitions).

Examples.

1. Haec sint falsa sane: invidiosa certe non sunt.
2. Malim te esse bonum quam videri.
3. Hoc vero sine ulla dubitatione confirmaverim, eloquentiam esse rem unam omnium difficillimam.
4. Me quidem eo proficiscentem haud sane quis facile retraxerit.

5. Jam vero quis audeat dicere vera omnia esse somnia?
6. Quid hoc homine faciatis?
7. Felix vivas, moriari felix!
8. Valeant cives mei, valeant! Sint incolumes, sint florentes, sint beati. Stet haec urbs praeclara. Tranquilla republica cives mei perfruantur. —
9. Si certum est facere, facias; verum ne post conferas culpam in me.

10. Nihil ignoveris, nihil gratiae causa feceris, misericordia commotus ne sis.

11. Isto bono utare dum adsit; cum absit, ne requiras.

12. Vendat<sup>1</sup> aedes vir bonus propter aliqua vitia, quae ipse norit ceteri ignorent: pestilentes sint<sup>1</sup> et habeantur salubres; ignoretur<sup>1</sup> in omnibus cubiculis apparere serpentes;<sup>2</sup> male materiatae, ruinosae — sed hoc, praeter dominum, nemo sciat.<sup>1</sup> Quaero, si hoc emptoribus venditor non dixerit, num id injuste fecerit?

<sup>1</sup> Render these subjunctives by "suppose," &c.

<sup>2</sup> *vermin.*

#### Write in Latin.

1. Let the advantage<sup>1</sup> of the commonwealth prevail.<sup>2</sup>
2. Let us accordingly<sup>3</sup> bring up<sup>4</sup> [our] child with every indulgence.
3. Plant<sup>5</sup> no tree, Varus, sooner<sup>6</sup> than the sacred vine.
4. This thou shalt do:<sup>7</sup> this thou shalt not do.<sup>8</sup>
5. Let him write to me what he has done.<sup>8</sup>
6. I could not easily say<sup>8</sup> that this is better.
7. I wish<sup>9</sup> [that] Athens may conquer.<sup>9</sup>
8. This thing may [perhaps] seem absurd<sup>10</sup> to you.
9. Some-one<sup>11</sup> may [perhaps] think that I am-wrong.<sup>12</sup>
10. No one can easily restrain Cæsar from victory.<sup>13</sup>
11. I would rather<sup>14</sup> be at home than abroad.<sup>15</sup>
12. Suppose your friend should fall sick<sup>16</sup> or die, what will you do?

13. Let justice be done [though] heaven fall.

<sup>1</sup> *utilitas.*    <sup>2</sup> *valeo.*    <sup>3</sup> *proinde.*    <sup>4</sup> *nutrio.*    <sup>5</sup> *sero.*    <sup>6</sup> *prius.*

<sup>7</sup> Fut. imperat.    <sup>8</sup> Perf. subj.    <sup>9</sup> Pres. subj.    <sup>10</sup> *absurdus.*

<sup>11</sup> *quispiam.*    <sup>12</sup> *erro*<sup>1</sup> (infin.).    <sup>13</sup> Compare Latin example 4 (above).

<sup>14</sup> *malim.*

<sup>15</sup> *foris.*

<sup>16</sup> *in morbum cadere.*

## 28. Historical Infinitive.

§ 57, 8. *h*: R. 40. (For other uses of the Infinitive, see page 114.)

### Examples.

1. Brevi spatio hostes ex omnibus partibus decurrere, lapides in vallum conjicere ; nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ullum frustra telum mittere : ut quaeque pars castrorum premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre.

2. Circumspectare tum patriciorum vultus plebei, et inde libertatis captare auram, unde servitutem timuerant. Primores patrum odisse decemviros, odisse plebem.

3. Interea Catilina Romae multa simul moliri : consuli insidias tendere, parare incendia, opportuna loca armatis hominibus obsidere, ipse cum telo esse, item alios jubere ; dies noctisque festinare, vigilare, neque insomniis neque labore fatigari.

### Write in Latin.

1. Every single<sup>1</sup> article-of-plate<sup>2</sup> that<sup>3</sup> [man would] take into [his] hands, praise, admire.

2. And now not even the back<sup>4</sup> was spared :<sup>5</sup> some<sup>6</sup> were beaten<sup>7</sup> with rods,<sup>8</sup> others brought to the block.<sup>9</sup>

3. Under the dominion<sup>10</sup> of Lucius Sulla, everybody [would] rob, carry-off, covet<sup>11</sup> — one man a house, another lands ;<sup>12</sup> the victors kept<sup>13</sup> no limit<sup>14</sup> or restraint,<sup>15</sup> [but] did shocking<sup>16</sup> and cruel [things] among the citizens.

<sup>1</sup> *unumquodque*.

<sup>2</sup> *vas*.

<sup>3</sup> *iste*.

<sup>4</sup> Ablative.

<sup>5</sup> *abstineo* (impers.).

<sup>6</sup> *alius*.

<sup>7</sup> *verbero*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>8</sup> *virga*.

<sup>9</sup> *securi subicere*.

<sup>10</sup> *dominatus*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>11</sup> *rapio, traho, cupio*.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>12</sup> *ager*.

<sup>13</sup> *habeo*.

<sup>14</sup> *modus*.

<sup>15</sup> *modestia*.

<sup>16</sup> *foedus*.

## 29. Sequence of Tenses.

§ 58, 9, 10. (tenses of the Subjunctive, and rule for Sequence of Tenses), with the classification as given in the Remark (p. 162), which is to be carefully studied, as well as the examples above.

Observe that the general rule for the sequence of tenses is the same as in English; but in Latin a dependent verb is put in a past tense by this rule, when either the principal or a subordinate verb, on which it depends, is in the past, even though the construction may be otherwise in English (see example 7, below).

NOTE. — The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive under this rule may express *a relatively future action* (see § 59, 4 f), as representing in indirect discourse the future and future perfect indicative: as, *si discessisset* = *if he shall depart (shall have departed)* (CÆSAR, B. G. i. 45).

#### Examples.

1. Non possunt multi rem amittere, ut non plures secum in eandem calamitatem trahant.

2. Rex adeo saevus erat, ut filio suo non temperaret.

3. Mos est hominum, ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere.

4. Quorum haec est condicio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum iis fruuntur, quorum se amicitiae dederint.

5. Singulas naves nostri expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero ad terram pervenerint.

6. Cicero se ex patria excessisse dicit, ut bellum civile averteret.

7. Tantum profecisse videmur, ut a Graecis ne verborum quidem copia vinceremur.<sup>1</sup>

8. Omnem coetum hominum vitat, quasi omnibus invisus sit.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Translate by the present tense.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by the past tense (see § 61, I. R.).

#### Write in Latin.

1. I write that I may admonish you.

2. I wrote yesterday that I might inform you.

3. He runs-away<sup>1</sup> as if he were<sup>2</sup> frightened.

4. He undertook this task as if he were a good workman.<sup>3</sup>

5. I will come to-morrow to-see<sup>4</sup> you.

6. We went out yesterday to see<sup>4</sup> the battle.

7. I have toiled<sup>5</sup> so-long<sup>6</sup> that I am completely tired-out.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *effugio*.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Present subj.

<sup>3</sup> *faber*.

<sup>4</sup> *ut*, with subj.

<sup>5</sup> *laboro*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>6</sup> *tam diu*.

<sup>7</sup> *defessus*.

8. Cæsar was so merciful<sup>6</sup> that not even [his] beaten<sup>7</sup> enemies<sup>8</sup> feared him.

9. This man is so<sup>9</sup> just that no one ever feared<sup>10</sup> to confide in him.

<sup>6</sup> *clemens.*    <sup>7</sup> *victus.*    <sup>8</sup> *inimicus.*    <sup>9</sup> *adeo.*    <sup>10</sup> Perfect subj.

## E. — Subordinate Constructions.

### 30. Conditional Clauses.

§ 59: general definition, with 1. *a, b* (Protasis and Apodosis), and the Classification on page 167 (committing to memory the models, with their meaning); also 3. *a, b*, and 4. *a, b, c* (present, past, and future conditions).

N. B.— Notice the exceptional use of the Indicative in the apodosis *contrary to fact*, as given in 3. *d, e*; comparing these with § 60, 2. *c*, and the Remark.

#### Examples.

1. Nisi me animus fallit, haud multum a me aberit infortunium.

2. Hoc si tecum patria loquatur, nonne impetrare debeat, etiam si vim adhibere non possit?

3. Si scripserim ad fratrem meum, Romam statim properet.

4. Si calamus mihi adesset, scriberem ad Marcum.

5. Sapientia non expeteretur si nihil efficeret.

6. Servi mei si me isto pacto metuerent, ut te metuunt omnes cives tui, domum meam relinquendam putarem.

7. Si te parentes timerent atque odissent tui, neque eos ulla ratione placare posses, ab eorum oculis aliquo concederes.

8. Si meum consilium auctoritasque valuisset, tu hodie egeres, nos liberi essemus, respublica non tot duces et exercitus amisisset.

9. Mens prope uti ferrum est: si exerceas, conteritur; nisi exerceas, rubiginem contrahit.

10. Nulla est igitur excusatio peccati, si amici causā peccaveris.

## Write in Latin.

1. If you should see your father to-morrow, what should you say?
  2. If I had not known that you would come, I should have written.
  3. I should not have gone<sup>4</sup> yesterday, if I had known.
  4. I should go to-day if you wished.
  5. I should go to-morrow if you should be ill.<sup>1</sup>
  6. Hannibal would not have fought at<sup>2</sup> Zama if he could have helped<sup>3</sup> [it].
  7. I would not have gone<sup>4</sup> unless Cæsar had ordered.
  8. You can always do that if you try.<sup>5</sup>
  9. If it is allowed,<sup>6</sup> I shall be-glad-to<sup>7</sup> speak.
  10. If it would be allowed, I should be-glad-to<sup>7</sup> speak.
- <sup>1</sup> *aegrotō.*      <sup>2</sup> *ad.*      <sup>3</sup> *defugio.*      <sup>4</sup> *proficiscor.*      <sup>5</sup> *conor.*  
<sup>6</sup> *licet* (fut.).      <sup>7</sup> *libenter* (adv.).

31. *Disguised Conditions.*

§ 60, general remark, also 1. with *a* (usual forms of disguised conditions).

## Examples.

1. Nemo unquam, sine magna spe immortalitatis, se pro patria offeret ad mortem.
2. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria.
3. Tum ego: "Etiamnè, si te in Capitolium faces ferre vellet?" "Nunquam" inquit "voluisset."
4. Omnes labores contemnendo fiunt tolerabiles.
5. Nec ego Seriphius nec tu Atheniensis clarus unquam fuisses.
6. Illo tempore aliter sensisses.
7. Neque agricultura neque frugum perceptio et conservatio sine hominum opera esse potuisset.
8. Magnitudo animi, remota a communitate conjunctioneque hominum, feritas sit quaedam et immanitas.
9. Pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset.

Write in Latin.

1. At another time I might think<sup>1</sup> so.
2. Without friendship no man's life could be truly called happy.
3. [If he were] intending-to-return<sup>2</sup> home, he would not delay<sup>3</sup> so long in business.<sup>4</sup>
4. A life remote from the society of men and the protection of laws would justly<sup>5</sup> be reckoned<sup>6</sup> wild<sup>7</sup> and dreary.<sup>8</sup>
5. Without help of the Gauls, Cæsar could not have overcome<sup>9</sup> the Germans.
6. In extreme poverty<sup>10</sup> old age cannot be a light [burden].

<sup>1</sup> Present subj.

<sup>2</sup> Future participle.

<sup>3</sup> *moror*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>4</sup> *negotior*<sup>1</sup> (gerund).

<sup>5</sup> *recte*.

<sup>6</sup> Present subj.

<sup>7</sup> *agrestis*.

<sup>8</sup> *tristis*.

<sup>9</sup> *supero*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>10</sup> *summa inopia*.

### 32. Comparative Particles.

§ 61, 1. (particles of comparison introducing conditional clauses); also the Remark, comparing § 59, 3. *b* (condition contrary to fact).

Examples.

1. Sed quid his testibus utor, quasi res dubia aut obscura sit?
2. Me juvat, velut si ipse in parte laboris ac periculi fuerim, ad finem belli Punici pervenisse.
3. Parvi primo ortu jacent, tanquam omnino sine animo sint.
4. Quasi vero haec similia sint!
5. Perinde ac si in hanc formulam omnia judicia legitima comprehensa sint!
6. Quasi vero ego ad illum venire debuerim!

Write in Latin.

1. He walks as if he were lame.<sup>1</sup>
2. You speak to me as if you thought I were deceiving<sup>2</sup> you.

<sup>1</sup> *claudus*.

<sup>2</sup> *decipio*.<sup>3</sup>

3. You spoke<sup>3</sup> to me yesterday as if you thought I was deceiving you.

4. He spends<sup>4</sup> [his] money as if he reckoned<sup>5</sup> himself a rich [man].

5. He looks as if he had lived a year in-the-country.

6. He spoke of the monuments and antiquities as if he had lived a year at Rome.

<sup>3</sup> loquor.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>4</sup> largior.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>5</sup> existimo.<sup>1</sup>

### 33. Temporal Clauses.

§ 62, 2. with Note (absolute and relative time); also *a*, *b* (construction of *ubi*, *postquam*, etc., and of *cum* temporal), and *c* (*cum* causal and concessive).

*a. Cum* followed by the present or perfect subjunctive is almost always CAUSAL or CONCESSIVE, and is to be translated *since*, *while*, or *although*.

*b. Cum* followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is more commonly TEMPORAL. In this case, it is sometimes to be translated *when*; but is often best rendered by a *participle*, *present* or *perfect*, in English.

#### Examples.

1. Cum ad villam veni, hoc ipsum *nihil agere* me delectat.
2. Cum fortuna reflavit, affligimur.
3. Ubi id Verres audivit, Diodorum ad se vocavit.
4. Pompeius ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit.
5. Simul ac primum Verri occasio visa est, consulem deseruit.

6. Postquam id difficiliter visum est, neque facultas<sup>1</sup> perficiendi dabatur, ad Pompeium transierunt.

7. Ita mulier, dum pauca mancipia retinere vult, fortunas omnes perdidit.

8. Dixerat hoc ille, cum puer rediit.

9. Cum ego illum vidi, jam consilium mutaverat.

10. Cum ver esse coeperat, Verres dabat se labori atque itineribus.

<sup>1</sup> and no opportunity.



11. Jam ver adpetebat, cum Hannibal ex hibernis movet.

12. Argumentum tempestatis nautae putant, cum multae transvolant stellae.

13. Epaminondas cum vicisset Lacedaemonios apud Mantineam, atque ipse gravi vulnere exanimari se videret, quæsi-  
sivit salvusne esset clipeus.

14. Res cum haec scribebam<sup>2</sup> erat in extremum adducta discrimen.

15. Cum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias parare.

16. Homines, cum<sup>3</sup> multis rebus infirmiores sint, hac re maxime bestiis praestant, quod loqui possunt.

17. Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, cum ditissimus esse posset.

18. Cum multae res in philosophia nequaquam satis adhuc explicatae sint, tum perdifficilis et perobscura<sup>4</sup> quaestio est de natura deorum.

19. Cum sit in nobis consilium, ratio, prudentia, necesse est deum haec ipsa habere majora.

<sup>2</sup> See § 58, 8.

<sup>3</sup> *while*.

<sup>4</sup> See § 17, 5. *d*.

Write in Latin.

1. When you come (fut. perf.), I shall go away.<sup>1</sup>

2. I was asleep<sup>2</sup> when the doctor came.

3. I had scarcely<sup>3</sup> read your letter, when Lentulus approached.<sup>4</sup>

4. When he had said this, he went away.

5. This he had said, when news-was-brought<sup>5</sup> that the enemy were in sight.<sup>6</sup>

6. When summer had begun,<sup>7</sup> he used-to-make his quarters<sup>8</sup> at Syracuse.

7. When I reached home, my father had already gone.<sup>9</sup>

8. While he was speaking thus, his father arrived.<sup>10</sup>

9. When I come home at night,<sup>11</sup> I take-comfort<sup>12</sup> in-doing<sup>13</sup> nothing.

<sup>1</sup> *abeo*.    <sup>2</sup> *dormio*.<sup>4</sup>    <sup>3</sup> *vix*.    <sup>4</sup> *appropinquo*.<sup>1</sup>    <sup>5</sup> *nuntio*<sup>1</sup> (impers.).

<sup>6</sup> *conspectus*.    <sup>7</sup> Add "to be."    <sup>8</sup> *stativa*.    <sup>9</sup> *proficiscor*.

<sup>10</sup> *venio*.<sup>4</sup>    <sup>11</sup> *vesperi*.    <sup>12</sup> *me delector*.    <sup>13</sup> Gerund.

10. As soon as he saw his father coming, he ran-away.<sup>14</sup>  
 11. Since the time is-near,<sup>15</sup> it becomes us all to be ready.  
 12. While I do not believe him to be a robber, yet I distrust him.  
 13. Will you not believe, when the thing is so plain?<sup>16</sup>  
 14. I congratulate<sup>17</sup> you that<sup>18</sup> you have recovered<sup>19</sup> your property<sup>21</sup> at-last.<sup>20</sup>

<sup>14</sup> *effugio*.<sup>3</sup><sup>15</sup> *adsum*.<sup>16</sup> *manifestus*.<sup>17</sup> *gratulor*<sup>1</sup> (dat.).<sup>18</sup> *quod* (followed by indic.).<sup>19</sup> *recipio*.<sup>3</sup><sup>20</sup> *tandem* (before the verb).<sup>21</sup> *res*.

### 34. Purpose and Result.

- § 64, 1. with *a* (Final Clauses, with *ut*, *ne*, *quo*);  
 § 65, 1. with *a*, *b* (Consecutive Clauses, with *ut*, *quominus*, *quin*).

*a*. The clause of Purpose is often to be translated by **THAT**, or *in order that*, with *may* or *might* (English Potential); but oftener by the Infinitive with **TO**: as, **veni ut viderem**, *I came to see (that I might see)*.

*b*. The clause of Result is expressed in English sometimes by the Infinitive with **TO**, **SO-AS-TO**, or an equivalent: as, **tam longe abfui ut non viderem**, *I was so far away that I did not see (too far away to see)*.

*c*. After verbs of *hindering*, **quominus** is most commonly rendered by **FROM** with the verbal noun in -ING: as, **turba impedivit quominus viderem**, *the crowd hindered me from seeing*.

*d*. But if the verb of *hindering* is *negatived* by **NOT**, or some equivalent, **quin** is used instead of **quominus**: as, **turba non impedivit quin viderem**, *the crowd did not hinder me from seeing*.

*e*. Purpose is **NEVER** to be expressed in Latin by the simple infinitive, as it often is in English. For the ways in which it may be expressed, see § 64, 2.

**NOTE.** — Observe that in Latin these two constructions are precisely alike in the affirmative, but that in the negative one takes **ne**, and the other **ut non**. Thus, **custoditus est ne effugeret**, *he was guarded so that he MIGHT not escape*; but **custoditus est ut non effugeret**, *he was guarded so that he DID not escape*.

Examples.

1. Capuam proficiscar, quo facilius de Pompeii rebus *cognoscam*.

2. Ager non semel aratur, sed novatur et iteratur, quo meliores fetus *possit* et grandiores edere.

3. Haec ideo ad te scribebam,<sup>1</sup> ne me oblitum esse mandatorum tuorum *putares*.

4. Quamobrem discede, atque hunc mihi<sup>2</sup> timorem eripe: si est verus, ne *opprimar*; sin falsus, ut tandem aliquando timere *desinam*.

5. Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem miserunt qui pacem *peterent*.

6. Sunt multi qui eripiunt aliis<sup>2</sup> quod aliis *largiantur*.

7. Verba reperta sunt quae *indicarent*<sup>3</sup> voluntatem.

8. Arria gladium dedit marito quo se *interficeret*.

9. Helvetii diem dicunt,<sup>4</sup> qua<sup>5</sup> die ad ripam Rhodani omnes *conveniant*.

10. Natura oculos membranis tenuissimis vestivit et sepsit, quas primum perlucidas<sup>6</sup> fecit, ut per eas cerni *posset*, firmas autem, ut *containerentur*; sed lubricos oculos fecit et mobiles, ut et *declinarent* si quid noceret, et aspectum quo vellent facile *converterent*.

11. Non dubito quin hoc nuntio *gaudeas*.

12. In virtute multi sunt adscensus; ut is gloriā maxime *excellat*, qui virtute plurimum praestet.

13. Exspectari diutius non oportuit, quin ad castra *iretur*.

14. Caesar cognovit, per Afranium stare<sup>7</sup> quominus *dimicaretur*.

15. Non recusabo quominus omnes mea scripta *legant*.

<sup>1</sup> See § 58, 8.

<sup>2</sup> See § 51, 2. *e*.

<sup>3</sup> See § 66, 2.

<sup>4</sup> *appoint*.

<sup>5</sup> See § 13, 2. *N*.

<sup>6</sup> See § 17, 5. *d*.

<sup>7</sup> *that it was owing to Afranius.*

Write in Latin.

1. Aeneas, that he might win<sup>1</sup> the hearts of the Aborigines, called both the nations Latins.

2. Romulus, lest the greatness of the city should be void,<sup>2</sup> opened a certain place [as] an asylum.

<sup>1</sup> *sibi conciliare.*

<sup>2</sup> *vanus.*

3. The Clusians sent ambassadors to Rome, to ask aid from the Senate.

4. I sent [a man] to Antony, to<sup>3</sup> tell [him] this.

5. A pen<sup>4</sup> was given me to write with.<sup>5</sup>

6. He lived honorably, that<sup>6</sup> he might quit<sup>7</sup> life with a more calm mind.

7. Again and again I beg you to do it.

8. Thrice I have begged you to come as-soon-as-possible.<sup>8</sup>

9. What prevents you from coming at-once?<sup>9</sup>

10. I shall not prevent your returning home to-morrow.

<sup>3</sup> qui.      <sup>4</sup> calamus.      <sup>5</sup> quo scriberem.      <sup>6</sup> quo.      <sup>7</sup> excedo,<sup>3</sup> e.

<sup>8</sup> quam primum.      <sup>9</sup> statim.

### 35. Clause of Characteristic.

§ 65, 2. with *a, b, c, d, e, f* (relative Clauses of Characteristic).

The Clause of Characteristic is to be translated variously, according to the context: see examples in the Grammar, noticing particularly *e* (cause or hindrance).

N. B. — The constructions which have now been given are the only ones in which the Subjunctive affects the translation into English.

#### Examples.

1. Qui sunt qui *audeant* in provincia contra fortunas praetoris judicare?

2. Nemo fuit quin mala mea *inrideret*.

3. Nulla acies ingenii humani tanta est, quae penetrare in caelum *possit*.

4. Nunc dicis aliquid quod ad rem *pertineat*.

5. Nihil bonum est, quod non eum qui id possideat meliorem *faciat*.

6. Digna res est, quam diu multumque *consideremus*.

7. Nulla mihi videbatur aptior persona quae de senectute *loqueretur*.

8. Major est quam cui nocere *possis*.

9. Miserior erat quam cui invideri *posset*.

10. Voluptas est sola quae nos *vocet* ad se.

11. Nemo est tam senex, qui se annum non *putet* posse vivere.

12. Nemo est quin ubivis, quam ibi ubi est, esse *malit*.

Write in Latin.

1. Innocence is a quality<sup>1</sup> of the mind which harms<sup>2</sup> no one.

2. Who is there that does not laugh sometimes?<sup>3</sup>

3. There is no one who has not heard this.

4. He is an honest man, so far as I know.<sup>4</sup>

5. This man is not fit<sup>5</sup> for you to imitate.<sup>6</sup>

6. The load is too heavy for<sup>7</sup> a boy to carry.

<sup>1</sup> *affectio*.      <sup>2</sup> *noceo*.<sup>2</sup>      <sup>3</sup> *aliquando*.      <sup>4</sup> *quod sciam*.

<sup>5</sup> *idoneus*.      <sup>6</sup> *imitor*.<sup>1</sup>      <sup>7</sup> *quam quod, &c.*

36. *Intermediate Dependent Clauses.*

§ 66 (the general statement, comparing R. 47); 1. with *c*, *d*, and 2. (implied indirect discourse, and dependent subjunctive): compare § 67, 1. (general rule of Indirect Discourse).

Examples.

1. Caesar dat negotium Senonibus, uti ea quae apud Belgas *gerantur* cognoscant, seque de his rebus certiores faciant.

2. Caesar graviter eos accusat *quod* ab iis non *sublevetur*, praesertim *cum* eorum precibus adductus bellum *susceperit*.

3. Laudat Africanum Panaetius *quod fuerit* abstinens.

4. Quinto die Volusenus ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi *perspexisset* nuntiat.

5. Ariovistus respondit: "Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus *esset*, sese ad eum venturum fuisse."<sup>1</sup>

6. Helvetii, auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum *pertinerent* comparare.

7. Xerxes inflammasse templa Graeciae dicitur, *quod* parietibus *includerent* deos, quibus omnia *deberent* esse patentia ac libera; quorumque hic mundus omnis templum *esset* et domus.

<sup>1</sup> *would have come* (see § 67, 1. c).

## Write in Latin.

1. He promised to-give<sup>1</sup> what I had asked.
2. I ordered him to bring<sup>2</sup> whatever was necessary.<sup>3</sup>
3. The lieutenant<sup>4</sup> on-his-return<sup>5</sup> reported to Cæsar what he had seen in the enemy's camp.
4. Cicero praises Pompey [on the ground] that he was a commander of the highest merit.<sup>6</sup>
5. The ambassador<sup>4</sup> replied that, if this [demand] were refused,<sup>7</sup> the Romans would at-once<sup>8</sup> declare<sup>9</sup> war.
6. I will declare<sup>10</sup> frankly<sup>11</sup> what I think to be for the advantage<sup>12</sup> of the state.

1 <i>se daturum.</i>	2 <i>adfero.</i>	3 <i>opus.</i>	4 <i>legatus.</i>	5 <i>reversus.</i>
6 <i>virtus.</i>	7 <i>nego.</i> <sup>1</sup>	8 <i>statim.</i>	9 <i>indico.</i> <sup>3</sup>	10 <i>confirmo.</i> <sup>1</sup>
	11 <i>aperte.</i>		12 <i>utilitas.</i>	

## 37. Indirect Discourse.

§ 67, General Definition with Remark ; and 1. (general rule of Indirect Discourse) with *a* and *b* (use of subject-accusative, and of relative clauses).

*a.* The form of speech called Indirect Discourse, and distinguished by the use of the Infinitive and Subjunctive moods, is constructed as follows : —

1. The leading statement is put in the *main clause*, with its verb in the Infinitive and the subject in the Accusative: it is a SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE, construed as the Object of some verb or other expression of *knowing, thinking, telling, or perceiving* (see the following section, where examples of it will be given).

2. Subordinate clauses, introduced by Relatives, relative or conditional Particles, and the like, have their verbs in the Subjunctive: these are INTERMEDIATE DEPENDENT CLAUSES (as in the foregoing section).

*b.* The English word to introduce Indirect Discourse is THAT: as, *dicat scire se haec esse vera, he says that he knows that this is true.* But it is frequently well (as in the above example) to omit "that" in translation, or even to change the form to direct discourse, as if the statement were independent, inserting the verb of *saying, &c.* (if necessary) in a parenthetical clause. Thus, in the passage —

P. Scipionem, eum qui primus Africanus appellatus est, dicere solitum, scripsit Cato, qui fuit ejus fere aequalis, nunquam se minus otiosum esse quam cum otiosus, nec minus solum quam cum solus esset. — *Cic. Off. iii. 1.*

Publius Scipio, the same who was first called Africanus, used to say — as Cato writes, who was nearly of his time — that he was never less idle than when at leisure, and never less alone than when alone.

An attention to this remark will often make a sentence read easily and clearly in the English idiom, without departing from the order of thought or even of words as found in Latin.

c. The use of tenses in Indirect Discourse may be seen in the following examples : —

- |                    |   |   |
|--------------------|---|---|
| PRESENT.           | { | <i>scribere, he says that he is [now] writing.</i>                            |
| 1. <i>dicit se</i> |   | <i>scripsisse, he says that he wrote (has or had written or was writing).</i> |
|                    |   | <i>scripturum [esse], he says that he will write.</i>                         |
| PAST.              | { | <i>scribere, he said that he was [then] writing.</i>                          |
| 2. <i>dixit se</i> |   | <i>scripsisse, he said that he had written.</i>                               |
|                    |   | <i>scripturum [esse], he said that he would write.</i>                        |
| FUTURE.            | { | <i>scribere, he will say that he is [then] writing.</i>                       |
| 3. <i>dicet se</i> |   | <i>scripsisse, he will say that he has written, &amp;c.</i>                   |
|                    |   | <i>scripturum [esse], he will say that he is going to write.</i>              |

Observe that in the future of Indirect Discourse, with the participle in *-ūrus*, the infinitive *esse* is more commonly omitted.

d. With verbs of *hoping, promising, threatening*, and the like, the Latin use differs from English in requiring the subject always to be expressed : as,

1. *sperat se venturum, he hopes to come* (lit “he hopes that he shall come”).
2. *minatus est se urbem deleturum, he threatened to destroy the city.*

e. As in English, a double construction is found in the passive of indirect discourse, the verb of *saying, &c.*, being either personal or impersonal. Thus we may say *dicitur Caesar abiisse, Caesar is said to have gone*; or, *dicitur Caesarem abiisse, it is said that Caesar has gone*. In the former case (as more commonly in Latin), the subject of the verb is *Caesar*; in the latter, the clause *Caesarem abiisse* (compare § 70, 2. a).

## F.—Substantive Clauses.

## 38. Infinitive Clauses.

§ 70, 2. (the infinitive clause as Subject and as Object: R. 38, 39), also § 57, 8. *a* and *e*. Compare the illustration and examples in Lesson 21, page 32.

*a*. In English the sign of the Infinitive is TO. It is often used in such sentences as these: "I think it to be right;" "I know it to be true;" "He is said to be rich;" "You ordered it to be done;" when we might say, "I think *that* it is right," and so on. In Latin the infinitive construction is used in this way after any verb or other expression of *knowing, thinking, telling, or perceiving*.

*b*. The present infinitive (§ 58, 11. with *a*), when depending on a past tense, is to be translated by a past tense: as, **renuntiavit hostes esse in conspectu**, *he brought word that the enemy WERE in sight*; sometimes by the perfect infinitive: as, **scire potuit**, *he might HAVE KNOWN*; **hoc fieri oportuit**, *this ought TO HAVE BEEN DONE*. In these cases, the past possibility, necessity, &c., are indicated in Latin by the leading verb, as they are not in English.

*c*. The perfect infinitive in Latin may stand in indirect discourse for *any past tense of the indicative* (see § 58, 11. *b*, with the special use of **memini**).

## Examples.

1. Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.
2. Accusatores multos esse in civitate utile est.
3. Cives civibus parere aequum esse censeo.
4. Magna laus est tantas res solum gessisse.
5. Fama est ludibrio fratris Remum novos transiluisse muros.
6. Renuntiatur Germanos castra tum habuisse juxta Rhenum.
7. Te hilari esse animo valde me juvat.
8. Majori parti exercitus placuit castra defendere.
9. Memini me epistolam scribere cum hic rumor adlatus est.
10. Mihi non licet esse otioso (non licet me esse otiosum).
11. Eum non licet ante tempus consulem fieri.



12. *Vestrā interest manus hostium distineri.*
13. *Oratorem irasci minime decet, simulare non dedecet.*
14. *Senatui placuit C. Cassium proconsulem provinciam Syriam obtinere.*
15. *Facinus est vincere civem Romanum ; scelus verberare ; prope parricidium necare : quid dicam in crucem tollere ? verbo satis digno tam nefaria res appellari nullo modo potest.*

Write in Latin.

1. It is a grand<sup>1</sup> thing to be made consul.
2. It is beneficial<sup>2</sup> for a sick<sup>3</sup> man to sleep.
3. It is-better<sup>4</sup> to live honorably<sup>5</sup> than to be born honorably.
4. It is said that he was writing at the<sup>6</sup> time.
5. There was, however, a rumor that the election<sup>7</sup> would be<sup>8</sup> put off.<sup>9</sup>
6. It is lawful for no man to lead an army against [his] country.
7. The scouts<sup>10</sup> report that the Germans have already crossed<sup>11</sup> the Rhine.
8. It was to the interest of Clodius that Milo should perish.
9. I hear that Cicero has set out<sup>12</sup> [for] Athens.
10. Divitiacus said that he knew these things were true.
11. I remember that [when] a boy I saw the orator Hortensius.
12. I take it ill<sup>13</sup> that I am poor.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *magnificus.*    <sup>2</sup> *utilis.*    <sup>3</sup> *aegrotus.*    <sup>4</sup> *praestat.*    <sup>5</sup> *honeste.*  
<sup>6</sup> *is.*    <sup>7</sup> *comitia* (plur.).    <sup>8</sup> *fore ut.*    <sup>9</sup> *differo.*    <sup>10</sup> *explorator.*  
<sup>11</sup> *transeo.*    <sup>12</sup> *proficiscor.*<sup>3</sup>    <sup>13</sup> *aegre fero.*    <sup>14</sup> Compare § 70, 5. b.

39. *Substantive Clauses of Purpose.*

§ 70, 3. (clauses with **ut** and **ne** developed from *purpose*), with *a, b, c, d, e, f* (clauses of *influence, wish, permission, resolve, effort, and fearing*), with the two Remarks on page 196 (omission of **ut** or **ne**).

The clause of Purpose may be translated by **THAT** with the auxiliaries *may, might, shall, should* (English **POTENTIAL**); but often by the simple **INFINITIVE** (compare 37, above).

## Examples.

1. Navem idoneam *ut habeas* diligenter videbis.
2. Videant consules *ne* quid respublica detrimenti *capiat*.
3. Satis undique provisum atque praecautum est, *ne* quid adversus vos in pugna praeter hostes *esset*.
4. Jugurtha oppidanos hortatur *ut* moenia *defendant*.
5. Caesar huic imperat *adeat* civitates, *horteturque ut* populi Romani fidem *sequantur*, seque celeriter eo venturum *nuntiet*.
6. Cave enim *putes* me pacem desperare.
7. Galli timebant *ne* Caesar sibi bellum *inferret*.
8. Ornamenta metuo *ut possim* recipere.
9. Vereor *ut* Dolabella ipse satis nobis prodesse *possit*.
10. Tu ad me de istis rebus omnibus *scribas* velim quam diligentissime.
11. Publicola instituit primus, *ut* singulis consulibus alternis mensibus lictores *praerent*.

## Write in Latin.

1. He gave-orders<sup>1</sup> that the Senate should return to [their usual] apparel.<sup>2</sup>
2. The Senate voted<sup>3</sup> that the consuls should hold a levy.<sup>4</sup>
3. The general made-proclamation<sup>1</sup> that no one<sup>5</sup> should fight without his orders.<sup>6</sup>
4. Divitiacus implores<sup>7</sup> that Cæsar will pardon<sup>8</sup> his brother<sup>9</sup> [his] fault.<sup>10</sup>
5. I wish you would inquire,<sup>11</sup> and write to me.
6. Galba persuaded the soldiers to go away.
7. I fear he will come.
8. I fear he will not come.

<sup>1</sup> *edico*.<sup>3</sup><sup>2</sup> *vestitus*.<sup>4</sup><sup>3</sup> *decerno*.<sup>3</sup><sup>4</sup> *delectus*.<sup>4</sup><sup>5</sup> *ne quis*.<sup>6</sup> *injussu suo*.<sup>7</sup> *imploro*.<sup>1</sup><sup>8</sup> *ignosco*.<sup>3</sup><sup>9</sup> Dative.<sup>10</sup> *peccatum*.<sup>11</sup> *interrogo*.<sup>1</sup>

40. *Substantive Clauses of Result.*

§ 70, 4. (clauses with **ut** and **ut non**, developed from *result*), with *a, d, e, g* (clauses of *happening, tantum abest ut, facere ut, and hindering*).

The clause of Result may be translated by **THAT**, with or without the auxiliaries *can, could*; occasionally by the simple Infinitive; sometimes by the participial noun in -ING (see examples under *g*), especially verbs of hindering.

In general, the learner may be advised to use the Infinitive in rendering a Latin object-clause, *wherever the English idiom permits*.

Examples.

1. Restat *ut* pauca *dicam* de senectute.
2. Reliquum est *ut* officiis *certemus* inter nos.
3. Sequitur *ut* officiorum genera *distingnam*.
4. Facere non possum *quin* quotidie litteras ad te *mittam* ut tuas accipiam.
5. Tantum abest *ut* nostra *miremur*, *ut* nobis ipse non *satisfaciat* Demosthenes.
6. Non est dubium *quin* totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii *possint*.
7. Sequitur *ut* futurum *sit* ut rex interficiatur.
8. Credidi *fore ut* puerum ignaviae *puderet*.
9. Haec prima lex amicitiae sancitur: ut ab amicis honesta petamus; amicorum causā honesta faciamus; ne exspectemus quidem, dum rogemur; studium semper adsit, cunctatio absit.

Write in Latin.

1. It remains<sup>1</sup> that I speak briefly<sup>2</sup> concerning peace.
2. It cannot be doubted that<sup>3</sup> we ought to obey<sup>4</sup> the laws of virtue.
3. Dionysius was so far<sup>5</sup> from being happy, that he was of all men most wretched.
4. The soldiers were hardly<sup>6</sup> held-back<sup>7</sup> from<sup>8</sup> bursting<sup>9</sup> into the town.

<sup>1</sup> *restat*.    <sup>2</sup> *pauca*.    <sup>3</sup> *quin*.    <sup>4</sup> *pareo*.<sup>2</sup>    <sup>5</sup> *tantum aberat* (impers.).  
<sup>6</sup> *aegre*.    <sup>7</sup> *retineo*.<sup>2</sup>    <sup>8</sup> *quin*.    <sup>9</sup> *inrumpo*.<sup>3</sup>

41. Substantive Clauses with *Quod*.

§ 70, 5. with *a* and *b* (indicative clause with **quod**, introducing a *statement of fact, specification, or object of feeling*).

The **quod**-clause is generally to be translated by **THAT**, or **THE-FACT-THAT**; occasionally by **WHEREAS**, or **AS-TO-WHAT**.

## Examples.

1. Non ea res me deterruit, *quod* tu ad me nullas litteras miseras.

2. Percommode<sup>1</sup> factum est, *quod* de morte primo die disputatum est.

3. Non pigritiā facio *quod* non mea manu scribo.

4. Hoc uno praestamus vel maxime feris, *quod* exprimere dicendo sensa possumus.

5. Me una consolatio sustentat, *quod* tibi nullum a me pietatis officium defuit.

6. Quod spiratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formam hominum habetis, indignantur.

<sup>1</sup> See § 17, 5. *d*.

## Write in Latin.

1. It alarms<sup>1</sup> me that I hear nothing from my brother.

2. This<sup>2</sup> is my chief comfort,<sup>3</sup> that I have done no wrong<sup>4</sup> willingly.<sup>5</sup>

3. The Romans excelled the Greeks in this, — that they knew-how<sup>6</sup> to give liberty to conquered<sup>7</sup> states.

4. I am glad that you have returned<sup>8</sup> at length to [your] country.

5. As to what you say of [your] health,<sup>9</sup> I am glad to hear that you are recovering.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *terreo*.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup> *illud*.

<sup>3</sup> *solacium*.

<sup>4</sup> *injuria*.

<sup>5</sup> *volens*.

<sup>6</sup> *scio*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>7</sup> *victus*.

<sup>8</sup> *revertor*.

<sup>9</sup> *valetudo*.

<sup>10</sup> *convalesco*.<sup>3</sup>

## 42. Indirect Questions.

§ 67, 2. (construction of the Indirect Question), with *a* and *e* (use of the *periphrastic future, nescio quis*, etc.); also the Remark, p. 191 (passive construction).

Observe that an Indirect Question occurs only when an *interrogative clause* (or one introduced by an interrogative word) *is made the subject or object of some verb*, or equivalent phrase. Thus the words *who is there?* are a DIRECT QUESTION; in the sentence *I do not know* [it is uncertain] *who is there*, the same words are an INDIRECT QUESTION. This form is to be carefully distinguished from dependent RELATIVE clauses under 39, above; also from direct questions in the subjunctive mood (*dubitative subjunctive*): as, **quid faciam?** *what shall I do?* **quid facerem?** *what was I to do?*

Examples.

1. Si quid in mentem venit, velim scribas et ipse quid sis acturus.
2. Caesar ab iis quaesivit, quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent, et quid in bello possent.
3. Incertum est quando domus nostras visuri simus.
4. Videamus deorumne providentiā mundus regatur.
5. Quaero num quando amici novi veteribus sint anteponendi.
6. Deinde ex eo quaesitum est, Archelaum nonne beatum putaret.
7. Quaero utrum Alexandrum an Caesarem magis mireris.
8. Interrogatus scutumne amisisset, respondit id esse tutum.
9. Mihi non minori curae est qualis respublica post mortem meam futura sit, quam qualis hodie sit.

Write in Latin.

1. Do you not remember what I said a-little-while-ago.<sup>1</sup>
2. No man knows when he shall die.
3. I wrote what I was going-to-do.<sup>2</sup>
4. I asked what you were going-to-do:<sup>3</sup> what had to be done.<sup>4</sup>
5. You ask me whether I have lost my friend.
6. Bring-me-word<sup>5</sup> whether your brother is at home.
7. I should-like-to-have-you<sup>6</sup> inform<sup>7</sup> me whether you will come or-not.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> paulo ante.

<sup>2</sup> acturus.

<sup>3</sup> facturus.

<sup>4</sup> faciendum esse.

<sup>5</sup> renuntio.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>6</sup> velim.

<sup>7</sup> certiores facere (subj.).

<sup>8</sup> necne.

**G.—Participial Constructions.****43. Participles: Predicate Use.**

§ 72, 1. with *b* (use of the participles; perfect of deponents); 2, 3. with Remark and *a* (adjective and predicate use); 4. with *a*, *b* (the future participle in *urus*).

In these constructions, the translation must be varied to conform to the English idiom (see § 72, 3. with the Remark).

**Examples.**

1. Pastor elatam securim in regis caput dejecit.
2. Catilinam Lentulus et Cethegus deprehensi non terruerunt.
3. Non multo ante urbem captam, exaudita est vox e luco Vestae.
4. Ab orto usque ad occidentem solem pugnatum est.
5. Querimur de Milone per vim expulso.
6. Major ex civibus amissis dolor quam laetitia fuis hostibus fuit.
7. Post expulsos reges consules creati sunt.
8. Aër effluens huc et illuc ventos efficit.
9. Tarquinius elatum e curia regem in inferiorem partem per gradus dejecit.
10. Fugientes Gallos Caesar adsecutus trucidavit.
11. Intentum animum tanquam arcum habebat Appius senex.

**Write in Latin.**

1. Each man claimed<sup>1</sup> for himself the glory of having slain<sup>2</sup> the king.
2. From the founding<sup>3</sup> of the city to the expulsion<sup>4</sup> of the kings and the liberation<sup>5</sup> of the city was two hundred and forty years.
3. Cæsar overtook<sup>6</sup> the Helvetii in-their-flight,<sup>7</sup> at<sup>8</sup> the river Arar.

<sup>1</sup> *expeto*.<sup>3</sup><sup>2</sup> *interficio*.<sup>3</sup><sup>3</sup> *condo*.<sup>3</sup><sup>4</sup> *exigo*.<sup>3</sup><sup>5</sup> *libero*.<sup>1</sup><sup>6</sup> *adsequor*.<sup>3</sup><sup>7</sup> *fugio*.<sup>3</sup><sup>8</sup> *ad*.

4. After the storming<sup>9</sup> of Massilia a league was struck.<sup>10</sup>
5. Six years after the capture<sup>9</sup> of Veii, Rome was taken by the Gauls.
6. By the conquest<sup>11</sup> of the Veientes, the consul had increased<sup>12</sup> the Roman state.

<sup>9</sup> *expugno*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>10</sup> *ico*.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>11</sup> *devinco*.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>12</sup> *augeo*.<sup>2</sup>

#### 44. Ablative Absolute.

§ 54, 10. *b*, with Note (ablative absolute of *time* or *circumstance*), and *c* (impersonal use of adjective or participle).

*a*. The Ablative Absolute is very rarely found except with the *present active* and the *perfect passive* participle.

*b*. As the Nominative Absolute is rarely admissible in English, a change of form is generally required in translation. Thus the present participle is oftenest to be rendered by a relative clause with *when* or *while*; and the perfect passive participle by the perfect active participle in English. These changes may be seen in the following example:—

“At illi, *intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris, atque occupatis* in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis ejecerunt; *impetuque* in eos *facto*, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt; *duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus* a Caesare, cum hae (*perexiguo intermisso loci spatio* inter se) constitissent, novo genere pugnae *perterritis nostris, per medios audacissime* perruperunt, seque inde incolumes receperunt.” — CÆSAR, B. G. v. 15.

“But they, *having paused a space while our men were unaware and busied* in fortifying the camp, suddenly threw themselves out of the woods; then *making an attack* upon those who were on guard in front of the camp, fought fiercely; and, *though two cohorts had been sent to their relief by Cæsar, after these had taken their position (leaving very little space of ground between them), as our men were alarmed by the strange kind of fighting, they dashed most daringly through the midst of them, and got off safe.*”

#### Examples.

1. Caesar, confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum praemisit.
2. Paucis a me<sup>1</sup> stantibus, non desperabo.

<sup>1</sup> *on my side*.

3. Non te invito filium tuum Romam mittam.
4. Pythagoras, Tarquinio Superbo rege, in Italiam venit.
5. Latini exercitu a consulibus deleta pacem Romanos poposcerunt.
6. Caesar castris munitis, vineas agere, quaeque ad oppug-  
nandum usui erant comparare coepit.
7. Catilina necato filio vacuum domum scelestis nuptiis  
fecit.
8. Lysias, filio e civitate pulso, multos annos Sardibus  
vixit.
9. Cognito super humeros fratris paludamento sponsi,  
quod ipsa confecerat, virgo solvit crines.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup> A sign of mourning.

Write in Latin.

1. After ending<sup>1</sup> the war with the Veneti, Cæsar put<sup>2</sup> all  
the senate to death<sup>2</sup> [and] sold the rest [of the inhabitants]  
at-public-sale.<sup>3</sup>
2. We strive<sup>4</sup> in vain when nature opposes.<sup>5</sup>
3. The father, not-expecting<sup>6</sup> the arrival of his son, set-out<sup>7</sup>  
for Rome.
4. The Latins, having lost<sup>8</sup> [their] army, begged peace of  
the Romans.
5. The Romans, when the city was taken by the Gauls,  
retreated<sup>9</sup> to the Capitol.

<sup>1</sup> conficio<sup>3</sup> (abl. abs.).

<sup>2</sup> neco<sup>1</sup> (abl. abs.).

<sup>3</sup> sub corona.

<sup>4</sup> contendo.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>5</sup> repugno.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>6</sup> despero.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>7</sup> proficiscor.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>8</sup> amitto.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>9</sup> se recipere.<sup>3</sup>

#### 45. Gerundive Constructions.

§ 72, 5. with *c* (participial and adjective use); § 73,  
1, 2. (Gerund and Gerundive); 3. with *a*, *b*, *c*, *d* (the  
gerundive constructions).

NOTE.—In this Gerundive use the form in **du**s is always  
to be rendered by an ACTIVE form in English (usually by the  
participial noun in -ING, followed by the objective: see examples  
3, 4, 5); while in the Predicate use it is always PASSIVE (trans-  
lated *ought*, *must*, &c.; see Lesson 16, 2. d).



Examples.

1. Vitia senectutis diligentia compensanda sunt.
2. Rem tibi omittendam esse censeo.
3. Helvetii legatos pacis petendae causa miserunt.
4. Vivis, et vivis non ad deponendam sed ad confirmandam audaciam.
5. Caesar pontem in Arari faciendum curavit.
6. Praetor decemviros agro<sup>1</sup> Samniti metiendo dividendoque creavit.
7. Habenda ratio valetudinis ; utendum exercitationibus modicis ; tantum cibi et potionis adhibendum, ut reficiantur vires non opprimantur.
8. Principes civitatis tuorum consiliorum reprimendorum causa Romam profugerunt.
9. Cretum leges laboribus erudiunt juventutem, venando, currendo, esuriendo, sitiendo, algendo, aestuando.
10. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda : vexillum proponendum, signum tubam dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum.

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

Write in Latin.

1. The consul gives heed<sup>1</sup> to propitiating<sup>2</sup> the gods.
2. All hope of taking the town was lost.
3. Caesar perceives<sup>3</sup> that the war must be put-off<sup>4</sup> till<sup>5</sup> summer.
4. The consul gave Fabius one legion to lead into Spain.
5. Conon provided-for<sup>6</sup> the repair<sup>7</sup> of the walls of Athens.
6. A short time<sup>8</sup> of life is [long] enough to<sup>9</sup> live well and happily.
7. By always obeying the magistrates, the youth won<sup>10</sup> [themselves] good fame.
8. The grass<sup>11</sup> here is very convenient<sup>11</sup> for sleeping.
9. You have lost much time in play.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> opera.    <sup>2</sup> placo.<sup>1</sup>    <sup>3</sup> animadverto.<sup>3</sup>    <sup>4</sup> differo.    <sup>5</sup> ad.  
<sup>6</sup> curo.<sup>1</sup>    <sup>7</sup> reficio.<sup>3</sup>    <sup>8</sup> spatium.    <sup>9</sup> ad.    <sup>10</sup> adsequor.<sup>3</sup>  
<sup>11</sup> commodus.    <sup>12</sup> ludo.<sup>3</sup>    <sup>13</sup> gramen (N.).

## PART THIRD.

## ON READING LATIN.

NOTE. — The following section, consisting chiefly of hints and directions to aid the learner in his subsequent reading, is not designed to be used as *lessons for class instruction*, but to be reserved for reference or occasional use, according to the teacher's judgment. Its chief advantage may perhaps be found at a later period of study than that covered by the Reading Lessons contained in this book.

## I. THE MEANING OF WORDS.

In his reading, the learner should always be guided, not merely by the *dictionary meaning* of the words, but by the meaning of the Root, or Stem, and terminations, as explained by the laws of derivation and the groupings of families of words (see pages 42-45). To aid in this, the following illustrations may be of service.

1. Notice the meaning of the *significant endings*, and their force in the derivative words.

As an example of analysis, take the word **pābulātio**. The termination **tio** is seen to be a "verbal abstract;" that is, to express, in a general or abstract way, the action of a verb. The long **ā** points to a verb of the first conjugation, formed from an adjective or noun of the first or second declension. This leads us to the noun **pābulum**; and the verb would signify *doing something* with that noun. In the list (p. 43), **bulum** is found as a termination of nouns of *means*: **pābulum** is the *means* of doing the action expressed in the root **PA**. As roots are not given in our lexicons, we must learn to recognize them in the *present stems* of verbs (see Lesson 28). If the meaning of **pascor** is known, **pābulum** will appear to be a *means of feeding*; **pābulor** (deponent) is *to obtain the means of feeding*; and **pābulātio**, in the connection where we find it, can only mean *foraging*.

Even when the meaning of the root does not appear at all, the grouping of the derivations may still be very instructive. Thus, **humus**, *ground*; **humilis**, *low* (on the ground); **homo** (**homin-**), *man* (creature of earth); **hūmānus**, *gentle*, as belonging to man in distinction from brutes; **hūmānitās**, *gentleness* or *refinement*.

The chief advantage, however, is in the knowledge of immediate and conscious derivatives. Thus, **aedilicius** can only mean *belonging to an ædile*, while **aedilis** itself must have something to do with public *edifices* (**aedi-ficia**); **sermunculus** must mean *a little talk*; **esurio**,<sup>4</sup> *desire to eat*, hence *to be hungry*; **emāx**, *eager to buy*, and so on. Compare, for illustration, the following words from one root; **medeor**, **medicus**, **medicīna**, **medicīnālis**, **medicor**, **medicāmentum**, **medicāmentārius**, **medicābilis**, **medicāmentōsus**, **meditor** (frequentative, with an earlier meaning preserved). Notice the modes of formation in the foregoing words.

Even if no advantage were gained in acquiring or retaining the meaning, yet the words become more interesting and lively, and the knowledge of them more intelligent and fruitful. Thus in **redintegratio** we have the prefix **red-**, *back again* (to its former state); the ending **-tio** (verbal abstract); the verb is **integer** (**āre**), denominative from **integer**, *whole* or *sound* (**in, not**; TAG, root of **tango**, *touch*; **ra**, participial = **tus** or **nus**): hence the meaning *restoration* (making uninjured again).

In such derivatives as **amputo**, **computo**, the meanings seem absurdly inconsistent. But the verb is a *denominative* from the adjective **putus**, a collateral form of **pūrus**, *clean*. The corresponding verb (which would be **puo**) is lost; but its original sense appears in **puto**, *to clean up* (as by trimming off a diseased branch), and also *to clear up* (as an account), and so *to reckon*, then *to think*, which meanings are divided between the above compounds.

2. Form words with the following meanings from their primitives, comparing the Vocabulary:—

1. *A reckoning* (**reor**,<sup>2</sup> *reckon*); 2. *An assembly* (**convenio**,<sup>4</sup> *come together*); 3. *Arrangement* (**dispōno**,<sup>3</sup> *distribute*); 4. *A change* (**mūto**,<sup>1</sup> *alter*); 5. *A joining* (**jungo**<sup>3</sup>); 6. *A breaking* (**frango**<sup>3</sup>); 7. *Length* (**longus**); 8. *Breadth* (**lātus**); 9. *Power of holding* (**capāx** from **capio**<sup>3</sup>, *take*); 10. *Means of teaching* (**doceo**<sup>2</sup>); 11. *Means of support* (**colo**<sup>3</sup>); 12. *Means of covering* (**tego**<sup>3</sup>); 13. *Brightness* (**clārus**); 14. *Softness* (**mollis**, *soft*); 15. *Sweetness*

(suāvis); 16. Means of trying (ex-perior<sup>4</sup>); 17. A tray (for carrying: fero); 18. A piece broken (frango<sup>3</sup>); 19. Means of feeding (alo<sup>3</sup>); 20. A bramble-thicket (dūmus); 21. A rose-garden (rosa); 22. A dove-cote (columba); 23. Lamentable (fleo<sup>2</sup>); 24. Made of flowers (flōs); 25. Blooming (flōreo<sup>2</sup>); 26. Sickly (morbus); 27. Commerce (mercor<sup>1</sup>); 28. A mingling (misceo<sup>2</sup>); 29. Belonging to a soldier (miles); 30. To grow mild (mītis); 31. A little measure (modus); 32. A little pattern (forma); 33. A little man (homo); 34. A little puppy (catulus); 35. A means of defence (mūnio<sup>4</sup>); 36. Changeable (mūto); 37. Teachable (doceo); 38. With a large nose (nāsus); 39. With horns (cornū); 40. Bearded (barba); 41. Belonging to a ship (nāvis); 42. Sinewy (nervus); 43. Snowy (nix); 44. A little eye (oculus); 45. Son of Priam (Priamus).

3. Explain the following phrases from the meaning of the Root prefixed, with the significant ending:—

1. CAD, *fall*: cado,<sup>3</sup> accido, etc.

1. Casus est, cum aliquid cecidit, *it is an accident when something befalls.*

2. Calamitas accidit, *a misfortune has happened.*

3. Caduca spes, *a futile hope.*

4. Decidua sidera, *falling stars.*

5. Sólis occasus, *sunset.*

6. Ab oriente ad occidentem, *from east to west.*

7. Succidua flamma, *a dying flame.*

8. Occasio pugnandi, *an opportunity for fighting.*

9. Pestis in urbem incidit, *a plague attacked the city.*

10. Post Trojae excidium, *after the destruction of Troy.*

COMPARE the English words *case*, *accident*, *deciduous*, *occasion*, *incidental*, *casualty*.

2. CAP, *take*: capio,<sup>3</sup> incipio, etc.

1. Litteras tuas accepi, *I got your letter.*

2. Acceptus erat populo, *he was a favorite of the people.*

3. Auceps multos passeris cepit, *the fowler caught a good many sparrows.*

4. Captator aurae popularis, *one who courts popular favor.*

5. Incidere in captionem, *to be tricked.*

6. Captura magna piscium, *a great haul of fish.*
7. Populus vult decipi, *the people like to be taken in.*
8. Inceptio operis, *undertaking a task.*
9. Manere incepto, *to persevere in an undertaking.*
10. Multa pericula excepi, *I have encountered many a peril.*
11. Frugum fructuumque perceptio, *the gathering of crops and fruits.*
12. Receptui canere, *to sound a retreat.*

ENGLISH : *captive, capture, accept, receive, perception, incipient, except.*

3. FAC, *make* : **facio**,<sup>3</sup> **efficio**.

1. Dominationem adfectat, *he aims at dominion.*
2. Gaudium dolorque sunt affectus animi, *joy and grief are affections of the mind.*
3. Captivum morte adfecit, *he put the prisoner to death.*
4. Librorum confectio, *the composing of books.*
5. Confector negotiorum, *one who despatches business.*
6. Dolore confectus, *exhausted with grief.*
7. Arma sanguine infecta, *arms stained with blood.*
8. Re infecta, *without success (the thing undone).*
9. Officia perficere, *to fulfil one's duties.*
10. Homo officiosus, *an obliging man.*
11. Facinus atrox hic fecit, *this man has done a violent act.*
12. Res factu facilis, *a thing easy to do.*
13. Per vim et factionem, *by party violence.*
14. Mature facto opus est, *there is need of prompt action.*
15. Praefectus castrorum (or castris), *a quartermaster.*
16. Pecunia multarum effectrix est voluptatum, *money procures many delights.*
17. Pontem reficere conantur, *they try to repair the bridge.*
18. Filius patri suffectus, *a son put in his father's place.*
19. Sufficit hoc dicere, *it is enough to say this.*

ENGLISH : — *fact, factious, effect, efficacious, refection, confectionery, perfect, sufficient, factitious, facility, difficult, officious, affectionate, benefit, satisfy.*

4. JAC, *throw* : jacio,<sup>3</sup> injicio (inicio).

1. Abiectus animo, *disheartened*.
2. Adjectio caloris, *the application of heat*.
3. Oculum adjecit hereditati, *he cast eyes on the inheritance*.
4. Conjectura judicare, *to judge by guess* (common sense).
5. Conjectus aquae, *a puddle of water*.
6. Conjicere verba, *to bandy words*.
7. Omni spe dējectus, *hopeless and downcast*.
8. Homo ejectus, *a ruined* (shipwrecked) *man*.
9. Ferrati obices (objices), *iron bolts*.
10. Objectus invidiae, *exposed to jealousy*.
11. Projectus in antro, *stretched out in a grotto*.
12. Arma projecerunt, *they surrendered*.
13. Libertatem projecerat, *he had renounced his freedom*.
14. Rejectio judicum, *challenging of the jurymen*.
15. Rejicula vacca, *a worthless cow*.
16. Equitatus rejectus est, *the cavalry were driven back*.

ENGLISH : — *abject, conjecture, reject, projection, object, subject, dejected*.

5. TAG, *touch* : tango,<sup>3</sup> contingo.

1. Haec causa te non attingit, *this motive does not touch you*.
2. Versibus rem attingere, *to treat a subject in verse*.
3. Attactu nullo, *with no contact* (Æn. ii. 350).
4. Contactu immundo, *with unclean touch* (id. iii. 227).
5. Contagio sceleris, *a sharing in guilt*.
6. Contagium morbi, *contagion of sickness*.
7. Sanguine se contaminare, *to stain one's self with blood*.
8. Turris contingit vallum, *the tower reaches the palisade*.
9. Romae nutriri mihi contigit, *I had the luck to be brought up at Rome*.
10. Exercitus integer intactusque, *an army safe and sound*.
11. Homo tagax, *a knavish fellow* (Cic. Att. vi. 3).
12. Simul ac tetigit provinciam, *as soon as he reached the province*.

ENGLISH : — *tact, tangible, contact, contingency, integrity, contagion*.

2. THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IT may now be taken for granted that the learner has become acquainted with the meaning of many words, and has learned to distinguish the case, person, tense, &c., by their inflections, so as to connect them readily in a simple sentence. He will have noticed that, while in English words almost always follow the order of Subject, Verb, and Object or Predicate, in Latin this order is very seldom found ; while Latin has an order of its own (see § 76 of the Grammar), though it is much less rigidly followed than in English. The chief difficulty he will now have to meet will be in the *long and complicated sentences*, which are much more common in Latin than in English. And, before he attempts these, a few points should be carefully observed.

As early as possible, let him accustom himself to follow the thought and the words *in their Latin order* ; not to pick out the words here and there, to make a natural (English) order, as if the sentence were a puzzle, to be taken to pieces and put together again. Let him attend carefully to the ideas in the order in which they are expressed, with their relations as denoted by the inflections. After a very little practice—reading over the words several times, if necessary—the meaning will begin to appear *through a kind of broken English*, and a habit can soon be formed of reading in the Latin order almost as well as in our own.\*

The following special directions will now be of service :—

1. Read the Latin carefully, noting familiar words, and single out the Nominative (if there is one) and the Verb.

N. B. — All Latin words ending in *t* (exc. *at, sat, et, -met, tot ; quot, ut, caput*, or their compounds) are verbs in the third person ; all in *nt* are in the third person plural.

\* It will be noticed that English itself often deviates from the established order in its older forms or in poetry, without presenting any difficulty : as in the sentence, “ Whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you.”

2. Notice *the first word or words*, as these will often hint the gist of the sentence.

3. Note the person, number, and voice of the Verb, before deciding on the relations of the other words.

4. Notice that Correlative expressions — *as . . . as, not only . . . but also, &c.* — immediately precede the same words or phrases which they must precede in English.

5. Translate *by phrases and not by single words*: taking an adjective with its noun, an adverb with its verb, and so on.

N.B. — An adjective usually follows its noun: when it goes before, it is generally for emphasis, and so often gives a hint at the meaning of the sentence.

So much for simple sentences. But Latin has the habit, more than most languages, of inserting Subordinate Clauses (§ 45, 5. *b*) in the body of the sentence. Such clauses are generally introduced by a Relative word or a Subordinate Conjunction (see the list in § 43, 1. *b*). These — which we may call SUBORDINATE CONNECTIVES — suspend the sense, until the subordinate clause is finished; and this, again, may be suspended in the same way. Thus a Latin period often becomes very long and involved. If it gets to be confusing, then a subordinate clause may be dropped entirely, to be taken up afterwards. But generally the following directions will serve: —

6. The words at the beginning of a sentence or clause belong *with the first finite verb*.\* But —

7. Any clause, principal or subordinate, is SUSPENDED, when any subordinate connective appears *between the first and last word of that clause*.

\* A Finite Verb is one limited by personal endings; neither an Infinitive nor a Participle.



8. In case such a connective appears, the rest of the main clause does not appear *till the whole of the subordinate one is finished*.

9. An Interrogative word often serves as a connective, introducing an Indirect Question.

10. A relative clause in Latin often comes before the principal or antecedent clause (see § 48, 3. b, with Rem.).

Thus it will be seen that *the next finite verb after any subordinate connective is the leading verb of that clause, unless the clause itself is suspended*;<sup>a</sup> and that *the main verb of the sentence may be known by not being introduced by any such subordinate word*.<sup>b</sup> Rarely a verb may be omitted; but the sentence is then easily understood as elliptical (§ 45, 2. d).

Take now the following example:—

ATQUE EGO, *ut vidi quos* maximo furore et scelere esse inflammatos **sciebam**, *eos* vobiscum esse et Romae remansisse, in eo omnes dies noctesque CONSUMPSI, *ut* quid agerent, quid molirentur, *sentirem ac viderem*.

Here the leading clause *Atque ego* (6) is suspended (7) by the relative clause *ut vidi*, which again is interrupted by the words *quos . . . sciebam*. The latter clause being now complete (8), the object of *vidi* is seen to be the infinitive clause *eos . . . remansisse*, the antecedent coming after the relative (10). The main clause is now resumed, its verb being evidently *consumpsi*, which is the predicate of *ego*. This again is followed by *ut . . . viderem* in apposition with *eo*, this clause being itself suspended by the indirect questions *quid . . . molirentur* (9).

NOTE.—In applying the rule for the suspension of clauses, it should be remembered that *a relative clause is very rarely suspended except by relative pronouns*. In the very common phrases, **qui si**, **qui cum**, **quem quis**, etc., it is necessary, according to the English idiom, to translate the relative by a demonstrative word; as, **qui cum** advenisset, *when he had arrived*; **cui quis** credat? *who can believe him?* It may be added that the comparative conjunctions, **tamquam**, **quasi**, with **nisi** and some others, are often used without a verb.

The learner is now advised to study carefully the subjoined passages (which may be translated and explained to him by the teacher), comparing the various phrases and subordinate constructions with the foregoing notes. The *figures* in these passages refer to the above points.

1. T. Labienus,<sup>6</sup> castris hostium potitus,<sup>6</sup> et ex loco superiore *quae*<sup>9</sup> res in nostris castris *gererentur* conspicatus,<sup>6</sup> decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui *cum* ex equitum et calorum fuga *quo*<sup>9</sup> in loco res *esset*,<sup>8</sup> *quantoque*<sup>9</sup> in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator *versaretur*<sup>8</sup> *COGNOVISSENT*,<sup>8</sup> nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.<sup>b</sup>—CÆSAR, *Bell. Gall.* ii. 26.

2. Occidisse<sup>2</sup> patrem Sex. Roscius arguitur. Scelustum, di immortales, ac nefarium facinus! atque ejus modi\* quo uno maleficio scelera omnia complexa esse videantur. Etenim si<sup>7</sup> (id quod praeclare a sapientibus dicitur) vultu saepe laeditur pietas,<sup>8</sup> quod<sup>6</sup> supplicium<sup>6</sup> satis acre reperietur<sup>b</sup> in eum qui mortem obtulerit parenti, pro quo mori ipsum, si<sup>7</sup> res postularet, jura divina atque humana cogeabant?<sup>8</sup> In hoc tanto, tam atroci, tam singulari maleficio, quod ita raro exstitit ut, si quando auditum sit, portentis ac prodigii simile numeretur,<sup>8</sup> quibus tandem tu, C. Eruci, argumentis accusatorem censes uti oportere?—CIC. *Rosc. Amer.* 13.

3. Reliquum est ut de Q. Catuli auctoritate et sententia dicendum esse videatur. Qui<sup>6</sup> cum ex vobis quaereret, si in uno Cn. Pompeio omnia poneretis, si quid eo factum esset,† in quo spem essetis<sup>9</sup> habituri,‡ cepit<sup>b</sup> magnum suae virtutis fructum ac dignitatis, cum

\* The phrase *ejus modi*, "of such a sort," is here equivalent to *tale*.

† *in case any thing should happen to him.*

‡ The clause from *in quo* is the object of *quaereret*, suspended by the two conditional clauses *si . . . poneretis*, *si . . . esset*.

omnes una prope voce in eo ipso vos spem habituros esse dixistis. Etenim talis est vir, ut nulla res tanta sit ac tam difficilis, quam ille non et consilio regere et integritate tueri et virtute conficere possit. Sed in hoc ipso ab eo vehementissime dissentio, quod, quo<sup>7</sup> minus certa est hominum ac minus diuturna vita,<sup>8</sup> hoc magis res publica, dum<sup>7</sup> per deos immortales licet,<sup>8</sup> frui debet summi viri vita atque virtute. — CIC. *Manil.* 20.

### 3. READING AT SIGHT.

The most valuable knowledge we can have of a foreign language, whether for the pleasure and advantage to be derived from it, or for the convenience of a practical acquaintance with its forms, can be had only by the habitual practice of reading at sight. In attempting this, the following directions will be of service : —

1. Look first at *the endings of words*, so as to become instantly aware of their grammatical relations.
2. Observe the *significant endings*, and always connect obvious derivatives with their primitives.
3. Even where derivations are not obvious, *group words in families*, so as to associate their meanings.
4. Associate the Latin words with *English derivatives*, however remote; and with other languages, if you happen to know any.
5. Use any mechanical device or "thumb-rule" possible, as to *the position of words*, or their probable meanings in such and such connections.
6. Commit to memory phrases, or (if possible) whole passages.
7. Notice constantly such idioms, or modes of expression, as are like or unlike our own.

8. In translating aloud, always use the English idiom; but *take in the Latin first in its own idiom*; if possible, without even thinking of the corresponding English words.

9. In translating any word, always bear in mind its *leading or principal meaning*.

This is not always the etymological meaning, though it may be usually traced to that; but it is the *conscious meaning* (as it were), the notion which the Roman himself attached to it. For example, the leading meaning of **mitto** seems to be *let go*, either with or without accompanying effort: and this meaning the Roman felt in it, though we may translate it by different expressions. Thus, **mittere tēlum**, *to throw a weapon*; **mittere legatos**, *to send ambassadors*; **mittere aliquam rem** (often), *to let a thing go, to omit or pass over a thing*; hence, **mittere lacrimas**, *to cease weeping*; **mittere dicere**, *to forbear saying* (see **mitto** in Lexicon).

We may even say that this is more necessary in using a good dictionary than in using a poor one; for a good one gives meanings which — being correct in the corresponding English phrase — give a very inaccurate reflection of the true meaning of the word. Thus, **capere poenas** means in English *to inflict punishment*; but to a Roman it meant to *receive or exact the penalty* for a wrong. So also with the relations of words. Cæsar says that Orgetorix was required to plead his cause **ex vinculis**, for which our translation must be *in chains*; though this is exactly the opposite of what Cæsar says, viz. that, standing in chains, he should make his plea *from them*.

A few short passages are here appended, in order to illustrate the foregoing points, and show how to go to work.

1. Matrem<sup>a</sup> Phalaridis<sup>b</sup> scribit<sup>c</sup> Ponticus Heraclides, doctus<sup>d</sup> vir, auditor et discipulus Platonis, visam esse<sup>e</sup> videre in somnis<sup>f</sup> simulacra<sup>g</sup> deorum, quae<sup>h</sup> ipsa domi consecravisset;<sup>i</sup> ex iis<sup>k</sup> Mercurium<sup>l</sup> e patera,<sup>m</sup> quam dextera manu teneret, sanguinem visum esse fundere,<sup>n</sup> qui cum terram attigisset,<sup>o</sup> refervescere<sup>p</sup> videretur, sic ut tota domus sanguine redundaret.<sup>q</sup> Quod matris somnium<sup>r</sup> immanis<sup>s</sup> filii crudelitas comprobavit. — *De Divinatione*, i. 23.

a. Notice that the first word is an accusative, **mātre**m. This must probably be either the object of a verb, or the subject of an infinitive : it can remain in suspense till the verb appears. Its meaning, *mother*, naturally suggests a genitive : This we find in

b. **Phalaridis**, which has the genitive ending of the third declension ; its nominative must be *Phalaris*, obviously a proper name. We may learn elsewhere that it is that of a Sicilian tyrant.

c. The verb **scribit**, *writes*, from its meaning naturally suggests an object-clause, accusative with infinitive. Such clauses are often best rendered by direct discourse in English. Thus we may translate as if **mātre**m were nominative : *the mother of Phalaris, writes Ponticus Heraclides* (obviously a proper name, and subject of **scribit**).

d. The next words, being nominative, are probably in apposition with the name : **doctus** (participle of **doceo**) is *taught*, but as an adjective must be *learned* ; **auditor** (noun of agency from **audio**) is *hearer* ; **discipulus** (connected with **disco**) is clearly the same as our *disciple* ; **Platonis** (as *Phalaridis*, above) explains itself.

e. As we have been expecting an infinitive for an object-clause, **visam esse** (having its participle in the feminine) is the natural verb for **mātre**m ; and as we have learned that the passive of **video** means *seem*, we may translate (in direct discourse, as above) with **vidēre**, *seemed to see*.

f. In the phrase **in somnīs**, the noun is probably ablative, since the connection requires *in* rather than *into* ; and comes from **somnus**, or **-a**, or **-um**. Some English derivative will probably suggest the meaning *sleep* ; and the plural form, though odd, will give no trouble.

g. The next is a new word, but may be analyzed. The termination **-crum**, denoting *means*, is appended to a verb-stem **simula-** : hence the verb is **simulo**, **āre**, suggesting the English verb *simulate* or perhaps the adjective *similar*. Its meaning will be *something to represent* ; and we may render the phrase **simulācra deorum**, *images of the gods*.

h. The relative **quae** naturally refers to a noun just preceding : this cannot be **deōrum**, which is masculine, and must be **simulācra** ; **ipsa** might agree with **quae**, but will be more easily taken with the verb next following.

i. This verb, **consecravisset**, at once suggests the English *consecrate*. It is evidently a compound with **con** ; and if we remember the common change of vowel in compound verbs, and connect its meaning with **sacer**, *sacred* (already given), this mean-

ing will be confirmed. The subjunctive form (see above, 37) does not affect the translation, which is by the simple indicative, because our idiom does not require any other mood.

k. The ablative **iis** will refer to the last or most important *plural noun*, either **deorum** or **simulacra**, it will not matter which. The phrase may be rendered *one of these*.

l. **Mercurium** may be assumed to continue the same construction as **matrem**, and will take the infinitive **vīsum esse**, below.

m. **Patera** may be left as not important for the meaning of the whole: we may, for the present, call it "*something*" which he held in his right hand (the relative clause here explaining itself): in fact, *a shallow bowl*.

n. The infinitive **fundere** must be guessed at from the context or given by the teacher, unless its meaning is known, *to pour*.

o. The verb **attigisset**, as a glance shows, contains the root **TAG** found in **tango**, *touch*; the subjunctive is required by **cum**, and does not affect the translation; its subject is **qui**, referring to the masculine **sanguinem**. But as two relatives cannot come together in English, we translate, *and when this had touched the ground*.

p. The verb **refervescere** should be seen to be derivative, and compounded from **ferveo**, which associates it with *fervent, fervid*; and its meaning, *to boil up*, is seen from our word *effervescent*.

q. The meaning of **redundaret** (*overflowed*) may perhaps require to be given, though a tolerably close idea may be gained by conjecture. Following **ut**, it is subjunctive expressing a result.

r. The phrase **quod somnium** may be either nominative or accusative; but, as the verb is directly preceded by the nominative **crudelitas**, these words must be accusative, and the object of **comprobāvit**. The meaning of **somnium** (*dream*), if not known, may be easily inferred from **somnus**, above.

s. The adjective **immanis** may be either genitive with **fili** or nominative with **crudelitas**: consider which needs an epithet. Its meaning (*monstrous*) will require to be given, as also that of **comprobavit** (*proved*), which should, however, be explained through the adjective **probus**, and kindred English words.

The above analysis is given in much greater detail than will often be required in practice. When the habit has once been formed, it is followed rapidly and almost unconsciously; in fact, it is impossible, when once the mind has been trained to it, to read a single sentence without deriving help from it. In succeeding passages, only a few hints will be given.

2. Hoc item in Sileni *Graeca historia* est: Hannibalem, cum cepisset Saguntum, visum esse in somnis a Jove in deorum concilium vocari; quo cum venisset, Jovem imperavisse ut Italiae bellum inferret; ducemque ei unum e concilio datum, quo illum utentem cum exercitu progredi coepisse. Tum ei ducem illum praecepisse ne respiceret; illum autem id diutius facere non potuisse, elatumque cupiditate respexisse. Tum visam beluam vastam et immanem, circumplicatam serpentibus, quacumque incederet omnia arbusta, virgulta, tesca pervertere; et eum admiratum quaesisse de deo, quodnam illud esset tale monstrum. Et deum respondisse *Vastitatem esse Italiae*, praecepisseque ut pergeret protinus: quid retro atque a tergo fieret ne laboraret. — *id.* i. 24.

This passage may be somewhat harder than the foregoing, but a little attention will show that it is in the same general construction, — “*Hannibalem . . . visum esse*” like “*matrem . . . visam esse*,” — and that it contains several of the words and phrases already explained. It will greatly simplify the rendering of a passage like this, to drop the form of indirect discourse, beginning with the leading subject: *Hannibal, having taken Saguntum, seemed in his sleep to be summoned, &c.*: all the infinitives being translated by indicatives, and the subjunctive *laboraret* as an infinitive, *not to trouble himself*. A number of words must of course be suggested.

3. L. Paulus, consul iterum, cum ei bellum<sup>a</sup> ut cum rege Perse gereret obtigisset, ut<sup>b</sup> ea ipsa die domum ad vesperum rediit,<sup>b</sup> filiolarum<sup>c</sup> suarum Tertiam, quae tum erat admodum parva, osculans animum advertit<sup>c</sup> tristiculam. ‘Quid est,’ inquit, ‘mea Tertia? quid tristis es?’ ‘Mi pater,’ inquit, ‘Persa periit.’ Tum ille artius puellam complexus, ‘Accipio,’ inquit, ‘mea filia, omen.’ Erat autem mortuus catellus eo nomine. — *id.* i. 46.

a. In this passage, — as we find it hard, with our habit of speech, to carry so many words in the mind undisposed of, — it may be

necessary after **bellum** to look for the verb to which it belongs. As **ut** is a relative word, the nearest verb will belong to that; so that we must take the next following, **obtigisset**, the meaning of which must be given (in connection with the root **TAG**); the object of **gereret** must be supplied from **bellum**; and it will read, *when the war had fallen to his lot to wage with king Perses*. This is not a good translation; but, having seen the Latin idea in this way, you can easily find a corresponding English expression: *It had fallen, &c.*

*b.* To translate **ut**, notice at once *the mood of its verb*; because the two uses of **ut** have meanings very far apart in English, though the Romans did not probably feel the difference. As the verb is here indicative, **ut** means *as* or *when*: **rediit** (**red**, *back*; **eo**, *go*) signifies *returned*.

*c.* The word **filiolam**, diminutive of **fília**, explains itself; while **animum advertit**, *turned his mind*, is to be rendered as a single transitive verb, *observed*; and its subject is **L. Paulus**.

4. Scipio Nasica cum ad poetam Ennium venisset, eique ab ostio quaerenti<sup>a</sup> Ennium ancilla dixisset domi non esse;<sup>b</sup> Nasica sensit, illam domini jussu dixisse et illum intus esse. Paucis post diebus, cum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius, et cum a janua quaereret, exclamat Nasica, se domi non esse. Tum Ennius, ‘Quid,’ inquit, ‘ego non cognosco vocem tuam?’ Hic Nasica, ‘Homo es impudens; ego cum quaererem, ancillae tuae credidi, te<sup>c</sup> domi non esse; tu mihi non credis ipsi.’

*a.* To him inquiring, &c. can only mean *when he inquired for Ennius*.

*b.* The subject of the infinitive is here wanting, a rare usage in Latin; but it is obviously *Ennius*, to be supplied from the preceding.

*c.* The clause **te domi non esse** is evidently a secondary object of **credidi**; but, as *believe* does not take two objects in English, some word like *saying* must be supplied.



## PART FOURTH.

## READING LESSONS.

NOTE. — The small figures in the following Lessons refer to the Brief Rules of Syntax, pp. 162, 163.

## I. FABLES.

1. *The Wolf and the Goat.*

*Lupus* capram<sup>21</sup> conspicatus est, quae in rupe pascebatur. Cum ad eam accedere non posset,<sup>44</sup> praedicabat apud se mollia prata ac varias herbas esse,<sup>39</sup> et eam hortabatur ut de rupe descenderet. Ei autem capra respondit: "Mi amice, non me ad pascua vocas, sed ipse cibi<sup>12</sup> indiges!"

2. *The Fox and the Grapes.*

Vulpes, extrema fame<sup>26</sup> coacta, uvam adpetebat, quae ex alta vite dependebat; sed summis viribus saliens eam attingere<sup>38</sup> non poterat. Tandem discessit, et, "Nondum matura est," inquit; "nolo acerbam sumere." — Sic saepe homines, quae facere non possunt, verbis elevant.

3. *The Farmer and his Dog.*

Rusticus in agros exiit ad opus suum. Filiolum, qui in cunis jacebat, reliquit cani<sup>17</sup> fideli atque valido custodiendum. Adrepsit anguis immanis, qui puerulum exstincturus erat. Sed custos fidelis corripit eum dentibus<sup>26</sup> acutis, et, dum eum necare studet, cunas simul evertit super exstinctum anguem. Paulo<sup>33</sup> post ex arvo rediit agricola; cum cunas eversas cruentumque canis rictum videret, irā accenditur. Temere igitur custodem filioli interficit ligone, quem manibus tenebat. Sed ubi cunas restituit, super anguem occisum reperit puerum vivum et incolumem. — Paenitentia facinoris temere patrati tum sera fuit.

4. *The Farmer and his Sons.*

Inter filios rustici cujusdam grave discidium ortum erat. Diu frustra operam impenderat pater, hortans ut pacem atque concordiam colerent.<sup>44</sup> Tandem filiis<sup>14</sup> "Virgulas," inquit, "mihi adferte decem, et considite." Tum omnes virgulas in unum fasciculum conligavit, eumque constrictum singulis filiis obtulit, hortans ut frangerent. Illi autem, quamquam vim omnem adhibebant, frustra laborarunt, nec quicquam profererunt. Tum pater nodum discidit, et illis singulas virgulas dedit, quas sine ullo labore confregerunt. Quo facto,<sup>35</sup> rusticus filios ita adlocutus est: "Haec res vobis exemplo<sup>20</sup> sit. Tuti eritis ab inimicorum injuriis, quamdiu concordēs eritis; at simul ac facta erit dissensio atque discordia, inimici securi in vos inrumpent."

5. *The Boy that cried "Wolf."*

Puer in prato oves pascebat, atque per jocum clamitabat, ut sibi auxilium ferretur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricolae undique succurrebant, neque lupum inveniebant. Ita ter quaterque se elusos a puero viderunt. Deinde cum ipse lupus aggrediretur, et puer re vera imploraret auxilium, nemo gregis<sup>18</sup> subvenit, et oves lupi praeda sunt factae. — Mendaci homini non credimus, etiam cum vera dicit.

6. *The Fox and Crow.*

Corvus, cum frustum carnis rapuisset, in arbore quadam consedit. Quo conspecto,<sup>35</sup> vulpes, carnem cupiens, accurrit, eumque callidis verbis adoritur: "O corve," inquit, "quam pulcra es avis, quam speciosa! Te decebat esse avium regem. Sane omnes aves regiis virtutibus antecederes,<sup>46</sup> si vocem haberes."<sup>46</sup> His laudibus corvus inflatus, ne mutus haberetur,<sup>44</sup> clamorem edidit; sed simul, aperto rostro, carnem amisit; eam vulpes statim rapuit, atque inridens, "Heus," inquit, "corve! Nihil tibi<sup>17</sup> deest praeter mentem."

7. *The trained Monkeys.*

Simiae purpuratae instituebantur ad saltationem. Cujus<sup>12</sup> cum peritae viderentur esse, productae sunt in scenam. Cum

autem saltarent, objecit quidam nuces ; quibus visis, omnibus rebus posthabitis et neglectis,<sup>35</sup> ad nuces discurrerunt, et de eis inter se luctari atque depugnare coeperunt.

#### 8. *The Ant and the Dove.*

Formica sitiens descenderat ad fontem ; sed undae eam abriperunt, nec multum aberat, quin misere periret.<sup>44</sup> Cum autem columba sortem ejus videret, misericordiā tacta ramulum in aquam iniecit. Hunc adsecuta est formica, in eoque natans effugit mortem. Paulo<sup>33</sup> post venator, arcu instructus, illuc venit, columbamque telo<sup>26</sup> suo transfixurus fuit. Periculum sentit formica ; et, ut piae columbae opem ferret, accurrit, atque venatoris talum momordit. Dolore impeditus ille telum non recte misit, et columba incolumis avolavit.—Juva et juvabere ; raro beneficium perit.

#### 9. *The Lion and his Troops.*

Leo bellum meditans lustrat aciem suam in ordines divisam. Cum ursus etiam asinum et leporem inter milites videret, hiantem ore ridens : “ Piger hic asinus,” inquit, “ galeam et gladium gerat<sup>43</sup> ? belli artes discat ? Molae<sup>15</sup> aptior est quam castris. Ecquid autem firmus stabit lepus ? proeliabitur ? ” “ Erras, urse,” inquit leo ; “ asinus portabit onera, machinas, saxa ; et, ubi opus erit, eum tubicinem faciam, qui suo rugitu commilitones in pugnam ciebit ; lepus autem ob pedum pernecitatem celeris tabellarii officio<sup>31</sup> fungetur.”

#### 10. *The Nightingale and Cuckoo.*

Luscinia verno quodam die<sup>34</sup> dulcissime canere coepit. Pueri aliquot haud procul aberant in valle ludentes. Ii, cum lusui<sup>18</sup> essent intenti, lusciniae cantu nihil movebantur. Paulo post cuculus coepit cuculare. Continuo pueri, lusu neglecto,<sup>35</sup> ei adclamant, vocemque<sup>21</sup> cuculi identidem imitantur. “ Audisne, luscinia,” inquit cuculus, “ quanto plausu me isti excipiant,<sup>45</sup> et quantopere cantu meo delectentur ? ” Luscinia, quae cum eo altercari nolebat, nihil impendebat quominus ille suam vocem admiraretur.<sup>44</sup> Interea pastor fistulā canens cum puella lento gradu<sup>26</sup> praeterit. Cuculus iterum vociferatur, novas laudes

captans. At puella pastorem adlocuta: "Male sit,"<sup>48</sup> inquit, huic cuculo,<sup>44</sup> qui cantui<sup>18</sup> tuo odiosam vocem intermiscet."

Quo audito,<sup>35</sup> cum cuculus, in pudorem conjectus, conticisset, lusciniā tam suaviter canere coepit, ut se ipsam superare velle videretur.<sup>44</sup> Pastor, fistulā depositā: "Consideramus,"<sup>48</sup> inquit, "hoc loco sub arbore, et lusciniā audiamus!" Tum pastor et puella cantum lusciniā certatim laudare coeperunt, et diu taciti intentis auribus<sup>35</sup> sedent. Ad postremum adeo capta est puella sonorum dulcedine, ut etiam lacrimae erumperent. Tum lusciniā ad cuculum conversa: "Videsne," inquit, "quantum ab imperitorum opinionibus prudentiorum iudicia distent?"<sup>45</sup> Una sane ex istis lacrimis, quanquam muta est, locupletior tamen est artis meae testis quam inconditus iste puerorum clamor, quem tantopere jactabas." — Fabula docet magnorum artificum opera<sup>39</sup> non vulgi opinione, sed prudentiorum existimatione esse<sup>39</sup> censenda.

## II. DIALOGUES.

### I. Study and Play.

*Carolus.* Veni, mi Ludovice!

*Ernestus.* Quo tandem?

*C.* In hortum; satis jam legimus et scripsimus; ludamus<sup>48</sup> quoque!

*E.* Ego pensum meum ante absolvam.

*C.* Nondumne absolvisti?

*E.* Nondum omnia. Tunc jam omnia didicisti et scripsisti, quae praeceptor nos discere<sup>38</sup> et scribere jussit?

*C.* Non omnia.

*E.* Ergo nondum licet ludere.<sup>38</sup>

*C.* Cur non liceat?<sup>48</sup> Reliqua discam et scribam post ludum.

*E.* Sed praestat primum discere, deinde ludere.<sup>38</sup>

*C.* Quam morosum sodalem habeo!

*E.* Non sum morosus, sed facere volo, quae jussa sunt.

*C.* Ergo unā ediscamus! Ego tibi recitabo, tu mihi. Deinde cum omnia didicerimus, statim ad ludum properabimus.

*E.* Placet; nam peracti labores jucundi sunt.

2. *Early Rising.*

*Fredericus* Heus, heus, Carole! Expergiscere! Tempus est surgere. Audisne?

*C.* Non audio.

*F.* Ubi ergo habes aures?

*C.* In lecto.

*F.* Hoc video. Sed quid facis adhuc in lecto?

*C.* Quid faciam? Dormio.

*F.* Dormis? et loqueris tamen mecum?

*C.* Saltem volo dormire.

*F.* Nunc autem non est tempus dormiendi,<sup>41</sup> sed surgendi.

*C.* Quota est hora?

*F.* Septima.

*C.* Quando tu surrexisti e lecto?

*F.* Jam ante duas horas.

*C.* Num sorores meae jam surrexerunt?

*F.* Jam pridem.

*C.* Sed frater meus certe adhuc jacet in lecto?

*F.* Erras. Cum expergefacerem eum, statim reliquit nidum suum.

*C.* Mox igitur surgam.

3. *An Afternoon Walk.*

*Fredericus.* Age, mi frater, ambulemus;<sup>43</sup> tempestas serena est.

*Augustus.* Placet; sed ubi ambulabimus? In pratisne?

*F.* Minime; prata enim pluvia inundavit, et viae lutulentae sunt. Placetne adscendere in montem, quem e fenestra prospicimus?

*A.* Placet; jam pridem enim in monte non fuimus.

*F.* Hiems nos prohibuit; hieme<sup>34</sup> enim mons glacie et nive tectus erat. Quid stas autem?

*A.* Duae viae ducunt ad montem: altera recta, altera flexuosa. Utram eligamus?<sup>43</sup>

*F.* Flexuosam censeo; est enim umbrosior, et sol fervet. Descendentes alterā ibimus et ambulationem variabimus. Vesperi enim sol minus fervet.

*A.* Proinde eamus!

## 4. Sport.

*Paullus.* Trahit sua quemque voluptas ; mihi<sup>16</sup> placet venatio.

*Thomas.* Placet etiam mihi ; sed ubi canes, ubi venabula, ubi casses ?

*P.* Valeant apri, ursi, cervi, vulpes ! nos insidiabimur cuniculis.<sup>18</sup>

*Vicentius.* At ego laqueos injiciam locustis.<sup>18</sup>

*Laurentius.* Ego ranas captabo.

*Bartholus.* Ego papiliones venabor.

*L.* Difficile est sectari<sup>33</sup> volantia.

*B.* Difficile, sed pulcrum, nisi pulcrius esse ducis sectari lumbricos aut cochleas, quia carent alis.<sup>28</sup>

*L.* Equidem m̃alo insidiari piscibus ; est mihi<sup>17</sup> hamus elegans.

*B.* Sed unde parabis escam ?

*L.* Lumbricorum ubivis magna est copia.

*B.* Est, si tibi velint prorere e terra.

*L.* At ego mox efficiam, ut multa milia prosiliant.

*B.* Quo pacto ? incantamentis ?<sup>26</sup>

*L.* Videbis artem. Imple hanc situlam aquā.<sup>28</sup> Hos juglandium summos cortices virentes confractos immittito. Hac aqua perfunde solum. Nunc observa paulisper. Vides emergentes ?

*B.* Rem prodigiosam video. Sic olim, opinor, exsiliabant armati viri ex satis serpentis dentibus. Sed plerique pisces delicatioris et elegantioris sunt palati,<sup>9</sup> quam ut escā tam vulgari capiantur (*too dainty to be caught*).

*L.* Nōvi quoddam insecti genus, quo talibus insidiari soleo.

*B.* Tu vide, possisne<sup>45</sup> imponere piscibus ; ego ranis<sup>14</sup> facessam negotium.

*L.* Quomodo ? reti ?<sup>26</sup>

*B.* Non ; sed arcu.

*L.* Novum piscandi genus.

*B.* At non injucundum. Videbis et fatebere.

*V.* Quid, si certemus<sup>46</sup> nucibus ?

*P.* Nuces pueris relinquamus ; nos grandiores sumus.

*V.* Et tamen nihil aliud adhuc quam pueri sumus.

*P.* Sed quibus<sup>15</sup> decorum est ludere nucibus, eisdem non indecorum est equitare<sup>38</sup> in arundine longa.

*V.* Tu igitur praescribito lusū genus ; sequar, quocumque vocaveris.

*P.* Et ego futurus sum omnium horarum homo.

### 5. A Lesson in Manners.

*Paedagogus.* Tu mihi videris non in aula natus, sed in caula ; adeo moribus<sup>26</sup> es agrestibus. Puerum ingenuum decent ingenui mores. Quoties adloquitur te quispiam, cui debes honorem, compone te in rectum corporis statum, aperi caput. Vultus sit<sup>43</sup> nec tristis nec torvus nec impudens nec protervus nec instabilis, sed hilari modestiā temperatus ; oculi verecundi, semper intenti in eum quocū loqueris ; juncti pedes, quietae manūs. Neve vacillato alternis tibiis, neve manūs agant gestūs, neve mordeto labrum, neve scabito caput, neve fodito aures. Vestis item ad decorum componatur, ut totus cultus, vultus, gestus, habitus corporis ingenuam modestiam et verecundam indolem prae se ferat.<sup>44</sup>

*Puer.* Quid, si mediter ?<sup>46</sup>

*Pae.* Fac.

*Pu.* Sicine satis ?

*Pae.* Nondum.

*Pu.* Quid, si sic ?

*Pae.* Propemodum.

*Pu.* Quid si sic ?

*Pae.* Hem satis est ; hoc tene, ne sis<sup>48</sup> inepte loquax aut praeceps. Neve vagetur animus interim, sed sis attentus, quid alter dicat. Si quid erit respondendum, id facito paucis ac prudenter, interdum praefatus honorem, nonnunquam etiam addito cognomine<sup>35</sup> honoris gratiā ; atque identidem modice flectas alterum genu, praesertim ubi responsum ab-solveris. Neve abito, nisi praefatus veniam aut ab ipso dimissus. Nunc age : specimen aliquod hujus rei nobis praebe !

Quantum temporis abfuisti a maternis aedibus?

*Pu.* Jam sex ferme menses.<sup>23</sup>

*Pae.* Addendum erat, *domine*.

*Pu.* Jam sex ferme menses, domine.

*Pae.* Non tangeris desiderio matris?

*Pu.* Nonnunquam sane.

*Pae.* Cupisne eam revisere?<sup>38</sup>

*Pu.* Cupio, domine, si id pace liceat<sup>46</sup> tua.

*Pae.* Nunc flectendum erat genu. Bene se habet. Sic pergito! Cum loqueris, cave, ne praecipites<sup>44</sup> sermonem aut haesites linguā aut palato murmures, sed distincte, clare, articulatim consuescito proferre verba tua. Si quem praeteribis natu grandem, magistratum, sacerdotem, doctorem aut omnino virum gravem, memento aperire caput. In convivio sic te praebebis hilarem, ut semper memineris, quid deceat<sup>45</sup> aetatem tuam; postremus omnium admoveto manum patīnae.<sup>18</sup> Si quid dabitur lautius, recusato modeste; si instabitur, accipe et age gratias; mox, decerptā particulā,<sup>35</sup> quod reliquum est, illi qui tibi obtulit reddito, aut alicui proxime adcumbenti. Si quis praebibet, hilariter illi bene precator, sed ipse bibito modice. Si non sitis, tamen admoveto calicem labris. Adride loquentibus; ipse cave, ne quid loquare, nisi rogatus. Ne cui obtrectato, ne cui temet anteposito, ne tua jactato, ne aliena despicio. Esto comis, etiam erga tenuis fortunae sodales. Ita fiet, ut sine invidia laudem invenias et amicos pares. Si videris convivium extrahi, precatus veniam ac salutatis convivis, subducito te a mensa. Vide, ut horum memineris.

*Pu.* Dabitur opera, mi praeceptor! Numquid aliud vis?

*Pae.* Adito nunc libros tuos.

*Pu.* Fiet.

#### IV. ANECDOTES.

##### 1. *Themistocles*.

Noctu ambulabat in publico Themistocles, quod somnum capere non posset;<sup>47</sup> quaerentibusque respondebat *Miltiadis tropaeis se e somno suscitari*.<sup>38</sup>



## 2. Socrates.

Socrates, cum esset ex eo quaesitum, Archelaum, Perdicæ filium, qui tum fortunatissimus haberetur,<sup>47</sup> nonne beatum putaret :<sup>45</sup> *Haud scio*, inquit ; *nunquam enim cum eo conlocutus sum*. — Ain tu ? aliter id scire non potes ? — *Nullo modo*. — Tu igitur ne de Persarum quidem rege magno potes dicere, beatusne sit ? — *An ego possim*,<sup>43</sup> *cum ignorem quam sit*<sup>45</sup> *doctus, quam vir bonus ?* — Quid ? tu in eo sitam vitam beatam putas ? — *Ita prorsus existimo : bonos beatos ; improbos miseros*. — Miser ergo Archelaus ? — *Certe, si injustus*.

## 3. Spartan Broth.

Lacedaemone cum tyrannus cenavisset Dionysius, negavit se jure illo nigro, quod cenæ caput erat, delectatum. Tum is, qui illa coxerat : *Minime mirum ; condimenta enim defuerunt*. Quæ tandem ? inquit ille. *Labor in venatu, sudor, cursus ad Eurotam, fames, sitis ; his enim rebus Lacedaemoniorum epulæ condiuntur*.

## 4. Respect to Age.

Cum Athenis ludis quidam in theatrum grandis natu venisset, in magno consessu locus ei a suis civibus nusquam est datus. Cum autem ad Lacedaemonios accessisset, qui legati cum essent, certo in loco consederant, consurrexerunt omnes et senem illum sessum<sup>42</sup> receperunt. Quibus cum a cuncto consessu plausus esset multiplex datus, dixit ex eis quidam : *Athenienses sciunt, quæ recta sunt ; sed facere nolunt*.

## 5. Fabius.

Cum, Tarento amisso,<sup>35</sup> arcem tamen Livius Salinator tenuisset, multaque ex eâ proelia praeclara fecisset, cum aliquot post annos Maximus id oppidum recepisset, rogaretque eum Salinator, ut meminisset operâ suâ<sup>26</sup> se Tarentum recepisse : *Quidni*, inquit, *meminerim ?* <sup>43</sup> *nunquam enim recepissem*<sup>46</sup> *nisi tu perdidisses*.

## 6. Nasica and Ennius.

Nasica cum ad poëtam Ennium venisset, eique ab ostio quaerenti Ennium ancilla dixisset domi non esse ; Nasica

sensit illam domini jussu dixisse, et illum intus esse. Paucis post diebus, cum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius et eum a janua quaereret, exclamat Nasica se domi non esse. Tum Ennius: "Quid? ego non cognosco vocem," inquit, "tuam?" Hic Nasica: *Homo* (inquit) *es impudens. Ego cum te quaererem, ancillae tuae*<sup>16</sup> *credidi te domi non esse; tu mihi non credis ipsi?*

#### IV. THE KINGS OF ROME.

1. Romanum imperium a ROMULO exordium habet, qui, Rheae Silviae, Vestalis virginis, et Martis filius, cum Remo, fratre gemino, urbem condidit, quam ex nomine suo Romam vocavit (753 a. Chr.). Asylo aperto ad numerum civium augendum, ingens hominum multitudo ex finitimis civitatibus Romam<sup>36</sup> confluit. At viri non habebant feminas. Itaque Romulus ludos sollennes instituit, invitavitque ad eorum spectaculum vicinas urbis Romae nationes. Cum alii multi convenerunt, tum Sabinorum omnis multitudo cum liberis et conjugibus. Dum ludi eduntur, extemplo Romani discurrunt, magnamque virginum partem rapiunt.

2. Propter raptarum mulierum injuriam Sabini Romanis<sup>18</sup> bellum intulerunt. Res venit ad pugnam. Utrumque acerrime decertatur. In media acie repente raptae mulieres crinibus passis scissaque veste ausae sunt se inter tela volantia inferre, et precibus infestas acies dirimere. Rebus compositis, Romulus centum ex senioribus legit, quorum consilio omnia ageret, quos *senatores* nominavit propter senectutem. Anno<sup>34</sup> regni tricesimo septimo, cum orta subito tempestate non comparuisset, ad deos transisse creditus est (716).

3. Postea NUMA POMPILIUS, Curibus, in urbe agri Sabinorum, natus, rex creatus est (715—673). Qui bellum quidem nullum gessit, sed non minus civitati quam Romulus profuit. Nam legibus moribusque et sacris plurimis constitutis<sup>35</sup> populi barbari et bellicosi mores mollivit. Etiam annum descripsit in decem menses. Omnia autem, quae faciebat, se nymphae Egeriae jussu facere dictitabat. Regnavit tres et quadraginta annos.<sup>23</sup> — Huic<sup>18</sup> successit TULLUS HOSTILIUS (673—640).

Is bella reparavit. Bellum Albanis inlatum certamine trigeminorum fratrum, qui forte in utroque exercitu erant nec aetate nec viribus dispares, finitum est. Deinde etiam Veientes et Fidenates bello superavit. Cum xxx annos regnasset, fulmine ictus cum domo sua arsit.

4. Post eum ANCUS MARTIUS, Numae ex filia nepos, suscepit imperium (640—616). Contra Latinos dimicavit, apud ostium Tiberis urbem condidit, quam Ostiam vocavit. Vicesimo quarto anno imperii morbo periit.—Deinde regnum TARQUINIUS PRISCUS accepit (616—578). Is numerum senatorum duplicavit; Circum Romae aedificavit; ludos Romanos instituit. Vicit idem etiam Sabinos, nec parum agrorum, eis ademptorum, urbis Romae territorio adjunxit. Muros fecit et cloācas; Capitolium inchoavit. Tricesimo octavo imperii anno per Anci filios occisus est, regis<sup>1</sup> ejus, cui<sup>4</sup> ipse successerat.—Post eum SERVIUS TULLIUS suscepit imperium (578—534). Primus omnium<sup>10</sup> censum ordinavit. Sub eo Roma habuit capitum LXXXIII milia civium, cum eis qui in agris erant. Occisus est xlv imperii anno scelere generi sui Tarquinii, filii<sup>1</sup> ejus regis cui<sup>18</sup> ipse successerat, et filiae,<sup>9</sup> quam Tarquinius habebat uxorem.

5. Hic TARQUINIUS, qui propter superbiam *Superbi* cognomen accepit, septimus fuit atque ultimus regum<sup>10</sup> (534—509). Multas gentes devicit; templum Jovi<sup>14</sup> in Capitolio aedificavit. Postea Ardeam, urbem Etruriae, oppugnans imperium perdidit. Nam cum filius ejus nobilissimae feminae, Lucretiae,<sup>14</sup> eidemque pudicissimae, vim fecisset, ea, de injuria marito<sup>14</sup> et patri et amicis quæstæ, in omnium conspectu se occidit, postquam eos obtestata est, ut eam injuriam ulciscerentur.<sup>44</sup> Propter quam causam Marcus Brutus, Tarquinius Collatinus alique in exitium regis conjuraverunt, et, populo concitato, ei<sup>19</sup> imperium ademerunt. Cum uxore et liberis suis fugit, cum xxv annos regnasset. Ita Romae<sup>36</sup> regnatum est per septem reges annos<sup>23</sup> CCXLIV.

6. Hinc consules coepti sunt pro uno rege duo hac causa creari, ut, si unus malus esse voluisset, alter eum, habens eandem potestatem, coërceret. Et placuit, ut ne imperium longius quam annum haberent, ne per diuturnitatem potes-

tatis insolentiores fierent, sed aequitatem semper servarent, qui se post annum scirent<sup>47</sup> futuros esse privatos. Fuerunt igitur anno primo, expulsis regibus, consules L. Junius Brutus, qui maxime egerat ut Tarquinius pelleretur, et Tarquinius Collatinus, maritus Lucretiae. Sed Tarquinio Collatino<sup>19</sup> statim sublata dignitas est. Placuerat enim, ne quisquam in urbe maneret, qui Tarquinius vocaretur.<sup>47</sup> In ejus locum factus est Valerius Publicola consul.

7. Commovit tamen bellum urbi<sup>14</sup> Romae rex Tarquinius, qui erat expulsus, et, collectis multis gentibus, ut in regnum posset restitui, dimicavit. In prima pugna Brutus consul et Ancus, Tarquinii filius, alter alterum occiderunt. Romani tamen ex ea pugna victores discesserunt. Brutum Romanae matronae, defensorem pudicitiae suae, quasi communem patrem, per annum luxerunt. Valerius Publicola Spurium Lucretium, Lucretiae patrem, collegam sibi fecit: quo<sup>35</sup> morbo<sup>26</sup> mortuo, iterum Horatium Pulvillum collegam sibi sumpsit. Ita primus annus quinque consules habuit.

8. Etiam secundo anno iterum Tarquinius, ut reciperetur in regnum, bellum Romanis<sup>18</sup> intulit, auxilium ei ferente Porsenā, Etruscorum rege.<sup>1</sup> Is, ne Tiberim transiret, virtute Horatii Coclitis prohibitus est, qui, dum alii pontem rescindunt, unus Etruscos sustinuit, et, ponte rupto, armatus se in flumen misit, et ad suos transnavit. Cum Porsena urbem obsideret, Gaius Mucius Scaevola, adulescens nobilis, in castra hostium se contulit, ut Porsenam regem occideret. At pro rege scribam obtruncat, qui propter eum sedebat pari fere ornatu indutus.<sup>2</sup> Tum a regiis satellitibus comprehensus ante tribunal regis constitutus est. Qui<sup>7</sup> cum tormenta minitaretur, Mucius dextrā accenso ad sacrificium foculo injectā: “En tibi,” inquit, “quam vile corpus sit<sup>45</sup> eis qui magnam gloriam vident!” Qua animi virtute percussus rex juvenem intactum inviolatumque dimisit. Tum Mucius, quasi remunerans beneficium, trecentos principes juventutis Romanae in ejus vitam conjurasse ait. Qua re territus Porsena pacem fecit. Tarquinius autem Tusculum<sup>36</sup> abiit, ibique cum Romanis privatus cum uxore consenuit.

V. THE WAR WITH PORSENA. — *Livy.*1. *Horatius holds the Bridge.*

1. Jam Tarquinius ad Lartem Porsenam, Clusinum regem, perfugerant. Porsena Romam<sup>36</sup> infesto exercitu venit. Non unquam alias ante tantus terror senatum invasit: adeo valida res tum Clusina<sup>3</sup> erat, magnumque Porsenae nomen. Nec hostes<sup>21</sup> modo timebant, sed suosmet ipsi cives, ne Romana plebs, metu perculsa, receptis in urbem regibus, vel cum servitute pacem acciperet. Multa igitur blandimenta plebi per id tempus ab senatu data. Haec indulgentia Patrum adeo concordem civitatem tenuit, ut regium<sup>3</sup> nomen<sup>21</sup> non summi magis, quam infimi, horrerent; nec quisquam unus malis artibus postea tam popularis esset, quam tum bene imperando<sup>41</sup> universus senatus fuit.

2. Cum hostes adessent,<sup>44</sup> pro se quisque in urbem ex agris demigrant:<sup>6</sup> urbem ipsam sepiunt praesidiis. Alia muris, alia Tiberi objecto videbantur tuta. Pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit: ni unus vir fuisset,<sup>46</sup> Horatius Cocles: qui, positus forte in statione pontis, cum captum repentino impetu Janiculum, atque inde citatos decurrere<sup>39</sup> hostes vidisset, trepidamque turbam suorum arma ordinesque relinquere, reprehensans singulos, obsistens, obtestansque deum<sup>9</sup> et hominum fidem, testabatur: *nequicquam deserto praesidio eos fugere. Si transitum pontem a tergo reliquissent, jam plus hostium in Palatio Capitolioque, quam in Janiculo, fore. Itaque monere, praedicere, ut pontem ferro, igni, quacumque vi possent, interrumpant. Se impetum hostium, quantum corpore uno posset obsisti, excepturum.*<sup>39</sup> Vadit inde in primum aditum pontis; insignisque inter conspecta cedentium pugnae terga, ipso miraculo<sup>26</sup> audaciae obstupescit hostes.

3. Duos tamen cum eo pudor tenuit, Sp. Lartium ac T. Herminium, ambos claros genere<sup>26</sup> factisque. Cum his primam periculi procellam, et quod tumultuosissimum pugnae<sup>10</sup> erat, parumper sustinuit; deinde eos quoque ipsos, exigua parte pontis relictis,<sup>35</sup> cedere in tutum coëgit. Circumferens

inde truces minaciter oculos ad procures Etruscorum, nunc singulos provocare,<sup>40</sup> nunc increpare omnes: *Servitia regum superborum, suae libertatis*<sup>12</sup> *immemores, alienam oppugnatum*<sup>42</sup> *venire*. Cunctati aliquamdiu sunt, dum alius alium, ut proelium incipiant, circumspectant: pudor deinde commovit aciem, et, clamore sublato, undique in unum hostem tela conjiciunt.

4. Quae cum in objecto cuncta scuto haesissent, neque ille minus obstinatus ingenti pontem obtineret gradu, jam impetu conabantur detrudere<sup>38</sup> virum; cum simul fragor rupti pontis, simul clamor Romanorum, alacritate perfecti operis sublatus, pavore subito impetum sustinuit. Tum Cocles, *Tiberine pater*, inquit, *te sancte precor, haec arma et hunc militem propitio flumine accipias*.<sup>43</sup> Ita sic armatus in Tiberim desiluit; multisque superincidentibus telis, incolumis ad suos natavit. Grata erga tantam virtutem civitas fuit: statua<sup>7</sup> in comitio posita, agri<sup>10</sup> quantum uno die<sup>34</sup> circumaravit, datum. Privata quoque inter publicos honores studia eminebant: nam in magna inopia pro domesticis copiis unusquisque ei aliquid, fraudans se ipse victu<sup>28</sup> suo, contulit.

## 2. The Deed of Mucius Scaevola.

1. Obsidio erat nihilo<sup>38</sup> minus, et frumenti cum summa caritate inopia; sedendoque expugnaturum<sup>39</sup> se urbem spem Porsena habebat: cum C. Mucius, adolescens nobilis, primo sua sponte penetrare<sup>38</sup> in hostium castra constituit: dein, metuens ne, si consulum injussu et ignaris omnibus iret,<sup>47</sup> forte deprehensus a custodibus Romanis retraheretur<sup>44</sup> ut transfuga,<sup>1</sup> senatum adiit: *Transire Tiberim*, inquit, *Patres, et intrare, si possim*,<sup>46</sup> *castra hostium volo; non praedo, nec populationum in vicem ultor: majus, si dii juvant, in animo est facinus*. Approbant Patres: abdito intra vestem ferro, proficiscitur.

2. Ubi eo venit, in confertissima turba prope regium tribunal constitit. Ibi cum stipendium forte militibus daretur,<sup>44</sup> et scriba, cum rege sedens pari fere ornatu, multa ageret, eum

milites vulgo adirent, timens sciscitari uter Porsena esset,<sup>45</sup> ne ignorando regem semet ipse aperiret quis esset,<sup>45</sup> scribam pro rege obtruncat. Vadentem inde, qua per trepidam turbam cruento mucrone<sup>26</sup> sibi ipse fecerat viam, cum, concursu ad clamorem facto, comprehensum regii<sup>3</sup> satellites retraxissent, ante tribunal regis destitutus, tum quoque, inter tantas fortunae minas, metuendus magis quam metuens:

3. *Romanus sum, inquit, civis: C. Mucium vocant. Hostis hostem occidere volui; nec ad mortem minus animi<sup>10</sup> est, quam fuit ad caedem. Et facere<sup>38</sup> et pati fortia, Romanum est. Nec unus in te ego hos animos gessi: longus post me ordo est idem petentium decus. Proinde in hoc discrimen, si juvat, accingere, ut in singulas horas capite dimices tuo; ferrum hostemque in vestibulo habeas regiae. Hoc tibi juvenus<sup>1</sup> Romana indicimus bellum. Nullam aciem, nullum proelium timueris. Unì tibi,<sup>17</sup> et cum singulis, res erit.*

4. Cum rex, simul ira infensus, periculoque conterritus, circumdari ignes minitabundus juberet, nisi expromeret<sup>47</sup> prope quas insidiarum sibi minas per ambages jaceret:<sup>47</sup> *En tibi, inquit, ut sentias quam vile corpus sit iis qui magnam gloriam vident: dextramque accenso ad sacrificium foculo<sup>18</sup> injicit. Prope attonitus miraculo rex, cum ab sede sua prosiluisset, amoverique ab altaribus juvenem<sup>22</sup> jussisset,<sup>44</sup> Tu vero abi, inquit, in te magis, quam in me, hostilia ausus. Fuberem macte virtute esse, si pro mea patria ista virtus staret.<sup>46</sup> Nunc jure<sup>28</sup> belli liberum te, intactum inviolatumque hinc dimitto.*

5. Tum Mucius, quasi remunerans meritum, *Quandoquidem, inquit, est apud te virtuti<sup>17</sup> honos, ut beneficio tuleris a me, quod minis nequisti; trecenti conjuravimus principes<sup>1</sup> juventutis Romanae, ut in te hac via grassaremur. Mea prima sors fuit; ceteri, ut cuique ceciderit primo, quoad te opportunum fortuna dederit, suo quisque tempore,<sup>34</sup> aderunt. Mucium<sup>21</sup> dimissum, cui<sup>18</sup> postea Scaevolae a clade dextrae manus cognomen inditum, legati a Porsena Romam secuti sunt. Composita pace, exercitum ab Janiculo deduxit Porsena, et agro Romano excessit. Patres C. Mucio virtutis causa trans Tiberim agrum dono<sup>20</sup> dedere, quae postea sunt *Mucia*<sup>3</sup> *Prata* appellata.*

3. *The Escape of Clælia.*

1. Ergo, ita honorata virtute, feminae quoque ad publica decora excitatae. Et Cloelia virgo, una ex obsidibus, cum castra Etruscorum forte haud procul ripa<sup>28</sup> Tiberis locata essent, frustrata custodes,<sup>21</sup> dux<sup>1</sup> agminis virginum inter tela hostium Tiberim tranavit; sospitesque omnes Romam ad propinquos restituit. Quod ubi regi nuntiatum est, primo, incensus ira, oratores Romam misit ad Cloeliam obsidem deposcendam;<sup>41</sup> alias haud magni<sup>11</sup> facere:<sup>40</sup> deinde in admirationem versus, *supra Coclites Muciosque dicere id facinus esse*; et prae se ferre, *quemadmodum, si non deātur<sup>47</sup> obses, pro rupto se foedus habiturum; sic deditam, inviolatam ad suos remissurum.*

2. Utrumque constitit fides: et Romani pignus pacis ex foedere restituerunt; et apud regem Etruscum non tuta solum, sed honorata etiam, virtus fuit. Laudatam virginem parte obsidum se donare dixit: ipsa, quos vellet, legeret.<sup>43</sup> Productis omnibus, elegisse impubes dicitur: quod et virginitati decorum, et consensu obsidum ipsorum probabile erat, eam aetatem potissimum liberari ab hoste, quae maxime opportuna injuriae esset.<sup>47</sup> Pace redintegrata, Romani novam in femina virtutem novo genere honoris, statua<sup>1</sup> equestri, donavere. In summa *Sacra Via* fuit posita virgo insidens equo.<sup>18</sup>

## VI. MISCELLANEOUS SELECTIONS.

1. *A Haunted House.*

1. Erat Athenis<sup>36</sup> spatiosa et capax domus, sed infamis et pestilens: per silentium noctis sonus ferri,<sup>9</sup> et, si attenderes acrius, strepitus vinculorum, longius primo, deinde e proximo, reddebatur: mox apparebat idolon, senex<sup>1</sup> macie et squalore confectus, promissâ barbâ,<sup>26</sup> horrenti capillo: cruribus compedes, manibus catenas gerebat quatiebatque.

2. Inde inhabitantibus tristes diraeque noctes per metum vigilabantur: vigiliam morbus, et, crescente formidine, mors sequebatur. Nam interdium quoque, quamquam abscesserat imago, memoria imaginis oculis<sup>18</sup> inerrabat; longiorque causis<sup>82</sup>



timor erat. Deserta inde et damnata solitudine domus, totaque illi monstro<sup>19</sup> relictâ; proscribatur, seu quis emere, seu quis conducere, ignarus tanti mali, vellet.

3. Venit Athenas<sup>36</sup> philosophus Athenodorus: legit titulum; auditoque pretio, quia suspecta vilitas, percontatus, omnia<sup>25</sup> docetur, ac nihilo minus, immo tanto magis, conducit. Ubi coepit advesperascere, jubet sterni [lectum] sibi prima domus parte: poscit pugillares, stilum, lumen: suos omnes in interiora dimittit; ipse ad scribendum animum, oculos, manum intendit, ne vacua mens audita simulacra et inanes sibi metus fingeret.<sup>44</sup>

4. Initio, quale ubique, silentium noctis: deinde concuti<sup>40</sup> ferrum, vincula moveri. Ille non tollere oculos, non remittere stilum, sed obfirmare animum, auribusque praetendere. Tum crebrescere<sup>40</sup> fragor, adventare, et jam ut in limine, jam ut intra limen, audiri. Respicit: videt agnoscitque narratam sibi effigiem. Stabat, innuebatque digito, similis vocanti.<sup>15</sup> Hic, contra, ut paulum exspectaret manu significat: rursusque ceris<sup>18</sup> et stilo incumbit.

5. Illa scribentis capiti<sup>18</sup> catenis insonabat. Respicit rursus, idem quod prius innuentem: nec moratus, tollit lumen, et sequitur. Ibat illa lento gradu, quasi gravis vinculis. Postquam deflexit in aream domus, repente dilapsa deserit comitem; desertus herbas et folia concepta signum<sup>1</sup> loco ponit.

6. Postero die adit magistratus; monet, ut illum locum effodi jubeant. Inveniuntur ossa inserta catenis et implicita, quae corpus aevo terrâque putrefactum nuda et exesa reliquerat vinculis: collecta publice sepeliuntur: domus postea, rite conditis manibus,<sup>35</sup> caruit. — PLINY, *Epist.* vii. 27.

## 2. *A Sharper of Syracuse.*

1. C. Canius, eques Romanus, nec infacetus, et satis literatus, cum se Syracusas, otiandi (ut ipse dicere solebat) non negotiandi causa, contulisset, dictitabat se hortulos aliquos velle<sup>39</sup> emere, quo invitare amicos, et ubi se oblectare sine interpellatoribus, posset.<sup>47</sup> Quod cum percrebuisset, Pythius

ei<sup>19</sup> quidam, qui argentariam faceret Syracusis, dixit, venales quidem se hortos non habere, sed licere [eis] uti Canio, si vellet,<sup>47</sup> ut suis: et simul ad cenam hominem in hortos invitavit in posterum diem.

2. Cum ille promississet, tum Pythius (qui esset,<sup>44</sup> ut argentarius, apud omnes ordines gratosus) piscatores ad se convocavit, et ab his petivit, ut ante suos hortulos postridie piscarentur; dixitque quid eos facere vellet.<sup>45</sup> Ad cenam tempore venit Canius: opipare a Pythio apparatus convivium: cymbarum ante oculos multitudo: pro se quisque, quod ceperat, adferebat: ante pedes Pythii pisces abjiciabantur.

3. Tum Canius 'Quaeso,' inquit, 'quid est hoc, Pythi? tantumne piscium, tantumne cymbarum?' Et ille, 'Quid mirum?' inquit. 'Hoc loco est, Syracusis quicquid est piscium; haec aquatio: hac villa<sup>28</sup> isti carere non possunt.' Incensus Canius cupiditate, contendit a Pythio ut venderet. Gravate ille primo. Quid multa? impetrat: emit homo cupidus et locuples, tanti,<sup>11</sup> quanti Pythius voluit; et emit instructos: nomina facit; negotium conficit.

4. Invitat Canius postridie familiares suos. Venit ipse mature. Scalmum nullum videt. Quaerit ex proximo vicino, num feriae quaedam piscatorum essent, quod eos nullos videret.<sup>47</sup> 'Nullae, quod sciam,' inquit ille: 'sed hic piscari nulli solent: itaque heri mirabar, quid accidisset.'<sup>45</sup>

5. Stomachari Canius, sed quid faceret?<sup>43</sup> nondum enim Aquillius, collega et familiaris meus, protulerat de dolo malo formulas: in quibus ipsis cum ex eo quaereretur, *Quid esset*<sup>45</sup> *dolus malus*; respondebat, *Cum esset*<sup>47</sup> *aliud simulatum, aliud actum*. — CICERO, *De Off.* iii. 14.

### 3. The Vale of Enna.

1. Vetus est haec opinio, iudices, quae constat ex antiquissimis Graecorum literis ac monumentis, insulam Siciliam totam esse Cereri et Liberæ consecratam. Hoc cum ceterae gentes sic arbitrantur, tum ipsis Siculis ita persuasum est, ut in animis eorum insitum atque innatum esse videatur.

Nam et natas esse has in iis locis deas, et fruges in ea terra primum repertas esse arbitrantur, et raptam esse Liberam, quam eandem Proserpinam vocant, ex Hennensium nemore: qui locus, quod in media est insula situs, umbilicus Siciliae nominatur. Quam cum investigare et conquirere Ceres vellet, dicitur inflammasse taedas iis ignibus qui ex Aetnae vertice erumpunt: quas sibi cum ipsa praeferret, orbem omnem peragrasse terrarum.

2. Henna autem, ubi ea quae dico gesta esse memorantur, est loco perexcelso atque edito, quo in summo est aequata agri planities et aquae perennes, tota vero omni aditu circumcisa atque directa est: quam circa lacus lucique sunt plurimi, atque laetissimi flores omni tempore anni, locus ut ipse raptum illum virginis, quem jam a pueris accepimus, declarare videatur.

3. Etenim prope est spelunca quaedam, conversa ad aquilonem, infinitâ altitudine, qua Ditem patrem ferunt repente cum curru exstitisse, abreptamque ex eo loco virginem secum asportasse, et subito non longe a Syracusis penetrasse sub terras, lacumque in eo loco repente exstitisse: ubi usque ad hoc tempus Syracusani festos dies anniversarios agunt celeberrimo virorum mulierumque conventu.

4. Propter hujus opinionis vetustatem, quod horum in iis locis vestigia ac prope incunabula reperiuntur deorum, mira quaedam totâ Siciliâ privatim ac publice religio est Cereris Hennensis.<sup>3</sup> Etenim multa saepe prodigia vim ejus numenque declarant: multis saepe in difficillimis rebus praesens auxilium ejus oblatum est, ut haec insula ab ea non solum diligi, sed etiam incolae custodiri videatur.— *Verr.* v. 48.

#### 4. *The Earth is made for Man.*

1. Terra vero feta frugibus et vario leguminum genere, quae cum maxima largitate fundit, ea ferarumne an hominum causa gignere videtur? Quid de vitibus olivetisque dicam? quarum uberrimi laetissimique fructus nihil omnino ad bestias pertinent. Neque enim serendi neque colendi nec tempestive demetendi percipiendique fructus, neque condendi ac repo-

nendi ulla pecudum<sup>9</sup> scientia est, earumque omnium rerum hominum est et usus et cura.

2. Ut fides igitur et tibus eorum causa factas dicendum est, qui illis uti possent,<sup>48</sup> sic ea, quae diximus, iis solis<sup>14</sup> confitendum est esse parata, qui utuntur; nec si quae bestiae furantur aliquid ex iis aut rapiunt, illarum quoque causa ea nata esse dicemus. Neque enim homines murum aut formicarum causā frumentum condunt, sed conjugum et liberorum et familiarum suarum. Itaque bestiae furtim (ut dixi) fruuntur, domini palam et libere.

3. Tantumque abest ut haec bestiarum etiam causa parata sint, ut ipsas bestias hominum gratia generatas esse videamus. Quid enim oves aliud adferunt, nisi ut earum villis confectis atque contextis homines vestiantur? Quae quidem neque ali neque sustentari neque ullum fructum edere ex se sine cultu hominum et curatione potuissent.<sup>46</sup>

4. Canum vero tam fida custodia tamque amans domino- rum adulatio tantumque odium in externos et tam incredibilis ad investigandum sagacitas narium, tanta alacritas in venando quid significat aliud, nisi se ad hominum commoditates esse generatos?

5. Quid de bobus loquar? quorum ipsa terga declarant non esse se ad onus accipiendum<sup>41</sup> figurata, cervices autem natae ad jugum, tum vires humerorum et latitudines ad aratra extrahenda. Quibus,<sup>18</sup> cum terrae subigerentur fissione glaebarum, ab illo aureo genere (ut poëtae loquuntur) vis nulla umquam adferebatur.

*Ferrea tum vero proles exorta repente est,  
Ausaque funestum prima est fabricarier ense,  
Et gustare manu vinctum domitumque juvencum.*

Tanta putabatur utilitas percipi ex bobus, ut eorum visceribus vesci scelus haberetur.

6. Longum est mulorum persequi<sup>38</sup> utilitates et asinorum, quae certe ad hominum usum paratae sunt. Sus vero quid habet praeter escam? Cui<sup>19</sup> quidem, ne putresceret, animam ipsam pro sale datam dicit esse Chrysippus. Qua pecude,<sup>32</sup>

quod erat ad vescendum hominibus apta, nihil genuit natura fecundius.

7. Quid multitudinem suavitatemque piscium dicam, quid avium? ex quibus tanta percipitur voluptas, ut interdum Pronoea nostra Epicurea fuisse videatur. Atque hae ne caperentur quidem, nisi hominum ratione atque sollertia; quamquam aves quasdam et alites et oscines, ut nostri augures appellant, rerum augurandarum <sup>41</sup> causa esse natas putamus.

8. Jam vero immanes et feras beluas nanciscimur venando, ut et vescamur iis <sup>81</sup> et exerceamur in venando ad similitudinem bellicae disciplinae, et utamur domitis et condocerentur, <sup>81</sup> ut elephantis, multaque ex earum corporibus remedia morbis <sup>14</sup> et vulneribus eligamus, sicut ex quibusdam stirpibus et herbis, quarum utilitates longinqui temporis usu <sup>26</sup> et periclitatione percepimus.

9. Totam licet animis tamquam oculis lustrare terram mariaque omnia: cernes jam spatia frugifera atque immensa camporum vestitusque densissimos montium, pecudum pastus, tum incredibili cursus maritimos celeritate. Nec vero supra terram, sed etiam in intimis ejus tenebris plurimarum rerum latet utilitas, quae ad usum hominum orta ab hominibus solis invenitur. — *De Naturâ Deorum*, ii. 62-64.

##### 5. *The Heavens declare a Creator.*

1. Praeclare ergo Aristoteles: 'Si essent,' <sup>46</sup> inquit, 'qui sub terra semper habitavissent <sup>47</sup> bonis et illustribus domiciliis, quae essent <sup>47</sup> ornata signis atque picturis, instructaque rebus iis omnibus quibus abundant ii qui beati putantur, nec tamen exissent umquam supra terram, acceperunt autem fama et auditione, esse quoddam numen et vim deorum; deinde aliquo tempore, patefactis terrae faucibus, ex illis abditis sedibus evadere in haec loca, quae nos incolimus, atque exire potuissent: 2. cum repente terram et maria caelumque vidissent, nubium magnitudinem ventorumque vim cognovissent, adspexissentque solem, ejusque tum magnitudinem pulchritudinemque, tum etiam efficientiam cognovissent, quod

is diem efficeret<sup>47</sup> toto caelo luce diffusa ; cum autem terras nox opacasset,<sup>44</sup> tum caelum totum cernerent astris distinctum et ornatum, lunaeque luminum varietatem tum crescentis<sup>2</sup> tum senescentis, eorumque omnium ortus et occasus, atque in omni aeternitate ratos immutabilesque cursus ; haec cum viderent, profecto et esse<sup>39</sup> deos et haec tanta opera deorum esse arbitrarentur.' — *id.* ii. 37.

## 6. An Active Old Age.

1. Nihil necesse est mihi de me ipso dicere,<sup>38</sup> quamquam est id quidem senile, aetatique nostrae conceditur. Videtisne ut apud Homerum saepissime Nestor de virtutibus suis praedicet ?<sup>45</sup> Tertiam enim jam aetatem hominum vivebat, nec erat ei verendum ne vera praedicans de se nimis videretur aut insolens aut loquax. Etenim, ut ait Homerus, *ex ejus lingua melle dulcior fluebat oratio*, quam ad suavitatem nullis egebat corporis viribus.<sup>28</sup> Et tamen dux ille Graeciae nusquam optat ut Ajacis similis habeat decem, sed ut Nestoris ; quod si sibi acciderit,<sup>47</sup> non dubitat quin brevi sit<sup>44</sup> Troja peritura.

2. Sed redeo ad me. Quartum ago annum et octogesimum. Vellem<sup>43</sup> equidem idem posse gloriari quod Cyrus ; sed tamen hoc queo dicere : non me quidem iis esse viribus<sup>26</sup> quibus aut miles bello Punico, aut quaestor eodem bello, aut consul in Hispania fuerim, aut quadriennio post, cum tribunus militaris depugnavi apud Thermopylas M'. Glabrio consule ;<sup>35</sup> sed tamen, ut vos videtis, non plane me enervavit, non adflixit senectus ; non curia viris meas desiderat, non rostra, non amici, non clientes, non hospites. Nec enim umquam sum adsensus veteri illi laudatoque proverbio,<sup>18</sup> quod monet *mature fieri senem, si diu velis*<sup>47</sup> *senex esse* : ego vero me minus diu senem esse mallet, quam esse senem ante quam essem.<sup>48</sup> Itaque nemo adhuc convenire me voluit, cui fuerim<sup>48</sup> occupatus. — *De Senect.* 10.

2. **obtineret**, *held against the enemy*.
3. **impetu conabantur**, *were just trying by a rush* (imperfect).
4. **perfecti operis**, *of the finished task* = *at having finished the task*. The genitive is very often used, where we might expect a different case, when two nouns are closely connected, as here.
5. **sustinuit**, *held in check*.
7. **sic armatus**, *armed as he was*.
10. **comitio**: the *comitium* was the place of patrician gatherings. It was an elevated part of the Forum. — **quantum**, *as much as*.
12. **pro**, *in proportion to*.

## 2. The Deed of Mucius Scævola.

1. 14. **obsidio erat**, *the siege continued*. — **frumenti** limits **inopia**.
2. **expugnaturum** [esse] **se**, *that he should conquer*, depending on **spem habebat**. In the future of indirect discourse, with the participle in **urus**, the infinitive **esse** is more commonly omitted.
5. **ne deprehensus retraheretur**, *lest he should be seized and dragged back* ("lest being seized," &c.).
7. **senatum**, governed by **adiit** as a transitive verb, as often with compounds of *ad*, *trans*, and *circum* (§ 52, 1. d).
8. **si possim**, *if I should be able*: the present subjunctive with **si** is generally to be rendered with *should*.
9. **populationum** . . . **ultor** = *to avenge in turn the plunder*.
10. **ferro**, *steel*, poetic for **gladio**, *sword*.
2. 2. **daretur**, *was* [in the act of] *being given*.  
(p. 153.) 1. **adirent**: observe that this subjunctive depends on **cum**, two lines before.
3. **vadentem**, *as he went*, agreeing with **eum** (understood), object following **cum** . . . **retraxissent**: *when the king's attendants had seized (comprehensum), and dragged him back* ("him having been seized").
6. **destitutus** = *alone*.
3. 1. **vocant**, *understand me*. — **hostis** is in apposition with **ego**, subject of **volui**.
2. **est**, *understand mihi*: *I have* ("there is to me") *no less courage for death than I had for killing*.
3. **fortia**, translate by an adverb, *bravely*. — **Romanum**, *a Roman virtue*.
4. **petentium**, *of those seeking* (or aiming at). The genitive **petentium** limits **ordo**, to be translated *series* or *succession*.

5. **accingere** (pass. imperat.), *brace yourself up for this conflict if it pleases you.* — **in singulas horas** = *from hour to hour.*

6. **capite tuo**, *for your life*: the stake or prize of the conflict being taken is the abl. of price. — **dimices**, **habeas**, pres. subj., following **ut**, *so that you may*, &c.

7. **juventus**, in appos. with **nos** (understood), subject of **indicimus**.

8. **nullam timueris** (the perf. subj., used for the imperative in prohibitions: see Lesson 16, I. c.): *fear no army*, &c.

4. 2. **nisi . . . jaceret**, *unless he should instantly declare plainly the threats of plots against him, which he threw out by dark hints (ambages).* The noun (**minas**) is here, as commonly in Latin, in the relative clause.

3. **en tibi**, *look you!* — **vile**, *worthless.*

8. **in te . . . ausus**, *you who have dared hostile deeds against yourself*, &c.

9. **macte virtute**, a common phrase of encouragement, like *persevere in valor or merit.* — **macte** is a vocative (= **magis aucte**), though here used in indirect discourse.

5. 2. **apud te**, *with you.* — **ut . . . tuleris**, *so that you have won from me by kindness what you could not by threats.*

5. **ceciderit**, fut. perfect, to be translated by the simple future, *as it shall fall to each first* [in his turn].

6. **Mucium**, object of **secuti sunt**.

7. **Scævolæ**, dative (see p. 88). — **clade**, *loss.*

9. **agro**, ablative following **ex** in **excessit**.

### 3. The Escape of Clælia.

1. 2. **una ex obsidibus**, for **una obsidum**: this form is more common than the genitive after numerals (§ 50, 2. e. R.<sup>1</sup>).

6. **quod ubi**, *when this*, &c. (see Note, p. 131).

8. **alias . . . facere**, *made the others of no great account.*

10. **præ se ferre**, *asserted or declared.* — **pro rupto**, *as broken.*

11. **sic . . . remissurum**, *so (on the other hand), if surrendered, he would restore her unharmed to her friends (suos).*

2. 1. **constitit**, *remained firm.* — **ex foedere**, *according to the treaty.*

6. **probabile**, etc., *it was approved by the general feeling (consensu) of the hostages themselves, that [the persons of] that age should be released*, &c.



## MISCELLANEOUS SELECTIONS.

SELECTION I. — 1. **sonus** is limited by **ferri**, and subject of **reddebatur**. — **longius . . . e proximo**, at a distance, close by.

2. **inhabitantibus** (dative), translate by (strictly on the part of). — **vigiliam**, object of **sequebatur**. In English, the passive construction would be more natural: *watching was followed by*, &c. — **causis**, than the cause of it (the fear). — **solitudine**, to solitude. The Latin often uses the ablative to denote the penalty. — **tota**, i. e. entirely. — **proscribatur**: the imperfect means not it was advertised, but the advertisement was kept up. — **seu . . . vellet**, in case any one should wish.

3. **quia** gives the reason of **percontatus**. — **audita** is taken with **simulacra**.

4. **ubique**, i. e. everywhere else. — **stabat**: the imperfect describes the appearance of the phantom.

5. **capiti**, over the head. — **catenis**: translate as accusative, rattled the chains, noticing the difference of idiom. — **idem**, governed by **innuentem**. — **quod prius**, i. e. innuerat. — **nec**, and not; as it is very often, much oftener than *nor*. — **desertus**, i. e. after he was thus abandoned. — **signum**, in apposition with **herbas**, etc., as a mark.

6. **quae corpus reliquerat**, i. e. which had been left by the body (its decay). — **exesa**, i. e. by rust. — **conditis manibus**, the ghost being laid. — **caruit**, was relieved, i. e. of the disturbance which is implied by the whole of the preceding.

SELECTION II. — 1. **otiandi** depends on **causā**. — **quod cum**, and when this (§ 45, 6). — **Canio**, dative following **licere**, that Canius might use them.

2. **qui esset** = inasmuch as he was. — **apparatum**, sc. est, was got ready.

3. **tantumne**, such a quantity: the **ne** only continues the question. — **gravate**, i. e. agebat, a kind of idiom. — **quid multa**, i. e. dicam: another common idiom which should be noticed as such. — **impetrat**, i. e. his request. — **instructos**, agreeing with **hortos**. **nomina facit**, makes out the bill (so used on account of the name in the account-book).

4. **scalnum nullum**, i. e. not so much as a thole-pin. — **eos nullos**, none of them, a regular Latin idiom. — **nullae**, sc. feriae. — **quod**, so far as (adverbial accusative.)

SELECTION III. — 1. **constat**, is made out from (lit. stands together). — **hoc . . . persuasum est**, are persuaded of this. Notice

the idiom, which is regular. — **quam eandem**, etc., *the same whom they call*.

SELECTION IV. — 1. **ea**, antecedent of **quae**, coming last, as usual in Latin. — **serendi** depends on **scientia**.

5. **se** refers to **terga**. — **latitudines**, plural (as often in Latin) because he is thinking of many cases or examples. — **fissione**, etc.; the early time when the ground had to be broken, and of course cattle were more necessary. — **aureo**, i. e. the golden age. — **fabri-carier**: formerly the infinitive passive ended as here (an extract from an old poet) in **er**. — **manu**, connected with **vinctum**. — **vesci**, subj. of **haberetur**.

6. **longum est**: we should say in English *it would take too long* (see Gr. § 60, 2. c). — **pro sale**, *instead of salt*, i. e. merely to keep it from spoiling (**ne putesceret**). — **pecude** depends on **fecundius**.

7. **Pronoea**, *Providence*, in our modern sense; an idea of the Stoics, one of whom is here speaking, hence **nostra**. — **Epicurea** (pred.), *an Epicurean*; fem. on account of the gender of **Pronoea**. The idea is that Providence seems to be an Epicurean in providing so many good things for the appetite.

8. **stirpibus**, *bushes*, that have stems. — **herbis**, *plants*, grasses and the like without woody stems.

9. **licet**, *you may*, taken with **lustrare**. — **plurimarum**, etc., *very many things of use* (lit. *the usefulness of many things*).

SELECTION V. — **essent**, the subject is the implied antecedent of **qui**, *men who*. — **quoddam**, *a*. This word is used because the thing, though only referred to indefinitely, is however definitely known. — **esse deos**, *that there are gods*.

SELECTION VI. — 1. **senile**, *characteristic of old men*. — **praedicet**, from **praedico**, **āre**. — **aetatem**, Gr. § 52, 1. b. — **quam** belongs with **suavitatem**: the relative is often displaced in this way by a preposition connected with it. — **dux ille**, Agamemnon, the chief of the Trojan expedition.

2. **equidem**: the force of this word is concessive. The idea is, "though I cannot make the same boast that Cyrus (I wish I could), still this I can say, &c." The Latin particles have just this kind of force, and we cannot begin too soon to notice them. — **quidem**, again concessive (see preceding note). Translate, *though I have not, &c., still (sed tamen)*. — **ego**: notice that it is emphatic, — *I for my part*. Do not get the habit, because in English the personal pronouns are expressed, whether emphatic or not, of disregarding their emphasis when expressed in Latin.

C. R. AVISON

TEACHER IN THE ST. LOUIS HIGH SCHOOL.

## SUGGESTIONS TO THE TEACHER.

1. Have the Grammar part and the Vocabularies well studied before passing to the translation.
2. Do not neglect blackboard and other written exercises.
3. Have the principal synonyms (found on pages 235 to 242) memorized.
4. Do not neglect frequent reviewing.
5. Assign short lessons during the first quarter.

# EXERCISES.

## LESSON I.

### First Declension, Page 4.

(Omit Greek Nouns.)

#### Vocabulary.

ālă, ae (F.), <i>wing.</i>	porta, ae (F.), <i>gate.</i>
amicitia ae (F.), <i>friendship.</i>	puella, ae (F.), <i>girl.</i>
ăqua, ae (F.), <i>water.</i>	pugna, ae (F.), <i>battle.</i>
ăquila, ae (F.), <i>eagle.</i>	rēgina, ae (F.), <i>queen.</i>
columba, ae (F.), <i>dove.</i>	Rōma, ae (F.), <i>Rome.</i>
causa, ae (F.), <i>cause.</i>	rōsa, ae (F.), <i>rose.</i>
Eurōpa, ae (F.), <i>Europe.</i>	Sicilia, ae (F.), <i>Sicily.</i>
femina, ae (F.), <i>woman.</i>	vita, ae (F.), <i>life.</i>
filia, ae (F.), <i>daughter.</i>	et or -que, <i>and.</i>
gloria, ae (F.), <i>glory.</i>	est, <i>he is; sunt, they are.</i>
hōra, ae (F.), <i>hour.</i>	habet, <i>he has; habent, they have.</i>
incola, ae (M.), <i>inhabitant.</i>	cum (with abl.), <i>with.</i>
inimicitia, ae (F.), <i>enmity.</i>	in (with abl.), <i>in.</i>
nauta, ae (M.), <i>sailor.</i>	in (with acc.), <i>into.</i>
patria, ae (F.), <i>native city.</i>	ē, ēx (with abl.), <i>out of.</i>
pōeta, ae (M.), <i>poet.</i>	

#### Translate into English.

1. Horă, horarum, horă, horis ; nautas, nautae, nautam.
2. Sicilia est insula Europae.
3. Nautae filia.
4. Filiabus reginarum.
5. Puella est feminae filia.
6. Roma portas habet.
7. Columbae alas habent.
8. Amicitia est vitae gloria.
9. Incolae rosas habent.
10. In aquam ; ex aqua.
11. Cum nautis incolisque.
12. Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.

## Write in Latin.

1. Of girls ; to the daughter ; the queens (acc.).
2. Out of the water ; in the water ; into the water.
3. The eagles have wings.
4. The woman has a rose.
5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors.
6. The battle is the cause of glory.
7. The enmity of the inhabitants is the cause of battles.
8. With the daughters of the queens.
9. She is the daughter of the queen.
10. O Rome, the native-city of poets.

## LESSON 2.

## Second Declension, Page 5.

(Omit Greek Nouns.)

## Vocabulary.

äger, agri (M.), <i>field</i> .	līber, ri (M.), <i>book</i> .
āmīcus, i (M.), <i>friend</i> .	littērae, ārum (F), <i>letter</i> .
argentum, i (N.), <i>silver</i> .	īnīmīcus, i (M.), <i>enemy</i> .
aurum, i (N.), <i>gold</i> .	māgīster, ri (M.), <i>master</i> ,
āvus, i (M.), <i>grandfather</i> .	<i>teacher</i> .
bellum, i (N.), <i>war</i> .	mētāllum, i (N.), <i>metal</i> .
dāt, <i>he gives</i> .	mūrus, i (M.), <i>wall</i> .
dant, <i>they give</i> .	oppīdum, i (N.), <i>town</i> .
dōmīnus, i (M.), <i>lord, master</i> .	praemīum, i (N.), <i>reward</i> .
dōnum, i (N.), <i>gift</i> .	puer, i (M.), <i>boy</i> .
ēquus, i (M.), <i>horse</i> .	servus, i (M.), <i>slave</i> .
filīus, i (M.), <i>son</i> .	sōcer, i (M.), <i>father-in-law</i> .
gēner, i (M), <i>son-in-law</i> .	templum, i (N.), <i>temple</i> .
glādīus, i (M.), <i>sword</i> .	vīr, i (M.), <i>man</i> .

## Translate into English.

1. Amici, amicorum, amicos, amice.
2. Agro, agris, agrum, agri.
3. Templum, templa, templorum, templi.
4. Dominus servos equosque habet.
5. Socer agrum genero dat.
6. Templa sunt gloria Romae.
7. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla.
8. Amici avi poetae sunt.
9. Magistri pueris et puellis dona dant.
10. Oppidum muros et portas habet.

## Write in Latin.

1. The boys have books.
2. The teacher gives doves to the boys.
3. The enemies of the master have swords.
4. The friends of the queen are poets, not sailors.
5. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples.
6. The metals are the cause of war.
7. The friends of the boy have the books of the men.
8. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants.
9. [There] is the letter of the son-in-law.
10. The son and the friend of the sailor are poets.

## LESSON 3.

Second Declension, continued. Questions. Pages 5 and 8.

## Vocabulary.

<b>agricōla</b> , ae (M.), <i>farmer</i> .	<b>hortus</b> , i (M.), <i>garden</i> .
<b>Athēnae</b> , ārum (F.), <i>Athens</i> .	<b>Itālīa</b> , ae (F.), <i>Italy</i> .
<b>Cōrinthus</b> , i (F.), <i>Corinth</i> .	<b>morbus</b> , i (M.), <i>disease, sick-</i>
<b>dēus</b> , i (M.) <i>God</i> .	<b>pōmum</b> , i (N.), <i>apple</i> . [ <i>ness</i> .]
<b>discīpulus</b> , i (M.), <i>pupil,</i>	<b>Rōmānus</b> , i (M.), <i>Roman</i> .
<i>scholar</i> .	<b>scūtum</b> , i (N.), <i>shield</i> .
<b>dēa</b> , ae (F.), <i>Goddess</i> .	<b>taurus</b> , i (M.), <i>bull</i> .
<b>ērāt</b> , <i>he was</i> .	<b>ūbi?</b> <i>where?</i>
<b>ērant</b> , <i>they were</i> .	<b>vōcāt</b> , <i>he calls</i> .
<b>Graecus</b> , i (M.), <i>Greek</i> .	<b>vōcant</b> , <i>they call</i> .

## Translate into English.

1. Vocatne filium?
2. Num agricola amici filiabus rosas dat? Non dat.
3. Nonne Roma muros portasque habet? Habet.
4. Erantne filii filiaeque domini?
5. Discipuli cum magistro Romae et Corinthi erant.
6. Ubi amici libri sunt?
7. Romani gladios et scuta habent.
8. Bella morborum causa erant.
9. Dii erant amici Graecorum et Romanorum.
10. Avus donum dīs dat.

## Write in Latin.

1. Does the sailor call [his] daughter? No.
2. Is not gold the cause of battles and wars? Yes.
3. Does the teacher give a reward to the girls?
4. The father-in-law gives fields and bulls to the friends of the queen.
5. The son of the poet was in Sicily, in Rome, and in Corinth.
6. In the garden of the master [there] are apples and roses.
7. The Romans give gold and silver to the goddesses.
8. Where were the servants of the grandfather? In Athens. In Italy.

## LESSON 4.

## Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, Page 6.

## Vocabulary.

aeger, gra, grum, *sick*.  
 albus, a, um, *white*.  
 altus, a, um, *high, deep*.  
 bōnus, a, um, *good*.  
 densus, a, um, *dense, thick*.  
 dīlīgēntīa, ae (F.), *diligence*.  
 flūvīus, i (M.), *river, stream*.  
 Gāllīa, ae (F.), *Gaul (country)*.  
 Graecīa, ae (F.), *Greece*.  
 grātus, a, um (with dat.),  
     *pleasing, grateful*.  
 ignāvus, a, um, *lazy*.  
 insūla, ae (F.), *island*.  
 lātus, a, um, *broad, wide*.  
 longus, a, um, *long*.  
 magnus, a, um, *great, large*.  
 mīser, ěra, ěrum, *wretched*.

mōlestus, a, um (with dat.),  
     *troublesome*.  
 multus, a, um, *much, many*.  
 nīger, gra, grum, *black, dark*.  
 nūmērus, i (M.), *number*.  
 parvus, a, um, *small, little*.  
 pulcher, chra, chrum, *beau-  
     tiful*.  
 rāpīdus, a, um, *rapid*.  
 regnum, i (N.), *kingdom*.  
 Rhēnus, i (M.), *Rhine*.  
 rīpa, ae (F.), *bank*.  
 silva, ae (F.), *forest*.  
 tēner, ěra, ěrum, *tender*.  
 tīmīdus, a, um, *timid*.  
 trans (with acc.), *across*.  
 vōlāt, *he flies*.  
 -vōlant, *they fly*.

## Translate into English.

1. Servus ignavus est.
2. Columbae timidae sunt.



3. Oppidum est parvum.
4. Graecia multa templa habet.
5. Magister parvas puellas et bonos pueros vocat.
6. Nonne puero donum dat?
7. Aquila trans magnum fluvium in silvam densam volat.
8. Insula parva incolas multos habet.
9. Morbus tenero filio molestus est.
10. Praemia diligentiae discipulis grata sunt.

## Write in Latin.

1. The swords were long.
2. The towns are large.
3. The kingdom is small.
4. The daughters of the women are good.
5. The queen gives broad swords to the inhabitants.
6. The roses of the high banks are white.
7. The Rhine is a rapid river of Gaul.
8. Great is the number of black slaves.
9. The master gives a beautiful book to the sick boy.
10. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl.

## LESSON 5.

Adjectives and Adverbs of the First and Second Declension, Pp. 6 &amp; 41.

## Vocabulary.

ăcūtus, a, um, <i>sharp</i> .	lŏcus, i (M.) (plur., masc. and neut.), <i>place</i> .
bēllīcōsus, a, um, <i>warlike</i> .	mēus, a, um, <i>my</i> .
bēnē (adv.), <i>well</i> .	nātāt, <i>he swims</i> .
dŏcēt, <i>he teaches</i> .	nātant, <i>they swim</i> .
dŏcent, <i>they teach</i> .	noster, ra, rum, <i>our</i> .
ĕxēmplum, i (N.), <i>example</i> .	nōxiūs, a, um (with dat.), <i>hurtful, injurious</i> .
hēri (adv.), <i>yesterday</i> .	pēricŭlum, i (N.), <i>danger</i> .
intēr (with acc.), <i>among, between</i> .	proelĭum, i (N.), <i>battle</i> .
Lătĭnus, a, um, <i>Latin</i> .	scribĭt, <i>he writes</i> .
libĕri, ōrum (M.), <i>children</i> .	scribunt, <i>they write</i> .
lĭngua, ae (F.), <i>language, tongue</i> .	semper (adv.), <i>always</i> .

## Translate into English.

1. Num puer natat in magno rapidoque fluvio?
2. In multis proeliis in periculo magno erat.
3. Magistri mei semper bene docent.
4. Nautae filius pulchre scribit.
5. Puellae litteras parvas aegrae reginae scribunt.
6. In alto loco parvi pueri cum avo erant.
7. Exemplum servi noxium puero est.
8. Tempia diis et deabus grata sunt. [magistri.]
9. Erant multi pueri heri in horto; et inter pueros filius
10. Morbus tenerae filiae molestus erat.

## Write in Latin.

1. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword.
2. Were the farmer's sons in the large garden? No.
3. The sailor is in the garden with [his] sons, not with [his] daughters.
4. The example of a lazy boy is injurious to the pupils.
5. Our daughter writes a beautiful letter to the teacher.
6. The black horses are troublesome to the man.
7. The children of good [men] are not always good.
8. Our master teaches the Latin language well.
9. Where was the son of the farmer with the black horses?
10. Many books are injurious to the sick daughter of the sailor.

## LESSON 6.

Present, Imperfect, and Future of sum and compounds, Pp. 24 & 25.

## Vocabulary.

ā, āb (with abl.), away, by.	gaudium, i (N.), joy.
absum, I am absent.	intersum, I am among, between.
adsum, I am present.	ira, ae (F.), anger.
bēātus, a, um, happy.	liber, ěra, ěrum, free.
contentus, a, um, contented.	mōx (adv.), soon.
cōpīa, ae (F.), abundance.	nunc (adv.), now.
cōpīae, ārum (F.), forces, troops.	prōbus, a, um, upright.
dēsum, I am away, wanting.	sēd (conj.), but.
frumentum, i (N.), corn, grain.	si (conj.), if.

## Translate into English.

1. Estis, eramus, eris.
2. Abes, aberimus; adsumus, aderant.
3. Non beatus eras, mi fili.
4. Si contenti eritis, miseri non eritis.
5. Bonis viris non desunt amici.
6. Semper a proelio abero.
7. Magnae copiae Romanorum in proelio aderant.
8. Estne copia frumenti in domini agris?
9. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis intererat.
10. Incolae magni oppidi sumus.

## Write in Latin.

1. We are, thou wilt be, he was.
2. He is present; they were among; she will be absent.
3. The town was small, but beautiful.
4. [There] were many wars among the Romans.
5. We shall soon be in the black forest.
6. You were in the town yesterday, where are now many boys and many girls.
7. The wicked [men] are not free.
8. To good [men] friends are not wanting.
9. Anger will be injurious to many.
10. Upright pupils are the joy of the teacher.

## LESSON 7.

Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect and Imperative of *sum*, Page 25.

## Vocabulary.

attentus, a, um, <i>attentive</i> .	lēgātus, i (M.), <i>legate, ambassador</i> .
doctus, a, um, <i>learned</i> .	lūdus, i (M.), <i>play, school</i> .
hōdīē (adv.), <i>to-day</i> .	nullus, a, um, <i>no one, none</i> .
indoctus, a, um, <i>unlearned</i> .	offīcium, i (N.), <i>duty, service</i> .
justus, a, um, <i>just</i> .	praesum, <i>I am at the head</i> .
laetus, a, um, <i>joyful</i> .	vester, ra, rum, <i>your</i> .

## Translate into English.

1. Fuisti, fueris, este, sunt.
2. Deeras, adfuere, praefueratis, praees !
3. Estis, fuistis, abfuerit, inerant.
4. Cur abfuisti a ludo heri ?
5. Mi bone puer, semper probus es !
6. Legati Romanorum adfuerant.
7. Discipuli sunt attenti.
8. Num abfueritis a proelio ? Non aberimus.
9. Contenti estote officio vestro.
10. Magister discipulis esto amicus.

## Write in Latin.

1. He will be, they have been, we were present.
2. Be ye absent, you shall be present, he will have been.
3. The teacher shall be just.
4. The contented are always joyful.
5. My son, be upright and attentive, and you will be the joy of the teacher.
6. Have you been in the grandfather's garden to-day ?
7. Let [there] be no cause of enmity ; we are good friends.
8. They had been unlearned ; now they are learned.

## LESSON 8.

## Conjunctions and Preposition, Pages 11 and 41.

## Vocabulary.

*ad* (acc.), *towards, to.*  
*ambulāt, he walks.*  
*ambulant, they walk.*  
*aula, ae* (F.), *hall.*  
*campus, i* (M.), *field, plain.*  
*castra ōrum* (N.), *camp.*  
*currīt, he runs.*  
*currunt, they run.*  
*lūpus, i* (M.), *wolf.*  
*per* (acc.), *through.*

*saepē* (adv.), *often.*  
*saxum, i* (N.), *rock.*  
*sēcāt, he cuts.*  
*sēcant, they cut.*  
*vēnīt, he comes.*  
*vēnīunt, they come.*  
*vesper, ěri* (M.), *evening.*  
*vīdēt, he sees.*  
*vīdent, they see.*

## Translate into English.

1. Num puer natat in magno rapidoque fluvio? Non natat.
2. Parvi discipuli saepe trans latum fluvium natant.
3. Domini non semper boni fuerunt in (*towards*) servos.
4. Venit in castra; veniunt in hortum.
5. Avus nunc ab insula in campum ambulat.
6. Agricola venit ad oppidum cum magistri filio.
7. Lupus e silva currit et puellam videt.
8. Multae pulchraeque puellae in horto fuere ad vesperum.

## Write in Latin.

1. The boys come across the large river into the town.
2. The boy walks in the garden with the master's son.
3. The farmer runs towards the dense forest.
4. The sailor's sons come out of the large hall into the garden.
5. We were often on the banks of the deep river.
6. The farmers cut a broad way through the forest.
7. A great and high rock is in the water.
8. God gives many gifts to the upright inhabitants.

## LESSON 9.

## Third Declension (p, b, m, x), Pages 12 and 14.

## Vocabulary.

arx, arcis (F.), <i>citadel</i> .	jūdex, jūdīcis (M.), <i>judge</i> .
clārus, a, um, <i>bright, renowned</i> .	lex, lēgis (F.), <i>law</i> .
dēlectāt, <i>he delights</i> .	pax, pācis (F.), <i>peace</i> .
dēlectant, <i>they delight</i> .	plebs, plēbis (F.), <i>common people</i> .
dux, cūcis (C.), <i>leader, general</i> .	pōpūlus, i (M.), <i>people</i> (in general).
factum, i (N.), <i>deed</i> .	princeps, cīpis (M.), <i>chief</i> .
firmus, a, um, <i>firm, durable</i> .	rex, rēgis (M.), <i>king</i> .
Germāni, ōrum (M.), <i>Germans</i> .	sēvērus, a, um, <i>severe</i> .
hiems, hiēmis (F.), <i>winter</i> .	trabs, trābis (F.), <i>beam</i> .
jūcundus, a, um (with dat.), <i>pleasing</i> .	urbs, urbis (F.), <i>city</i> .

## Translate into English.

1. Trabes, trabium ; urbis, urbibus.
2. Duci, duce, ducum ; regem, regis, reges.
3. Pax regi jucunda fuit.
4. Judices erant justi.
5. Hiems longa agricolis molesta erit.
6. Duces Graecorum incolis insularum pacem dant.
7. Incolae Romae severas leges habent.
8. Multae urbes Graeciae clarae fuerunt.
9. Firma fuerat arx oppidi.
10. Facta principum Romanorum bellicosa erant.

## Write in Latin.

1. Of the city, for the cities, many cities (acc.)
2. By the law, of laws, the law (acc.)
3. Rome is the renowned city of Italy.
4. The Romans give rewards to good leaders.
5. The king gives a gift to the severe judge.
6. The laws of Athens were pleasing to the Greeks.
7. Bad examples are injurious to the people.
8. A long peace was pleasing to the chief of the Germans.
9. We are now in the city, but we shall soon be in our gardens.
10. Pleasant winters delight farmers and sailors.

## LESSON 10.

## Third Declension, continued (t, d), Page 12.

## Vocabulary.

aestās, ātis (F.), *summer*.  
 cīvitās, ātis (F.), *state*.  
 custōs, ōdis (M.), *guardian*.  
 dens, dentis (M.), *tooth*.  
 ēquēs, ītis (M.), *horseman*.  
 Galli, ōrum (M.), *Gauls*.  
 hasta, ae (F.), *spear*.  
 lāpis, īdis (M.), *stone*.  
 libertās, ātis (F.), *freedom*.  
 milēs, ītis (M.), *soldier*.  
 mons, montis (M.), *mountain*.

mors, mortis (F.), *death*.  
 nātūra, ae (F.), *nature*.  
 nox, noctis (F.), *night*.  
 obsēs, īdis (C.), *hostage*.  
 occidīt, *he kills*.  
 occidunt, *they kill*.  
 pēdēs, ītis (M.), *foot-soldier*.  
 pons, pontis (M.), *bridge*.  
 tempestās, ātis (F.), *tempest*.  
 voluntās, ātis (F.), *wish, will*.

## Translate into English.

1. Custodis, custodem ; pediti, pedites ; pontem, pontium.
2. Morti, morte ; civitatem, civitatibus ; dentes ; montibus.
3. Miles gladio obsidem occidit.
4. Milites lapidibus comites occidunt.
5. Nostri equites et pedites in proelio timidi fuerunt.
6. Mors naturae lex semper fuit.
7. Voluntas militum duci grata erit.
8. Pedites auri custodes gladiis occidunt.
9. Principes Germanorum Romanis multos obsides dant.
10. Tempestates aestatis agricolis nautisque noxiae sunt.
11. Trabes in pontibus longae sunt.

## Write in Latin.

1. Of a companion, to companions ; the nights, by night.
2. The horsemen, with horsemen ; with a stone, of stones.
3. Long nights in winter are pleasant to the teacher and pupils.
4. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears.
5. The inhabitants kill many soldiers with large stones.
6. The soldiers kill the timid guardians of the silver.
7. A tempest in summer is troublesome to the foot-soldiers.
8. The laws of the Roman state were renowned.
9. Freedom of the inhabitants shall be the law of the state.
10. The forces of the Romans kill the horsemen of the Gauls with swords.

## LESSON II.

Third Declension, continued (l, n, r), Pages 13 and 14.

## Vocabulary.

admīrātio, ōnis (F.), <i>admiration.</i>	certus, a, um, <i>certain.</i>
aggēr, ěris (M.), <i>mound.</i>	consŭl, ŭlis (M.), <i>consul.</i>
ansĕr, ěris (M.), <i>goose.</i>	dĕlĕr, ĕris (M.), <i>pain.</i>
auctumnus, i (M.), <i>autumn.</i>	flĕs, flĕris (M.), <i>flower.</i>
cālĕr, ĕris (M.), <i>heat.</i>	frātĕr, trĭs (M.), <i>brother.</i>
	hĕmo, ĭnis (C.), <i>man, woman.</i>

invidus, a, um, <i>envious.</i>	ōdōr, ōris (M.), <i>smell.</i>
jūcunditas, ātis (F.), <i>delight.</i>	ōrātiō, ōnis (F.), <i>oration.</i>
lābōr, ōris (M.), <i>work, hard-</i> <i>ship.</i>	ōrātor, ōris (M.), <i>orator.</i>
laudāt, <i>he praises.</i>	pastor, ōris (M.), <i>shepherd.</i>
laudant, <i>they praise.</i>	pāter, tris (M.), <i>father.</i>
leo, leōnis (M.), <i>lion.</i>	sermo, ōnis (M.), <i>discourse.</i>
māter, ris (F.), <i>mother.</i>	sōl, sōlis (M.), <i>sun.</i>
monstrāt, <i>he shows.</i>	sōrōr, ōris (F.), <i>sister.</i>
monstrant, <i>they show.</i>	vālidus, a, um, <i>strong.</i>
mōs, mōris (M.), <i>manner,</i> <i>custom.</i>	vārius, a, um, <i>various.</i>
nēmo, īnis (C.), <i>nobody (no plural).</i>	vēnātor, ōris (M.), <i>huntsman.</i>
	virgo, īnis (F.), <i>maiden.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Consulem, consulum ; patri, patres.
2. Laboris, laboribus ; more, mores.
3. Leonem, leoni ; virgines, virginum.
4. Homines invidi neminem laudant.
5. Magna fuit admiratio leonum.
6. Pueri caram matrem vocant.
7. Pastores venatori lupum monstrant.
8. Puellae fratres et sorores habent.
9. Varii sunt odores florum.
10. Sermo oratoris doctus fuerat.
11. Vita hominibus grata est, mors certa.
12. Aestate solis calor militibus saepe molestus est.

Write in Latin.

1. To the flower, of flowers ; brothers, with brothers.
2. A man (acc.), of men ; geese, to geese.
3. The maidens of the city Rome were beautiful.
4. The heat in autumn is injurious to the mother.
5. The sermons of the orators are learned.
6. The sisters were in the garden with [their] father and mother.
7. The manner of the brother gives pain to the teacher.
8. The mounds of the camp are high and broad.
9. A good oration is the delight of learned men.
10. The strong hunter kills the lion with the sword.



LESSON 12.

Third Declension, continued (i), Page 14.

Vocabulary.

<i>āter, ātra, ātrum, black.</i>	<i>hostis, is (C.), enemy (public).</i>
<i>cānis, is (C.), dog.</i>	<i>jūvēnis, is (M.), young man.</i>
<i>cīvis, is (C.), citizen.</i>	<i>nāvis, is (F.), ship.</i>
<i>clādes, is (F.), slaughter.</i>	<i>nōtus, a, um, known.</i>
<i>classis, is (F.), fleet.</i>	<i>nūbes, is (F.), cloud.</i>
<i>caelum, i (N.), sky, heaven.</i>	<i>pēritus, a, um, skilful.</i>
<i>complōrātiō, ōnis (F.), weep-</i>	<i>rūpes, is (F.), rock.</i>
<i>ing.</i>	<i>turris, is (F.), tower.</i>
<i>dūrus, a, um, hard.</i>	<i>vallis, is (F.), valley.</i>
<i>Germanīa, ae (F.), Germany.</i>	<i>vestis, is (F.), garment, dress.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Cives, civium ; cladem, cladibus.
2. Hoste, hostes ; nubi, nubium.
3. Clades hostium magna fuit.
4. Multae urbes Italiae altas turres habent.
5. Classis Romana duces peritos habet.
6. Mater pulchram vestem virgini dat.
7. Nubes atrae causa tempestatis sunt.
8. Valles Germaniae hostibus notae fuerunt.
9. Dux Romanorum civibus aurum argentumque dat.
10. Juvenis complorationem sororis videt.

Write in Latin.

1. Of dogs, by a dog ; the rocks, a rock (acc.).
2. The ships, of a ship ; of citizens, with a citizen.
3. The boys kill the shepherd's dog with stones.
4. The fleet of the Romans have many ships and a skilful leader.
5. The valleys of Greece are known to the citizens.
6. Many hard rocks are in the mountains.
7. The maidens give beautiful garments to the daughters of the sailors. [and citizens.
8. The beautiful young man is the friend of the soldiers
9. My friend, be the leader of the inhabitants !
10. Black clouds in the sky are the cause of tempests.

## LESSON 13.

Third Declension, continued. (Neuter Nouns in n, l, r, us, ta)  
Pages 12, 13, and 14.

## Vocabulary.

ănimăl, ālis (M.), <i>animal</i> .	īra, ae (F.), <i>anger</i> .
annus, i (M.), <i>year</i> .	lītūs, ōris (N.), <i>shore</i> .
aurēus, a, um, <i>golden</i> .	mărē, is (N.), <i>sea</i> .
ăvis, is (F.), <i>bird</i> .	nōmēn, īnis (N.), <i>name</i> .
Caesar, āris (M.), <i>Cæsar</i> .	ōpūs, ěris (N.), <i>work</i> .
calcār, āris (N.), <i>spur</i> .	ōs, ōris (N.), <i>mouth</i> .
căpūt, ītis (N.), <i>head</i> .	ōs, ossis (N.), <i>bone</i> .
corpūs, ōris (N.), <i>body</i> .	pĕricŭlōsus, a, um, <i>dangerous</i> .
dĕcūs, ōris (N.), <i>ornament</i> .	piscis, is (M.), <i>fish</i> .
dŏmīcīlium, i (N.), <i>abode</i> .	pŏēma, ātis (N.), <i>poem</i> .
ĕlēphantūs, i (M.), <i>elephant</i> .	scĕlūs, ěris (N.), <i>crime</i> .
fulgŭr, ūris (N.), <i>lightning</i> .	stăt, he stands.
gĕnūs, ěris (N.), <i>race, class</i> .	stant, they stand.
Hannibăl, ālis (M.), <i>Hannibal</i> .	tempūs, ōris (N.), <i>time</i> .
	vulnūs, ěris (N.), <i>wound</i> .

## Translate into English.

1. Nominis ; fulgura ; operi ; corporum.
2. Mari ; animalium ; capitis ; calcaria.
3. Multa animalia parva capita habent.
4. Maria piscium domicilia sunt.
5. Romulus nomen Romam novae urbi dat.
6. Tempore hiemis multae aves in litore stant.
7. Opera Graecorum poetarum clara sunt.
8. Calcaria sunt decus equitis.
9. Genera animalium sunt varia.
10. Ira causa multorum scelerum semper fuit.

## Write in Latin.

1. The animals ; with a spur ; of bodies ; to the wound.
2. Of the poem ; the races ; of times ; with names.
3. The crimes are known to the judge.
4. Elephants have strong bodies and large heads.
5. The time of the year is pleasant.
6. The fish has a small mouth.

7. The wounds of the soldier are large and dangerous.
8. The king gives golden spurs to the horsemen.
9. The deep sea is the abode of fishes.
10. The works of Hannibal and Cæsar were renowned.

## LESSON 14.

Third Declension, continued. (Gen. in *utis, uris*, and irreg. nouns.)

Page 14.

## Vocabulary.

<i>arbor, ōris</i> (F.), <i>tree.</i>	<i>pālūs, ūdis</i> (F.), <i>swamp.</i>
<i>bēnignus, a, um, kind.</i>	<i>sācer, cra, crum, sacred.</i>
<i>bōs, bōvis</i> (C.), <i>ox, cow.</i>	<i>sālus, ūtis</i> (F.), <i>safety, health.</i>
<i>cāro, carnis</i> (F.), <i>flesh.</i>	<i>sēnectus, ūtis</i> (F.), <i>old age.</i>
<i>divītiæ, ārum</i> (F.), <i>riches.</i>	<i>sēnex, is</i> (M.), <i>old man.</i>
<i>Jūpītēr, Jōvis</i> (M.), <i>Jupiter.</i>	<i>sūprēmus, a, um, supreme.</i>
<i>jūs, jūris</i> (N.), <i>right, law.</i>	<i>tellus, ūris</i> (F.), <i>earth.</i>
<i>jūventus, ūtis</i> (F.), <i>youth,</i>	<i>virtus, tūtis</i> (F.), <i>virtue.</i>
<i>young age.</i>	<i>vīs, vis</i> (F.), <i>power, strength.</i>
<i>ōvis, is</i> (F.), <i>sheep.</i>	

## Translate into English.

1. Virtutem ; telluris ; paludi ; senes.
2. Virium ; bobus ; Jovem ; jura.
3. Salus populi suprema lex esto !
4. Jupiter pater deorum Romanorū erat.
5. Vires leonis magnæ sunt.
6. Donum senectutis hominibus jucundum est.
7. Numerus senum et juvenum magnus est.
8. Multi boves et equi in litore insulae stant.

## Write in Latin.

1. Virtues ; with force ; of the earth.
2. Jupiter (acc.) ; of oxen ; to young age.
3. Many trees are sacred to Jupiter.
4. Oxen have great strength.
5. Virtues were the ornament of the Greeks and Romans.
6. The old man gives gold and silver to the young man.
7. The flesh of the sheep is pleasing to the wolf.
8. Great riches is the gift of the kind gods.

## LESSON 15.

Adjectives with Genitive in *ius*, Page 7.

## Vocabulary.

<i>ālius</i> , a, <i>ūd</i> , <i>another</i> .	<i>onus</i> , <i>ēris</i> (N.), <i>burden</i> , <i>load</i> .
<i>alter</i> , <i>ēra</i> , <i>ērum</i> , <i>the other</i> , <i>one of two</i> .	<i>pars</i> , <i>partis</i> (F.), <i>part</i> .
<i>culpa</i> , ae (F.), <i>fault</i> , <i>blame</i> .	<i>praeda</i> , ae (F.), <i>booty</i> , <i>spoil</i> .
<i>cūra</i> , ae (F.), <i>care</i> .	<i>sōlus</i> , a, um, <i>alone</i> .
<i>hōnōr</i> , <i>ōris</i> (M.), <i>honor</i> .	<i>tōtus</i> , a, um, <i>whole</i> .
<i>laus</i> , <i>laudis</i> (F.), <i>praise</i> .	<i>ullus</i> , a, um, <i>any</i> .
<i>neuter</i> , <i>tra</i> , <i>trum</i> , <i>neither of</i> <i>two</i> .	<i>ūnus</i> , a, um, <i>one</i> .
<i>nōvus</i> , a, um, <i>new</i> .	<i>ūter</i> , <i>tra</i> , <i>trum</i> , <i>which of two</i> .
<i>nullus</i> , a, um, <i>none</i> .	<i>vērus</i> , a, um, <i>true</i> .
	<i>vōluptās</i> , <i>ātis</i> (F.), <i>pleasure</i> .

## Translate into English.

1. Uter nomen novae urbi dat?
2. Cives Caesari uni honorem dant.
3. Miles ex altera parte urbis venit.
4. Virtus sola veram voluptatem dat.
5. Utri dat civitas laudem? Neutri.
6. Alii sunt docti, alii ignavi.
7. Alius vires, alius divitiae sunt magnae.
8. Alteri laudem, alteri culpam dant.
9. Nullius vita libera est curis.
10. Neutra civitas laudem ullam habet.

## Write in Latin.

1. Romulus gives another name to the new city.
2. The one was pleasing to the king, the other troublesome.
3. The soldiers praise each other.
4. The leader gives the whole booty to the soldiers.
5. Neither of the men has any abode.
6. Life is a burden to no good man.
7. To which of the two boys does the teacher give a reward?
8. Some praise one thing, some another.

## LESSON 16.

Adjectives and Adverbs of the Third Declension, Page 15 and 16.

## Vocabulary.

arma, ōrum (N.), <i>arms.</i>	ingens, ntis, <i>immense.</i>
ānīmus, i (M.), <i>soul, mind.</i>	lācērāt, <i>he tears.</i>
ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>sharp.</i>	mortālis, e, <i>mortal.</i>
aequālis, e, <i>equal.</i>	lēvis, e, <i>light.</i>
agnus, i (M.), <i>lamb.</i>	omnis, e, <i>all, every.</i>
audax, ācis, <i>bold.</i>	pātiens, ntis, <i>patient.</i>
aspēr, ěra, ěrum, <i>rough.</i>	prūdēns, ntis, <i>prudent.</i>
brēvis, e, <i>short.</i>	praestans, ntis, <i>excellent.</i>
cēlēr, ěris, ěre, <i>swift.</i>	praesens, ntis, <i>present.</i>
commūnis, e, <i>common.</i>	rāpāx, ācis, <i>rapacious.</i>
consīlium, i (N.), <i>plan, counsel.</i>	sāpiens, ntis, <i>wise.</i>
fēlix, icis, <i>fortunate, happy.</i>	tōlērāt, <i>he bears.</i>
fērōx, ōcis, <i>fierce.</i>	tōlērānt, <i>they bear.</i>
fīdēlis, e, <i>faithful.</i>	stultus, a, um, <i>foolish.</i>
grāvis, e, <i>heavy, severe.</i>	ūtilis, e, <i>useful.</i>
hūmānus, a, um, <i>human.</i>	vēlōx, ōcis, <i>swift.</i>
immortālis, e, <i>immortal.</i>	vētus, vētēris, <i>old.</i>
īter, itīnēris (N.), <i>journey.</i>	vīnum, i (N.), <i>wine.</i>

## Translate into English.

1. Tempus humanae vitae breve est.
2. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet.
3. Miles vulnus grave patienter tolerat.
4. Vita est breve iter.
5. Consilia ducis audacia sunt.
6. Naves hostium sunt celeres.
7. Ira regis acris erat.
8. Regina cives fideles habet.
9. Animalia rapacia sunt velocia.
10. Agricolaē vinum vētus habent.
11. Amicorum omnia sunt communia.
12. Ferox leo lacerat felicem agnum asperis dentibus.

## Write in Latin.

1. A wise father often has a foolish son.
2. The labors are equal, the rewards are not equal.

3. Men have mortal bodies, but immortal souls.
4. Arms are useful to all soldiers.
5. The wounds of the horsemen are light.
6. The plan of the leader was prudent.
7. Solon gives excellent laws to the Greeks.
8. Lions are rapacious animals.
9. The present times are fortunate.
10. The grandfather gives old wine to the sick son of the teacher.

## LESSON 17.

## Regular Comparison, Page 17.

## Vocabulary.

<i>adūlātiō, ōnis</i> (F.), <i>flattery.</i>	<i>ferrum, i</i> (N.), <i>iron, sword.</i>
<i>āēr, āēris</i> (M.), <i>air.</i>	<i>fortis, e, brave, strong.</i>
<i>āmābilis, e, lovely.</i>	<i>lūx, lūcis</i> (F.), <i>light.</i>
<i>antiquus, a, um, old.</i>	<i>nīhil</i> (N.), (indecl.), <i>nothing.</i>
<i>Cicēro, ōnis</i> (M.), <i>Cicero.</i>	<i>pernīcīōsus, a, um, destructive.</i>
<i>diffīcilis, e, difficult.</i>	<i>pugnāt, he fights.</i>
<i>diffīcile</i> (adv.), <i>difficult.</i>	<i>pugnant, they fight.</i>
<i>dulcis, e, sweet.</i>	<i>sāgāx, ācis, sagacious.</i>
<i>ēlōquens, ntis, eloquent.</i>	<i>sīmīlis, e, similar, like.</i>
<i>facīlis, e</i> (adv. <i>facile</i> ), <i>easy.</i>	<i>tranquillus, a, um, calm.</i>
<i>fēlis, is</i> (F.), <i>cat.</i>	<i>ventus, i</i> (M.), <i>wind.</i>

## Translate into English.

1. Miles fortior ; milites fortissimi.
2. Donum gratum ; donum gratius.
3. Aqua est gravior quam aer.
4. Aestate noctes brevissimae sunt.
5. In bello agricolae sunt miserrimi.
6. Lux velocior est vento.
7. Ferrum utilissimum est omnium metallorum.
8. Nihil amabilius est virtute.
9. Filiae matri simillimae sunt.
10. Germani cum Romanis fortissime pugnant.
11. Veterima vina non semper sunt dulcissima.
12. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima fuerunt.

(NOTE:—The Superlative is often translated by "very.")

## Write in Latin.

1. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest.
2. The soldiers fight more bravely.
3. The son was very like his father.
4. No one of the Romans was more eloquent than Cicero.
5. Care is swifter than the winds.
6. The Rhine is a very rapid river.
7. The nights are calmer in summer than in winter.
8. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.
9. A queen is often the most wretched of all women.
10. Dogs are more sagacious than cats.

## LESSON 18.

## Irregular Comparison, Page 17.

## Vocabulary.

Alpes, ium (F.), *Alps*.aetas, ātis (F.), *age*.āmāt, *he loves*.āmant, *they love*.callīdus, a, um, *cunning*.dissīmīlis, e, *unlike*.Eurōpa, ae (F.), *Europe*.lūna, ae (F.), *moon*.ōdīum, i (N.), *hatred*.pōtens, ntis, *powerful*.confirmāt, *he establishes*.propīor, ius (prope), *nearer*.saepe (adv.), *often*.sāpientīa, ae (F.), *wisdom*.sūpērus, a, um, *high*.sūūs, a, um, *his, their*.terra, ae (F.), *earth, land*.tigris, īs or īdis (C.), *tiger*.vulpes, is (F.), *fox*.

## Translate into English.

1. Bonus poeta, melior amicus, optimi libri.
2. Majores pueri, pessimum animal.
3. Nihil est melius sapientiā.
4. Luna minor est quam terra.
5. Plurima et maxima animalia in mari sunt.
6. Homerus est veterrimus omnium Graecorum poetarum.
7. Cicero optimus erat suae aetatis orator.
8. Omnium animalium ferocissimus est tigris, sagacissimus elephantus, callidissima vulpes.
9. Venit ex loco superiore.
10. Proximo regi dissimillimus fuit.

## Write in Latin.

1. The most citizens love their native city.
2. Hatred is better than flattery.
3. The most wicked men kill the most excellent [men].
4. Very many islands are larger than Sicily.
5. The worst men are often very happy.
6. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.
7. Cæsar establishes peace with the nearest states.
8. The Alps are the highest mountains in Europe.
9. The best kings are not always the most powerful.
10. The hunter was very often in the woods.

## LESSON 19.

## Fourth Declension, Page 18.

## Vocabulary.

ăcus, ūs (F.), <i>needle.</i>	fructus, ūs (M.), <i>fruit.</i>
agmen, ĩnis (N.), <i>army (on march).</i>	genu, ūs (N.), <i>knee.</i>
ăper, apri (M.), <i>boar.</i>	hospĭtĭum, i (N.), <i>hotel, inn.</i>
audĭtus, ūs (M.), <i>hearing.</i>	instrŭmentum, i (N.), <i>instrument.</i>
aurĭs, ĩs (F.), <i>ear.</i>	lăcus, ūs (M.), <i>lake.</i>
căsus, ūs (M.), <i>fall, accident.</i>	mănus, ūs (F.), <i>hand.</i>
contră (with acc.), <i>against.</i>	ôcŭlus, i (M.), <i>eye.</i>
cornu, ūs (M.), <i>horn.</i>	portus, ūs (M.), <i>harbor.</i>
dens, dentis (M.), <i>tusk.</i>	quercus, ūs (F.), <i>oak.</i>
dŏmus, ūs (F.), <i>house.</i>	sensus, ūs (M.), <i>sense.</i>
ěquitătus, ūs (M.), <i>cavalry.</i>	splendĭdus, a, um, <i>bright, splendid.</i>
exercitus, ūs (M.), <i>army (drilled).</i>	unguĭs, ĩs (M.), <i>claw.</i>
ficus, ūs (F.), <i>fig-tree.</i>	vĭsus, ūs (M.), <i>seeing.</i>

## Translate into English.

1. Casui, casum ; exercitus, exercituum.
2. Quercubus, quercu ; domos, domŭs ; cornua.
3. Visus et auditus hominibus utiles sunt.
4. Cornua tauri acuta sunt.
5. Splendidae domus in oppido nostro sunt.
6. Pater multas altas quercŭs in silva videt.
7. Mox pueri erunt in portu, ubi multas naves vident.
8. Tauri contra leones cornibus pugnant.
9. In alto lacu plurimi pisces sunt.
10. Non domus nostra corpus est, sed hospitium.



## Write in Latin.

1. The hands, with hands ; of a needle, of needles.
2. In houses, at home ; the knees ; with the senses.
3. The fruit of the fig-tree is sweet.
4. The soldier kills the tiger with [his] hand.
5. Cæsar, with all his cavalry, fights against the army of the Gauls.
6. Bulls fight with [their] horns, boars with [their] tusks, lions with [their] claws.
7. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses.
8. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier.
9. The farmer comes home from the city.
10. Hearing and seeing are useful to all animals.

## LESSON 20.

## Fifth Declension, Page 18.

## Vocabulary.

āciēs, ēi (F.), *line of battle.*

dīēs, ēi (M. and F.), *day.*

dōmīna, ae (F.), *mistress.*

fāciēs, ēi (F.), *face.*

fīdēs, ēi (F.), *faith.*

glōrīōsus, a, um, *glorious.*

īnītium, i (N.), *beginning.*

jūstītia, ae (F.), *justice.*

mēridiēs, ēi (M.), *midday.*

multitūdō, īnis (F.), *multitude.* [downfall.

occāsus, ūs (M.), *setting,*

plānīties, ēi (F.), *plain.*

rēs, rēi (F.), *thing.*

sērēnus, a, um, *serene, clear.*

spēs, ēi (F.), *hope.*

sub (with acc. or abl.), *under, toward.*

## Translate into English.

1. Diei, dierum ; rē, rebus.
2. Spem ; in planitie.
3. Sub terra est magna multitudo rerum utilium.
4. Exercitus in magnam planitiem venit.
5. Soror fidei est justitia.
6. Solis occasu Cæsar aciem Gallorum militibus suis monstrat.
7. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum.
8. Spes victoriae milites delectat.
9. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est hieme.
10. In acie multi pedites erant.

**Write in Latin.**

1. For hope ; of things.
2. For the days ; at midday (abl.).
3. Many things are hurtful to man.
4. In summer the days are longer than the nights.
5. The face of the goddess was most beautiful.
6. The reward was the beginning of hope.
7. Of all things the sun is most glorious.
8. The winter is the time of short days and long nights.
9. The leaders have very great hope of victory.
10. The next day (abl.) Cæsar will be in his camp.

**LESSON 21.****Personal Pronouns, Pages 18 and 19.****Translate into English.**

1. Mihi, te, nos, vobis.
2. Ad vos, vestri, nostrum, sibi.
3. Virtus et vitium semper inter se pugnant.
4. Omnes homines se amant.
5. Nos sumus potentes, sed vos estis potentiores.
6. Tu es tristior quam pater meus.
7. Pueri in horto nobiscum ambulant.
8. Ego et frater in oppido heri fuimus. [mortalis.
9. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus im-
10. Parentes vobis cari sunt.
11. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt.
12. Plurimi nostrum patriam amant.

**Write in Latin.**

1. We, you, me, for him.
2. Of you, himself, against thee.
3. I am a shepherd, you are a teacher.
4. Thy mother is dear to thee ; mine to me.
5. He comes in company with you.
6. The teacher gives me a very beautiful book.
7. He has his brother with him at home. [selves.
8. Fools and the impatient are always fighting with them-
9. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, inhabitants!
10. To us the victory is joyful, to you most sad.

LESSON 22.

**Demonstrative Pronouns, Pages 19 and 20.**

**Translate into English.**

1. Hi pueri ; haec dona ; illius libri.
2. In eodem oppido ; mei fratres ipsi.
3. Haec carmina suaviora sunt quam illa.
4. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt.
5. Ista poemata nobis sunt grata.
6. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae.
7. Pastor canisque ejus sunt fessi.
8. Illa nox erat tristissima ; hic dies est laetissimus.
9. Iste tuus amicus vir est optimus.
10. Vastae solitudines in iis locis erant.
11. Memoria harum rerum vobis jucunda erit.
12. Nomen hujus poetae clarissimum erit.

**Write in Latin.**

1. This city (acc.) ; the same words.
2. That letter ; of the parents themselves.
3. These apples are sweet, those sour.
4. The brothers themselves will be in school to-day.
5. These songs are most pleasing to us.
6. That man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth.
7. One of those boys is diligent, the other lazy.
8. In the same places [there] are many new buildings.
9. Why does the teacher give a reward to that tender boy ?
10. The soldiers are in that town, and the enemy in this.

LESSON 23.

**Relative and Interrogative Pronouns, Page 20.**

**Translate into English.**

1. Is erit fortissimus, qui ipse suarum cupiditatum victor fuerit.
2. Cujus vox suavior est quam luscinae ?
3. Quis tibi hunc librum dat ?
4. Animal, quod sanguinem habet, cor habet.
5. Quod animal ferocius est quam tigris ?
6. Galliae sunt partes tres, quarum unam Belgae habitant.

7. Quibus diebus erit luna plena?
8. Illi pisces, quos frater in fluvio videt, ferociter mordent.
9. Eis estote amici, qui virtutem summam adhibent.
10. Quem Cicero eloquens doctusque oratione non tenet?

**Write in Latin.**

1. A boy, who studies, will be wise.
2. [He] who gives honors to the bad, is hurtful to the state.
3. Many men will be great, whose life has been obscure and full of dangers.
4. That king is fortunate, whom all the citizens praise.
5. Who of the Romans was more renowned than Cicero?
6. The bowls, which are here, had often been full of sweet wine.
7. Let the pupils be present, to whom the teacher gives rewards.
8. Whose life has been altogether<sup>1</sup> free from cares?
9. To which jeweller does the queen give the greatest [sum of] money?
10. What animal has greater strength than the elephant?

<sup>1</sup> altogether = *omnino*.

## LESSON 24.

### Cardinals and Ordinals, Pages 15 and 16.

**Translate into English.**

1. Duodecim ; duodetriginta.
2. Quintus ; trigesimus.
3. Illi duodequingenta pueri.
4. Mille passūs ; duo millia passuum ; ducenta millia passuum.
5. Hic murus est altus trecentos pedes, et latus novem pedes.
6. Quota hora est? Decima.
7. Agricolaë filius primus est ; amici filia secunda, ille puer autem undecimus.
8. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos.

Write in Latin.

1. Fourteen ; forty-nine.
2. The fifteenth ; the nineteenth.
3. The wise [men] of Greece were seven.
4. A journey of three miles.
5. The enemy kill five thousand men in the war.
6. What time is it? 7 o'clock ; midday.
7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and very wicked.
8. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers, three hundred horsemen.

LESSON 25.

Active Voice. Four Conjugations. Present and Imperfect ; Indicative.  
Pages 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Laudatis, laudabas ; cadunt, cadebam.
2. Tenemus, tenebamus ; veniunt, veniebatis.
3. Miles ex altera parte urbis venit.
4. Romani contra hostes pugnant.
5. Helvetii Caesaris adventum expectabant.
6. Timidae oves in medio campo errabant.
7. Occasu solis dominus cum servis ad oppidum veniebat.
8. Tota spes Romanos deserit.
9. Milites omnes periculum timent.
10. Vita mortalibus nihil dat sine magno labore.
11. Homines amplius oculis quam auribus credunt.
12. Hostes impetum legionum atque equitum non sustinebant.

Write in Latin.

1. He laughs, they were laughing ; they adorn, we did adorn.
2. You end ;<sup>1</sup> he saw ; they took, she takes.
3. Virtues adorn the state.
4. The general praised the valor of [his] soldiers.
5. The fierce enemy take the city.

<sup>1</sup> to end = *finio*.<sup>4</sup>

6. This day ends the liberty of the commonwealth.
7. The Romans gave the greatest honors to good citizens.
8. The Gauls were fighting with great courage.
9. Many men were building <sup>2</sup> houses, in which they do not live.
10. The soldiers carry ladders with them, and easily enter the city.

<sup>2</sup> to build = *aedifico*.<sup>1</sup>

### LESSON 26.

**Future; indicative. Pages 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.**

**Translate into English.**

1. Scribam, scribemus; servabit; servabunt.
2. Habebis, habebitis; custodies; custodient.
3. Ad te semper scribemus.
4. Ego te laudabo, tu me vituperabis.
5. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parebunt.
6. Discipulos diligentes non puniemus.<sup>1</sup>
7. Tu exercitum duces, multasque urbes expugnabis.
8. Imperator hanc urbem custodiet.
9. Miles corpus paludamento teget.
10. Vos, viri fortissimi, urbem templaque defendetis.
11. Hieme in urbe vivemus, aestate autem ruri vivimus.
12. Ver nobis multos flores praebebit.

<sup>1</sup> *punio* <sup>4</sup> = to punish.

**Write in Latin.**

1. We shall see, they will see; he will lead, you will lead.
2. They end, they ended, they will end.
3. The trees will bloom in spring.
4. We shall laugh, you will weep.
5. Hannibal will lead his army into Rome.
6. The next day Cæsar will move his camp.
7. I will cover the bodies of the boys with [my] cloak.
8. You will not easily see a lion in Europe.
9. The soldiers will kill all the prisoners with swords.
10. Death will end all the hopes of life.

## LESSON 27.

Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect; Indicative. Pages 28, 33, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Habueram, habuerunt; veneritis, venisti.
2. Contrahebat, contraxerat, contraxēre, contrahet.
3. Ille rex urbem Romam muris munivit.
4. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit.
5. Si animum virtutibus ornaveris, semper beatus eris.
6. Suevi, Germanorum gens bellicosissima, loca fertilissima Germaniae occupaverant.
7. Multum iis debemus, qui nos virtutem docuēre.
8. Cicero conjurationem Catilinae detexerat.<sup>1</sup>
9. Cicero multas pulcherrimas orationes scripsit.
10. Militum corpora socii sepeliverint.
11. Ad rivum eundem lupus et agnus venerant.
12. Ingens monstrum virgo domuit.

<sup>1</sup> *detego*<sup>3</sup> = to discover.

Write in Latin.

1. We had seized, he will have seized.
2. They have covered, we shall cover, she had covered.
3. Nature has fortified Italy by the Alps.
4. Bad temper has often been hurtful to generals.
5. Cæsar arranged the line-of-battle.
6. Base fear of the enemy had seized the whole army.
7. We owe much to those, who have taught us virtue.
8. In spring the flowers will have covered the hills<sup>1</sup> and fields.
9. The senate decreed rewards to the soldiers, who had not betrayed the town.
10. This state had flourished [for] a long time, because it had always obeyed the laws.

<sup>1</sup> the hill = *collis*, *is* (M.).

## LESSON 28.

**Subjunctive; Present and Imperfect. Active. Four Conjugations and sum. Pages 24, 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.**

**Translate into English.**

1. Audiatis, audires ; curemus, curaret ; essemus.
2. Timeamus, timerem ; dicant, dicerent ; sis.
3. Laudabit puerum, ut litteras amet.
4. Magister curat, ut pueri mentem erudiat.
5. Curo, ut pueri corpus exerceam.
6. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducet, ut cum Romanis pugnet.
7. Sint tibi omnia bona.
8. Sit pauper, sit miser ; at est frater meus.
9. Placuit Caesari, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret.
10. Non dubitabam, quin milites nostri hostes superarent.

**Write in Latin.**

1. He may fight, they might fight ; you might send ; I may be. •
2. We may say, thou mightst say ; you may sustain ; he might be.
3. They ask [for] aid, that they may sustain the attack of the enemy.
4. Cæsar hastened to Italy, that he might enroll<sup>1</sup> there two legions.
5. The general commanded, that the soldiers should keep their stations.
6. I will take care to train<sup>2</sup> [that I may train] the boy's mind.
7. Who does not fight, that he may preserve his country?
8. I do not doubt, that you may always praise the good.
9. My father commanded, that I should come home.
10. We did not doubt, that you might have faith in us.

<sup>1</sup> to enroll = *conscribo*<sup>3</sup>.<sup>2</sup> to train = *erudio*.<sup>4</sup>



LESSON 29.

Perfect and Pluperfect, Pages 25, 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Cognoscamus, cognosceremus, cognoverimus, cognovissemus, fuerimus.

2. Studeant ; judicarent ; dubitaveris ; convenissent ; fuissent.

3. Saepe majores<sup>1</sup> nostri dimicaverunt, ut patriam liberarent.

4. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii litteras diligenter studuerint.

5. Nemo dubitat, quin milites fortissime pugnaverint.

6. Convenitis, ut malum oratorem rideatis.

7. Quis dubitat, quin bonos semper laudaverimus, malos semper vituperaverimus ?

8. Ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco copiæ hostium consedissent.

9. Non erat dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupavisset.

10. Ita judicat judex justus, ut in omni re rectam<sup>2</sup> conscientiam servet.

<sup>1</sup> *majores, um* (c.) = ancestors.

<sup>2</sup> *rectus, a, um* = right.

Write in Latin.

1. We might have obeyed ; he may have built ; it might have been.

2. I may take care, you might take care, he may have taken care, we might have taken care.

3. Cæsar led an army to Italy, that he might liberate the city Rome. [customs].

4. There is no doubt, that he has changed his manner

5. The Greeks took care, that the young men had obeyed all laws.

6. The father wished, that you had come home.

7. We had built houses, [in order] that others might have lived in them.

8. Nobody doubted, that we had always praised the good and blamed the bad (plur.).

## LESSON 30.

Imperative. Active. Pages 29, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Amate litteras, pueri !
2. Vires semper exercete in optimis rebus !
3. Lauda mare ; litus ama !
4. Diligenter cura, mi amice, valetudinem tuam !
5. Praeceptor puerorum mentes erudito.
6. Laudatote probos homines, vituperatote improbos.
7. Dic, cur veneris !
8. Ne nomen muta ; muta mores !
9. Judex praemia ne dato, neve capito.
10. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripserint !

Write in Latin.

1. The children shall obey [their] parents.
2. Set<sup>1</sup> a good example to thy friends !
3. Learn these songs, boys ; they are very beautiful.
4. Carefully train your children ; praise the good ; punish
5. My son, obey thy mother ! [the-bad !]
6. Let the master teach the boys the Latin language.
7. Do not destroy the city, soldiers !
8. Tell me, my son, what the friend has written (subj.) !

<sup>1</sup> to set = *praebeo*.<sup>2</sup>

## LESSON 31.

Infinitives: Active. Pages 29, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Fuisse ; habiturus esse ; debere.
2. Recturus esse ; intellexisse ; studere ; futurus esse.
3. Naturam mutare difficile est.
4. Miserum est habuisse, et nihil habere.
5. Hominis est animum praeparare.
6. Milites urbem custodire debent.
7. Difficillimum est regere hominum animos.
8. Emissione facilius est quam solvere.
9. Aliud audire, aliud intelligere est.
10. Hostes urbem nostram expugnare student.

**Write in Latin.**

1. To be ; to have written ; to be about to praise.
2. To have been ; to be about to see ; to please.
3. It is not easy to write well.
4. He prepared to obey the authority of [his] great father.
5. It is great praise to have pleased the good.
6. It is difficult to have learned many things.
7. The general said, [that] he [*se*] will come with the tenth legion.
8. He who knows not to obey, knows not to command.

## LESSON 32.

**Participles, Gerunds, and Supines. Pages 29, 34, 35, and 37.**

**Translate into English.**

1. Exercitus pugnans urbem intravit.
2. Animus, se non videns, alia cernit.
3. Hostes, urbem expugnaturi, castra muniverunt.
4. Venio auditurus, quid pater scripserit.
5. Ars scribendi utilissima est.
6. Sapientia est ars vivendi.
7. Homines ad intelligendum et ad agendum nati sunt.
8. Legatos ad Caesarem miserant, rogatum auxilium.
9. Sitis difficillima est toleratu.
10. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convenit, ludos publicos spectatum.

**Write in Latin.**

1. The soldiers [when] fighting entered the city.
2. We are about-to-remove into the city.
3. We have come to Rome to look-at the games.
4. Philosophy is the art of living uprightly.
5. The senate decreed rewards to the soldiers, not having [who had not] betrayed the town.
6. Ripe grapes are sweet to taste.

## LESSON 33.

**Passive Voice ; Four Conjugations. Present : Indicative and Subjunctive. Pages 30, 33, 34, 35, and 36.**

**Translate into English.**

1. Terretur, terreantur ; fugantur, fugemur.
2. Trahitur, trahatur ; erudimur, erudiamur.
3. Castra e campo moventur, ut hostes terreantur.
4. Senex miser e domo trahitur.
5. Nonne litterae a me scribuntur ?
6. Virtus semper doceatur.
7. Multa videntur, sed intelliguntur pauca.
8. Lupi a canibus fugantur, ut oves servantur.
9. Omnia antecapiantur, ut nostri juventur.
10. Leo, ut interficiatur, a venatore petitur.

**Write in Latin.**

1. We are caught, he may be caught ; he is charmed, they may be charmed.
2. You may be bound ; they are taught.
3. The idle guards are caught.
4. The nightingale is charmed by her own song.
5. You are bound by honor.
6. The boy may be defended by his friends.
7. The enemy are hidden in the woods.
8. The power of the Germans is feared by all nations.
9. The soldiers fight very bravely, that the town may be saved.
10. The father takes care, that I am properly trained.

## LESSON 34.

**Imperfect : Indicative and Subjunctive. Pages 30, 33, 34, 35, and 36.**

**Translate into English.**

1. Arabatur, araretur ; vincerer, vincebaris.
2. Praeberemur, praebebatis ; custodiretis, custodiremini.
3. Agri lati facile ararentur.
4. Frumentum agricolis praeberetur.
5. Lupus ferox a pastore vincebatur.
6. Fertilissima Germaniae loca colebantur.

7. Cives tantum laudabantur, ut furore occuparentur.
8. Litterae scribebantur, ut ego admonerer.
9. Portae hostibus aperiebantur, ut in urbem intrarent.
10. Patina pomis implebatur, ut ab hominibus ederentur.

**Write in Latin.**

1. We were chosen ; they might be bounded.
2. He was fortified ; you might be left.
3. The lion was chosen king by the animals.
4. The garden was bounded by a wall.
5. The province was left by the Germans.
6. We were fortified by a mind conscious of right.
7. You might be led home.
8. Ladders were furnished, that the walls might be destroyed.
9. The stag was held by [his] horns, that he might not escape.
10. We were deceived, that we might not receive the money.

**LESSON 35.**

**Future. Pages 30, 33, 34, 35, and 36.**

**Translate into English.**

1. Turbaberis ; sustinebuntur ; finiemini.
2. Amitemur ; despiciar ; vincieris.
3. Leges Romanae mox turbabuntur.
4. Animus meus justitiā sustinebitur.
5. Plus oculis quam auribus debetur.
6. In via amittar.
7. A legatis agnoscemur.
8. Tigillum a ranis conspicietur et despicietur.
9. Bellum a stulto incipiebatur et a sapiente finietur.
10. Vos, mei inimici, vinciemini.

**Write in Latin.**

1. He will be blamed ; they will be filled.
2. We will be received ; you will be sent.
3. I shall be praised, but you will be blamed.
4. The ocean will be filled with fishes.
5. Our friends will be warned in vain.

6. The attack will be received by us all.
7. The power of the Romans will be broken.
8. We shall be destroyed, that you may be hidden.
9. The armies will not be sent across the Rhine.
10. The monkey will be punished, because he has seized the meat.

## LESSON 36.

**Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect. Indicative and Subjunctive.**  
**Pages 30, 33, 34, 35, and 36.**

**Translate into English.**

1. Distingueretur, distinctus sit ; jubebitur, jussus erat.
2. Falsi sumus, fallamur ; conficientur, confecti essent.
3. Pulchra puella delecta est a Publio Claudio (proper name).
4. Vocati eramus Romani, ut a posteris memoraremur.
5. Ager divisus erit in tres partes.
6. Domus colore distincta esset.
7. Verba fallacia dicta sint.
8. Hostium equitatu erepti essetis.
9. Litterae confectae erunt a diligentibus discipulis.
10. Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia finita erunt

**Write in Latin.**

1. We had been heard ; they will have been calmed.<sup>1</sup>
2. You may have been told ; he might have been rescued.<sup>2</sup>
3. A great crash has been heard.
4. The voice of anger will have been calmed.
5. The body might have been taken to Athens.
6. The horses have been frightened by the attack of the enemy.
7. Gaul is bounded (perf.) by the river Rhine and the ocean.
8. Who doubts that Socrates has been unjustly punished ?
9. When the city will have been fortified, the citizens will defend it.
10. Tell me, what had been written (subj.) to you by your sister.

<sup>1</sup> to calm = *lenio*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>2</sup> to rescue = *eripio*.<sup>3</sup>

## LESSON 37.

Imperative, Pages 31, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Pueri, exercemini in artibus !
2. Scriba regis agnoscitor.
3. Vox populi auditor.
4. Alti montes adscenduntur.
5. De rupe puella dejicitor. <sup>4</sup>
6. Amici, edite et nutrimini ! [clauduntur.<sup>1</sup>
7. Portae prima luce aperiuntur, ante solis occasum
8. Mi fili, probe erudire in optimis rebus !

<sup>1</sup> claudio,<sup>3</sup> si, sum = to shut, close.

Write in Latin.

1. Be ye conquered, O gates !
2. Be thou sustained, O friend ! [and Gauls.
3. The peace shall be maintained among the Romans
4. Let the arms be carried into the city.
5. Evils shall be prevented at all times.
6. The man shall be blamed on-account-of<sup>1</sup> his guilt.<sup>2</sup>
7. Be thou always sought, O virtue !
8. Let the meat be grasped-at by the dog.

<sup>1</sup> on-account-of = *propter* (with acc.).    <sup>2</sup> guilt = *culpa*, *ae* (F.).

## LESSON 38.

Infinitives, Pages 31, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Reddi ; conjectus esse.
2. Paratum iri ; erudiri.
3. Ager vastari non debet.
4. Timor leti deleri non potest.
5. Ciconiae in unum locum congregare solent.
6. Nuntiat se eruditum esse.
7. Leges civem Romanum verberari vetuerunt.
8. Magna pars sermonis responderi potest.
9. Sapientes semper ratione regi student.
10. De monte hastas torqueri imperator jussit.

**Write in Latin.**

1. To have been accused ; to be about to be taught.
2. To be betrayed ; to have been guarded.
3. To have been warned is not to have been accused.
4. It is not easy to be taught well.
5. For a man (acc.) to be changed in one day is very difficult.
6. The general commanded, [that] the line of battle be arranged.
7. It is a great wrong for a friend to be betrayed.
8. Nothing can be accomplished without labor.
9. No one, without a fault, ought to be accused.
10. The captive has been prepared to be cast into chains.

**LESSON 39.****Deponent Verbs. Four Conjugations. Page 37.****Translate into English.**

1. Testis fidelis non mentitur.
2. Nunquam sapiens irascitur.
3. De multis rebus locuti sumus.
4. Subita tempestas classem morabatur.
5. Improbis plurima pollicetur, pauca perficit.
6. Cur stulta ista rana bovem imitatur?
7. Frons, oculi, vultus, saepe mentiuntur.
8. Nox atque praeda hostes remorata sunt.
9. Omnia vetustate labuntur, nec quidquam a senectute tutum est.
10. Omnibus in vita unā cum amicis frui !
11. Tu voluptate frueris, ego utor.
12. Senectutem omnes sperant, eandem accusant adeptam.

**Write in Latin.**

1. At the beginning of summer the enemy set out for Rome.
2. Many of the Greeks, who had gone forth to Troy, never returned home.



3. Orgetorix persuades Dumnorix, that he may attempt the same.

4. On every side flowers sprang-up<sup>1</sup> in the fields and meadows.

5. Speak little, promise cautiously, remember always the benefits of your friends.

6. The lieutenant will measure corn to the soldiers.

7. My son has reached<sup>2</sup> the same grades of honor.

8. The soldiers are about to attack the city, which the enemy occupy.

9. There is no doubt, that the generals have promised rewards to the brave soldiers.

10. On the same day, on which the most famous battle was fought, the poet Euripides was born.

<sup>1</sup> to spring up = *orior*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>2</sup> to reach = *adipiscor*.<sup>3</sup>

## LESSON 40.

### Irregular Verbs. Possum; prosum. Page 26.

#### Translate into English.

1. Vulpes autem uvam tangere non potuit.

2. Duos libros tibi dare possimus.

3. Praeterita mutare non possumus.

4. Aut prodesse poetae cupiunt aut delectare.

5. Agros Remorum depopulati sunt,<sup>1</sup> quos adire poterant.

6. Vir sapiens luctum calcare potuerit.

7. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, cum hostes impetum fecerunt.

8. Illi minus facile eam rem in imperio nostro consequi poterant.

9. Alterum deinde, priusquam tertius posset consequi, interfecit.

10. Non id potuit efficere.

11. Potest ex casa magnus vir exire; virtus in omni loco nascitur.

12. Cura, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere.

<sup>1</sup> *depopulor*,<sup>1</sup> to lay waste.

## Write in Latin.

1. Many cannot endure the pain of sickness.
2. He could not seize all places in Italy.
3. They will be able to enter the town to-day with all their troops.
4. He may be able to give me this letter.
5. The teacher always praises him because he is able to read better than all [other] pupils.
6. Cæsar could not defend the city, which the enemy had attacked.
7. They could not be taught the Latin language by others.

## LESSON 41.

Volo; nolo; malo. Page 88.

## Translate into English.

1. Noli esse amicus homini iracundo.
2. Ambo rempublicam, quam tueri potuissent, perturbare maluerant.
3. Iter Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat.
4. Visne scire, quae scripserim?
5. Ego domi manere nolo, tu ambulare non vis.
6. Soror saltare mavult, quam studere.
7. Oro te, ut mecum ludere velis. [debemus.]
8. Si beati esse volumus, sorte nostra contenti esse
9. Si vis amari, ama!
10. Non dubitabam, quin prodesse mihi malles, quam obesse.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> obsum = to do harm.

## Write in Latin.

1. What we wish, we gladly believe.
2. Love others, if you wish to be loved yourself.
3. While the greedy dog wishes to grasp the shadow, he lets-fall<sup>1</sup> the meat from his mouth.
4. Do you wish to walk in the fields with me? No; I prefer to remain at home.

<sup>1</sup> to let fall = amitto.<sup>3</sup>MALO  
CIVILES MA

5. They did not wish the soldiers to remain in the city.
6. Do the boys wish to play on the plain? No; they prefer to study.
7. If you wish to be happy, imitate the examples of good men!
8. We had rather be useful to our country than be rich.
9. A good man will prefer to be loved rather than feared.
10. Do not follow bad examples, my son!

## LESSON 42.

Fero and compounds, Page 39.

Translate into English.

1. Quid est tam nobile quam opem ferre supplicibus?
2. Senectus affert<sup>1</sup> prudentiam.
3. Laudo vos, quod misero auxilium fertis.
4. Nihil potest praeferri virtuti.
5. Curabamus, ut auxilium tibi ferretur.
6. Perfer patienter laborem.
7. Milites in itineribus multas aerumnas pertulerunt.<sup>2</sup>
8. Non omnis ager, qui seritur, fert fruges.
9. Agricola paupertatis onus patienter tulit.
10. Domum reditūs spes sublata est.

Write in Latin.

1. Bad citizens bear arms against [their] country.
2. Socrates bore hardships most patiently.
3. Learn to bear well pleasure and pain.
4. There is no doubt, that old age brings many sorrows with it.
5. Cæsar ordered two legions to bear aid to the cavalry.
6. A good man is able to bear with even mind the hardships of life.
7. Who can endure the discourse of this foolish man?
8. Bring back those books to me, which I gave you yesterday!

<sup>1</sup> *affero* = to bring<sup>2</sup> *perfero* = to endure.

## LESSON 43.

Fio, Page 39.

Translate into English.

1. Nemo fit casu bonus.
2. Ex amico inimicus, ex inimico amicus fieri potest.
3. Senectute prudentior fis.
4. Deus dixit : Fiat, et factus est mundus.
5. Apud veteres Romanos ex agricolis fiebant consules.
6. Themistoclis consilio factum est, ut Athenienses <sup>1</sup> urbem relinquerent.
7. Onus, quod bene fertur, leve fit.
8. Qui noxium adjuvabit, culpae socius <sup>2</sup> fiet.
9. His rebus fit, ut Helvetii minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possint.
10. Caesar litteris Labieni certior<sup>s</sup> factus erat.

<sup>1</sup> *Atheniensis, is* (M.) = the Athenian.      <sup>2</sup> *socius, i* (M) = the ally.

Write in Latin.

1. No one becomes, by chance, very base.
2. This heavy burden was made light by patience.
3. In time (*mox*) our soldiers will become bolder.
4. In winter the days become shorter and the nights longer.
5. The Athenians had become the allies of the Romans.
6. Cæsar, having been informed by the legates, set out for Rome.
7. He wished to become friendly to me.

## LESSON 44.

Eo and compounds, Page 39.

Translate into English.

1. Ego abeo, tu ex itinere redis.
2. In pugna atrocissima multi fortissimi milites perierunt.
3. Curare debemus, ne vitam silentio transeamus.
4. Milites e castris redeuntes occisi sunt.
5. Socrates aequo atque hilari animo mortem obiit.

6. Alexander ad Jovis oraculum<sup>1</sup> adire constituit.
7. Alpes nemo unquam ante Hannibalem cum exercitu transierat.
8. Cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit.
9. Civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent.

<sup>1</sup> oraculum, i (N.) = the oracle.

Write in Latin.

1. Very many [persons] pass their lives in silence.
2. Let us go to the city; let us return from the country.
3. A brave man will meet his last day with even mind.
4. After the battle very many perished by hunger and cold.
5. Italy is fortified by the Alps, [those] very lofty mountains, which an army cannot easily cross.
6. Go to Rome, my son, and wonder [at] the monuments of the old Romans.
7. At the beginning of winter the general wished to cross the river with all his forces on a bridge.

No one makes  
 out of it, and an enemy out of  
 an enemy, and can be made  
 There is from old age more found in  
 God says, they may make the had  
 the world

Caesar

Edm

No 14

2nd



# VOCABULARY.

## N<sup>o</sup>. II. — LATIN AND ENGLISH.

The figures in parenthesis refer to the List of Synonymes.

- ā, ab** (abl.), *from, away from, by; in compos., away, off* (1).  
**abdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, didī, ditum, *to put away, hide* (2).  
**abeo**, ire, ii, itum, *go away* (3).  
**abfero** (aufero), ferre, abstulī, ablātum, *bear away*.  
**abhorreo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, *shrink away, hold aloof*.  
**abiēs**, etis, F., *fir-tree*.  
**abjicio**<sup>3</sup> (ābicio), ere, jēcī, jectum, *throw away, cast down*.  
**Aboriginēs**, um, plur. M., the early inhabitants of Italy.  
**abripio**<sup>3</sup> [rapio], ere, ripuī, reptum, *snatch or drag away*.  
**abscēdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēssī, cēssum, *move off, withdraw*.  
**absēns**, tis (part. of **absum**), *absent*.  
**absentia**, ae, F., *absence*.  
**absolvo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, solvī, solūtum, *acquit, relieve of an obligation or burden, pay off, complete*.  
**abstinēns**, tis, *abstinent, temperate; part. of*  
**abstineo**<sup>2</sup> [teneo], ēre, tinuī, tentum, *to hold off, refrain*.  
**absum**, esse, fui, *to be absent; non multum abest quin, it is not far [from being the case] that*.  
**abundo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to overflow, abound* (**unda**).  
**abūtor**,<sup>3</sup> ī, ūsus, *to abuse, take advantage of*.  
**ac** (atque), *and, as*.  
**accēdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēssī, cēssum, *move up to, approach, be added* (with **ut**, = *and besides*).  
**accendo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, sum, *kindle, inflame*.  
**accido**<sup>3</sup> [cado], ere, cidī, *be fall, happen* (4).  
**accingo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, nxī, nctum, *gird, brace up*.  
**accipio**<sup>3</sup> [capiō], ere, cēpī, ceptum, *receive, accept* (25).  
**accurro**,<sup>3</sup> ere, currī, or cucurrī, cūsum, *to run up to*.  
**accūsātor**, ōris, M., *accuser, public prosecutor*.  
**accūso** [ad, causa],<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to accuse*.  
**ācer**, ācris, ācre, *sharp, eager*.  
**acerbus**, a, um, *sharp, sour*.  
**acidulus**, a, um, *rather sour*.  
**acidus**, a, um, *sour*.  
**aciēs**, ēī, F., *edge, eyesight; the battle-array of an army* (5).  
**ācriter** (ācrius, ācerrimē), *sharply, eagerly; ācrius, too eagerly*.  
**acus**, ūs, F., *needle*.  
**acūtus**, a, um, *sharp, keen*.  
**ad** (acc.), *to, at, towards, about* (to the number of), *for, near; in comp., in, upon, to, with*.  
**adclāmo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to cry out at*.  
**adcumbo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cubuī, cubitum, *recline or sit near* (at table).  
**addo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, didī, ditum, *add*.  
**addūco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *bring, draw to* (a thing), *induce*.  
**adeō**, *so* (to that degree).  
**adeo**, ire, ii, itum, *go to, approach*.  
**adeptus**, a, um, *gained, or having gained* (part. of **adipiscor**<sup>3</sup>).

- adfero**, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear to, bring.*  
**adfacio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fēcī, fectum, *affect with*; — supplicio, *to punish*; — honoribus, *to reward with honors.*  
**adfligo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *dash about violently, afflict.*  
**adfligo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, flixī, flictum, *dash against.*  
**adhibeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *apply, furnish, employ.*  
**adhūc**, *hitherto, till now.*  
**adimo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ēmī, emptum, *take away.*  
**adipiscor**,<sup>3</sup> cī, adeptus, *reach, attain.*  
**aditus**, ūs, M., *access, approach, entrance.*  
**adjūmentum**, ī, N., *aid, help.*  
**adjungo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, nxī, nctum, *to join, annex.*  
**adlātus**, see **adfero**.  
**adloquor**,<sup>3</sup> loquī, locūtus, *speak to, address.*  
**administro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *serve, supply, perform, direct.*  
**admīrātio**, ōnis, F., *admiration.*  
**admīror**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to admire.*  
**admodum**, *to a degree, quite.*  
**admoneo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *admonish.*  
**admoveo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move towards.*  
**adolescēns**, *adolescētia*, see **adulescens**, &c.  
**adorior**,<sup>4</sup> irī, adortus, *attack, accost.*  
**adpeto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, īvī, ītum, *aim at, attack, seek, long for, approach.*  
**adrēpo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, psi, ptum, *creep towards.*  
**adrīdeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, risī, rīsum, *smile at* (in token of good humor).  
**adscendo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, di, sum, *mount, ascend.*  
**ascēnsus**, ūs, M., *ascent.*  
**adsentior**,<sup>4</sup> irī, sēnsus, *agree with, assent to.*  
**adsequor**,<sup>3</sup> quī, secūtus, *follow close, come up with, reach* (95).  
**adspectus**, ūs, M., *aspect, view.*  
**adspicio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, spexī, spectrum, *look at, view.* [hand.  
**adsum**, esse, fuī, *be present, at*  
**adulatio**, ōnis, F., *fawning, flattery.*  
**adulescēns**, tis, M., *young man* (properly, from 17 to 30).  
**adulescentia**, ae, F., *youth, early manhood.*  
**advento**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *come to, approach.*  
**adventus**, ūs, M., *coming, approach.*  
**adversus** (acc.), *turned towards, against.*  
**adversus**, a, um, *turned to, opposite, in front, adverse.*  
**adverto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, vertī, versum, *turn to*; animum **adverto**, *turn the mind to, notice.*  
**advesperascit**,<sup>3</sup> ere, āvit, *to approach evening, grow late.*  
**aedēs**, is, F., *temple*; plur., *house* (39).  
**aedificium**, ī, N., *building, edifice.*  
**aedifico**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *build, erect.*  
**aeger**, gra, grum, *sick, weary*; — pedibus, *lame.*  
**aemulus**, ī, M., *rival.*  
**Aenēas**, ae, M., *Aeneas*, son of Anchises and Venus, a prince of Troy.  
**Aeolus**, ī, M., *Æolus*, god of Winds.  
**aequālis**, e, *of the same or equal age* (6).  
**aequitās**, ātis, F., *equity, justice, calmness.*  
**aequo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *make equal.*  
**aequor**, oris, N., *level, sea* (67).  
**aequus**, a, um, *level, even, equal, just* (6).  
**āēr**, āēris (acc. āēra), M., *air.*  
**aerumna**, ae, F., *grief* (38).  
**aerumnōsus**, a, um, *full of grief.*  
**aes**, aeris, N., *copper, money.*  
**aestās**, ātis, F., *summer.*



aestimo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *value, esteem, reckon.*

aestivus, a, um, *summer (adj.), of summer.*

aestuo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to boil up, seethe, surge, suffer heat.*

aestus, ūs, M., *surge, tide, heat.*

aetās, ātis, F., *age, period of life (7).*

aeternitās, ātis, F., *eternity, immortality.*

Aetna, ae, F., *Mount Etna.*

aevum, ī, N., *age, period, lapse of time (7).*

afficio<sup>3</sup> [ad facio], see **ad**facio.

affirmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *confirm, strengthen.*

affligo,<sup>3</sup> see **ad**ligo.

Africānus, ī, M., a title of P. Scipio, as conqueror of Carthage, and of his grandson by adoption as its destroyer.

Agamemnōn, onis (acc. ona), *Agamemnon, king of the Greeks at Troy.*

ager, agri, M., *field, territory (8).*

Agēsilāus, ī, M., a king of Sparta.

(aggređior,<sup>3</sup> dī, gressus, *approach, attack, undertake.*

agito,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *drive, move, stir, agitate, pass, hunt.*

agmen, inis, N., *band, troop (5).*

agna, ae, F., *ewe-lamb.*

agnosco<sup>3</sup> [ad, GNO]. noscere, nōvī, nitum, *to recognize.*

agnus, ī, M.; agna, ae, F., *lamb.*

ago,<sup>3</sup> agere, ēgī, actum, *to lead, do, drive; agere gratias, thank.*

agrestis, e, *wild, rustic, rude.*

agricola, ae, M., *farmer.*

agricultūra, ae, F., *agriculture.*

ahēneus, a, um, *brazen, of brass.*

āin, for āisne, *do you say so?*

āio (defect.), *say, say yes (64).*

Ajāx, ācis, M., *Ajax, a Grecian hero.*

āla, ae, F., *wing (61).*

alacritās, ātis, F., *activity, eagerness, alacrity.*

Albānus, a, um, *of Alba, a town near Rome.*

albeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, *to be white.*

albus, a, um, *white (9).*

ālea, ae, F., *die (of a pair of dice), hazard.*

āles, itis, C., *winged creature, bird (21).*

Alexander, drī, M., *Alexander, king of Macedonia, conqueror of Asia.*

algeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, alsī, *to be or endure cold.*

algor, ōris, M., *cold (the feeling).*

aliās, *otherwise, elsewhere, at any other time.*

aliēnus, a, um, *belonging to another, foreign, others<sup>1</sup>.*

āliger, gera, gerum, *winged.*

alimentum, ī, N., *food; pl. kinds of food.*

aliquamdiū, *for some time.*

aliquando, *at some time, sometimes, at length.*

aliquis, qua, quod, or quid (p. 21), *some, some one.*

aliquō, *to some place.*

aliquot, *some, several, a number of.*

aliter, *otherwise.*

alius, a, ud (p. 7), *other, another; al. . . al., one . . another.*

almus, a, um, *cherishing, benignant.*

alo,<sup>3</sup> alere, aluī, alitum, *feed, keep (of animals).*

Alpēs, ium, F., *the Alps.*

altāria, ium, N. plur., *altars.*

alter, tera, terum (p. 7), *other (of two), second, the other;*

*alter . . alter, the one, the other.*

altercor,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *quarrel, dispute.*

alternus, a, um, *alternate.*

altitūdo, dinis, F., *height, depth.*

altus, a, um, *high, deep (10).*

alumnus, ī, M., *foster-child.*

alveus, ī, M., *river-channel.*

amābilis, e, *lovely.*

amāns, tis, *loving, fond (amo).*

amārus, a, um, *bitter.*

ambāgēs, um, F. plur., *obscurity (dark hints); also in abl. sing.*

**ambitus**, ūs, M., *circuit, going around*.  
**ambo**, ae, o (p. 7), *both*.  
**ambulatio**, ōnis, F., *a walk*.  
**ambulo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to walk*.  
**āmēns**, tis, *distracted, insane*.  
**amicitia**, ae, F., *friendship*.  
**amicus**, a, um, *friendly, fond*.  
**amicus**, ī, M., *a friend*.  
**āmitto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, mīsi, missum, *to lose* (83).  
**amo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to love* (11).  
**amoenus**, a, um, *pleasant, charming* (to the eye : 41).  
**amor**, ōris, M., *love*.  
**amplitudo**, inis, F., *fulness, grandeur*.  
**amplius**, more (§ 54, 5. c).  
**amplus**, a, um, *full, abundant, grand, large* (65).  
**amputo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *prune away, cut off*.  
**Amūlius**, ī, M., *Amulius, king of Alba*.  
**an**, *whether, or* (sign of interr.).  
**Anacharsis**, is, M., *a philosophical Scythian*.  
**anas**, anatis, C., *duck*.  
**Anchisēs**, ae, M., *Anchises, father of Æneas*.  
**ancilla**, ae, F., *handmaid* (fem. of **servus**, *slave*).  
**ancora**, ae, F., *anchor*.  
**ango**,<sup>3</sup> ere, nxī, nctum, *to choke, distress*.  
**anguis**, is, C., *snake, serpent* (12).  
**angulus**, ī, M., *corner*.  
**angustus**, a, um, *narrow*.  
**anima**, ae, F., *breath, life* (13).  
**animadverto**<sup>3</sup> [animum adverto], ere, tī, sum, *to perceive*.  
**animal**, ālis, N., *animal* (14).  
**animus**, ī, M., *mind, soul, courage* (13); *animum adverto* (acc.), *perceive*.  
**anniversarius**, a, um, *yearly*.  
**annōna**, ae, F., *the grain-crop* (year's growth), *grain* (in market), *price of grain* (94).  
**annus**, ī, M., *year*.  
**annuus**, a, um, *yearly*.

**ante** (acc.), *before* (prep. and adv.); *ante . . . quam, before* (rel. adv.); *non ante . . . quam, not . . . until*; *ante duas horas, two hours ago*.  
**antecapio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēpī, captum, *anticipate*.  
**antecēdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēssī, cēssum, *precede, walk in front, excel*.  
**antepōno**,<sup>3</sup> ere, posuī, positum, *set before, prefer*.  
**Antiochia**, ae, F., *Antioch, a city of Syria*.  
**antiquitas**, ātis, F., *antiquity*.  
**antiquus**, a, um, *ancient* (100).  
**Antōnius**, ī, M., *Antony, a Roman family name*.  
**antrum**, ī, N., *cave, grotto*.  
**ānulus**, ī, M., *ring, bracelet*.  
**apage** (def.), *away! begone!*  
**aper**, aprī, M., *boar*.  
**aperio**,<sup>4</sup> ire, uī, apertum, *open, uncover, disclose* (80); *aperī caput, take off your hat*.  
**apertus**, a, um (part. of *preceding*), *opened, open*.  
**apiārium**, ī, N., *bee-house, apiary*.  
**apis**, is, F., *bee*.  
**Apollo**, inis, M., *Apollo, god of music and art*.  
**appāreo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *appear*.  
**apparo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to make ready*.  
**appello**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *call*.  
**appeto**,<sup>3</sup> (see **adpeto**).  
**approbatio**, ōnis, F., *approval*.  
**approbo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *approve*.  
**apto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *fit, adapt*.  
**aptus**, a, um, *fitted, fit*.  
**apud** (acc.), *at, near, among, with, in* (of authors).  
**aqua**, ae, F., *water, spring*.  
**aquaticus**, a, um, *of the water*; M. or F. plur., *water-fowl*.  
**aquatio**, ōnis, F., *watering-place*.  
**aquila**, ae, F., *eagle* (the Roman standard).  
**Aquilo**, ōnis, M., *Aquilo* (the North wind), *the North*.  
**Arabs**, Arabis, *Arabian*.

**Arar**, aris, M., a river in Gaul (the *Saône*).

**arātor**, ōris, M., *ploughman*.

**arātrum**, ī, N., *plough*.

**Arātus**, *Arātus*, a Greek poet.

**arbitror**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *judge, think, suppose* (92).

**arbor** (ōs), ōris, F., *tree* (15).

**arbustum**, ī, N., *orchard* (15).

**Arcadius**, ī, a man's name.

**arceo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, arcuī, *to shut off, restrain*.

**Archelāus**, ī, M., a man's name.

**Archias**, ac, *Archias*, M., a poet.

**arcus**, ūs, M., *a bow*.

**ardēns**, tis (participle of *ardeo*), *blazing*.

**ardeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, arsi, arsum, *blaze, burn*.

**ardor**, ōris, M., *heat, warmth*.

**arduus**, a, um, *steep, difficult*.

**ārea**, ae, F., *open space, area, court-yard*.

**argentārius**, a, um, *pertaining to silver or money; argentarius, a money lender; argentaria, (sc. res), banking business*.

**argentum**, ī, N., *silver*.

**argūmentum**, ī, N., *argument*.

**arguo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, uī, ūtum, *to assert, declare, accuse*.

**arista**, ae, F., *wheat-ear, harvest*.

**Aristotelēs**, is, M., *Aristotle*, a Greek philosopher.

**arma**, ōrum, N., *arms, weapons; ad arma, to war; in armis, under arms* (16).

**armātus**, a, um, *armed; pl., armed men*.

**aro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *plough*.

**ars**, artis, F., *art, skill* (17).

**artē** (tius, tissimē), *closely*.

**articulātīm** (tē), *articulately*.

**artifex**, ficis, M., *artist, artisan, workman*.

**artus**, ūs, M., *joint, limb* (dat. pl. *ubus*).

**arundo**, inis, F., *reed, stick*.

**arvum**, ī, N. [*aro*], *a field for tillage* (8).

**arx**, arcis, F., *tower, citadel*.

**Ascanius**, ī, M., son of *Aeneas*.

**ascēnsus**, ūs, M. (see *adscensus*).

**asinus**, ī, M., *ass, donkey*.

**aspectus**, ūs, M., *sight, view, aspect*.

**asper**, era, erum, *rough, harsh, sharp*.

**asperor**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *spurn, scorn*.

**aspis**, idis, F., *asp* (a poisonous serpent).

**asporto**<sup>1</sup> [abs, porto], āre, āvī, ātum, *carry off*.

**astrologia**, ae, F., *astronomy* (knowledge of the stars).

**astrum**, ī, N., *star, heavenly body*.

**asylum**, ī, N., *asylum, refuge*.

**at**, *but, but yet, still*.

**āter**, ātra, ātrum, *black* (9).

**Athēnae**, ārum, *Athens*, the most famous city of Greece.

**Atlās**, antis, M., *Atlas*, a Titan, changed to a mountain.

**atque** (ac), *and, as, and even*.

**Atreus**, eos or ī (p. 5), M., *Atreus*, father of *Agamemnon*.

**Atridēs**, ac, M., son of *Atreus*.

**atrōx**, ōcis, *fierce, cruel* (93).

**attendo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, tum, *stretch towards, attend, listen*.

**attentus**, a, um, *attentive*.

**attingo**<sup>3</sup> [tango], tingere, tigī, tactum, *touch on, touch, reach*.

**attonitus**, a, um, *thunderstruck*.

**auctōritās**, ātis, F., *authority*.

**auctumnus**, ī, M., *autumn* (from *augeo*, the increase of harvest).

**audācia**, ae, F., *boldness* (usually in a bad sense).

**audāx**, ācis, *bold, daring*.

**audeo**,<sup>2</sup> audēre, ausus sum, *dare, venture* (18).

**audio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī, ītum, *hear*.

**auditio**, ōnis, F., *hearsay*.

**aufero** [ab, fero], auferre, abstulī, ablātum, *bear away, remove*.

**augeo**,<sup>2</sup> augēre, auxī, auctum, *to increase, enlarge*.

**augur**, uris, M., *augur* (interpreter of omens).  
**auguror**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *to interpret omens, interpret, predict*.  
**aula**, ae, F., *hall, palace*.  
**aura**, ae, F., *breeze, air* (19).  
**aureus**, a, um, *golden, of gold*.  
**auriga**, ae, C., *driver, charioteer*.  
**auris**, is, F., *ear*.  
**auritus**, a, um, *having ears*.  
**aurum**, ī, N., *gold*.  
**auster**, tri, M., *the south wind*.  
**ausus**, a, um, *part. of audeo.<sup>2</sup>  
**aut**, or; **aut** . . **aut**, *either . . or*.  
**autem**, *but, however, moreover*.  
**auxilium**, ī, N., *aid, help*.  
**avāritia**, ae, F., *avarice, greed*.  
**avārus**, a, um, *greedy, avaricious* (20).  
**āverto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, tī, sum, *to turn away, avert*.  
**avis**, is, F., *bird* (21).  
**āvoco**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to call away*.  
**āvolo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to fly away*.  
**avus**, ī, M., *grandfather*.  
**axis**, is, M., *axle, axis* (of the earth).*

## B.

**balneum**, ī, N., *bath*; plural, ae, ārum, F.  
**bālo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to bleat*.  
**barba**, ae, F., *beard*.  
**barbarus**, a, um, *barbarian* (93).  
**beātus**, a, um, *blessed, happy, wealthy* (47).  
**Belga**, ae, M., *a Belgian*.  
**Bellerophōn**, ontis, M., *a hero of Greek fable, slayer of the Chimæra*.  
**bellicōsus**, a, um, *warlike*.  
**bellicus**, a, um, *warlike*.  
**bellum**, ī, N., *war* (22).  
**bellus**, a, um, *pretty, fine* (91).  
**bēlua**, ae, F., *beast, monster, strange animal* (14).  
**bene**, well.

**benefacio**,<sup>3</sup> *facere, fēcī, factum*; pass., **benefio**, *do good, benefit*.  
**beneficium**, ī, N., *a kindness, benefit; favor, gift* (40).  
**benevolentia**, ae, F., *good will, kindness*.  
**bestia**, ae, F., *animal, beast, brute* (14).  
**Biās**, antis, M., *a Greek philosopher*.  
**bibo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, bibī, itum, *to drink*.  
**biennium**, ī, N., *a period of two years*.  
**bis**, *twice*.  
**blandimentum**, ī, N., *flattery*.  
**bonus**, a, um, *good, kind* (23).  
**Boreās**, ae, M., *the North wind, north*.  
**bōs**, bovis (p. 14), C., *ox, cow*; plur. *cattle*.  
**brāchium** (bracchium), ī, N., *arm* (properly the fore-arm; compare *lacertus*).  
**brevis**, e, *short*; brevī, *in a short time*.  
**Britannia**, ae, F., *Britain*.  
**Britannus**, a, um, *British, a Briton*.  
**Brundisium**, ī, N., *a seaport in the S. E. of Italy*.  
**bubulcus**, ī, M., *a ploughman, herdsman*.

## C.

**C**, initial for *Gāius* (*Caius*). The spelling *Gaius* is the correct one, but is not usually preserved in English.  
**CAD**, *fall* (**cado**, **accido**).  
**cado**,<sup>3</sup> *cadere, cecidī, cāsum, fall*.  
**caeco**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to make blind*.  
**caecus**, a, um, *blind*.  
**caedēs**, is, F., *destruction, mutilation, slaughter* (24).  
**caedo**,<sup>3</sup> *cadere, cecidī, caesum, fell, cut down, kill, beat*.  
**caelum**, ī, N.; pl. **caeli**, ōrum, M., *sky, heaven, climate*.

**Caepio**, ōnis, M., a man's name.  
**Caesar**, aris, M., *Cæsar*.  
**caesariēs**, ēī, F., *head of hair, locks*.

**calamitās**, ātis, F., *a calamity* (originally a hailstorm, which beats down stalks of grain).

**calamus**, ī, M., *stalk, reed, pen*.

**calco**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to trample, tread, travel*.

**caleo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, *be hot or warm*.

**calesco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, *grow hot or warm*.

**calidus**, a, um, *hot*.

**calix**, icis, M., *cup*.

**callidus**, a, um, *cunning*.

**cālo**, ōnis, M., *camp-servant*.

**campus**, ī, M., *field, plain* (8).

**CAN**, sing (**cano**<sup>3</sup>).

**candēns** (part. of **candeo**), tis, *glowing, hot*.

**candidus**, a, um, *white, bright* (9).

**canis**, is, c. ; gen. pl., **um**, *dog*.

**Canius**, ī, M., a proper name.

**Caninae**, ārum, F., *Cannæ*, a town in S. E. Italy, where the Romans were defeated by Hannibal, B.C. 216.

**cano**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cecinī, cantum, *sing, crow, sound, play* (on an instrument).

**canōrus**, a, um, *clear-voiced, melodious*.

**cantillo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, *sing feebly, chirp*.

**canto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *sing*.

**cantus**, ūs, M., *song, chant* (27).

**cānus**, a, um, *white, hoary* (9); pl., **cānī**, *gray hair*.

**CAP**, take (**capio**, **accipio**).

**capāx**, ācis, *capacious, roomy*.

**caper**, caprī, M., *goat*.

**capesso**,<sup>3</sup> ere, īvī, ītum, *take hold of, seize, grasp*.

**capillus**, ī, M., *hair*.

**capio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēpī, captum, *take, catch* (25); **captus oculis**, *blind*.

**Capitōlium**, ī, N., *the Capitol*, a hill in Rome.

**capra** (more commonly **capella**), ae, F., *she-goat*.

**capto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to catch at, seize, reach eagerly for*.

**Capua**, ae, F., a town of South Italy, near Naples.

**caput**, capitis, N., *head, chief* (town, dish, &c.).

**carcer**, eris, M., *prison, dungeon*.

**careo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *to be free, be relieved* (of annoyance), *do without, be destitute* (26).

**cāritās**, ātis, F., *deariness, both as affection and as high price*.

**carmen**, inis, N., *song* (27).

**caro**, carnis, F., *flesh, meat*.

**Carolus**, ī, M., *Charles*.

**Carthāgo**, inis, F., *Carthage*, a city of N. Africa. [ian.

**Carthāginiēnsis**, e, *Carthagin-*

**casa**, ae, F., *cottage*.

**caseus**, ī, M., *cheese*.

**Cassandra**, ae, F., *Cassandra*.

**cassēs**, ium, M., *hunting-net*.

**Cassius**, ī, M., one of the conspirators against Cæsar.

**castanea**, ae, F., *chestnut*.

**castellum**, ī, N., *fort*.

**castra**, ōrum, N. pl., *camp*.

**castrēnsis**, e, *of the camp*.

**cāsus**, ūs, M., *downfall, chance, accident* (**cado**).

**catellus**, ī, M., *little puppy*.

**catēna**, ae, F., *chain*.

**Catilina**, ae, M., *Catiline*.

**Cato**, ōnis, M., a Roman name.

**catulus**, ī, M., *whelp, puppy*.

**caula**, ae, F., *a sheep-fold, stall*.

**causa**, ae, F., *cause, motive*; **causā**, *for the sake of*.

**caveo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, cāvī, cautum, *to beware*; *to be on one's guard*;

**cave**, with pres. subj. (used in prohibitions), *don't*.

**cecidī**, see **cado**.

**cecidī**, see **caedo**.

**cecinī**, see **cano**.

**cēdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēssī, cēssum, *move, move away, yield, retire, resign, be inferior*.

**celeber**, bris, bre, *thronged, celebrated, numerous*.

**celebro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to throng, celebrate*.

**celer**, eris, ere, *swift*.

celeritās, ātis, F., *swiftness*.  
 celeriter, *swiftly*.  
 cēlo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum (with two acc.), *hide, cover* (2).  
 celsus, a, um, *lofty* (10).  
 cēna, ae, F., *dinner* (36).  
 cēno,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *dine, sup.*  
 cēnseo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, suī, sum, *estimate, reckon* (92).  
 cēnsor, ōris, M., *censor* (a Roman magistrate).  
 cēnsus, ūs, M., *census*, a register and valuation of citizens.  
 centēsimus, a, um, *hundredth*.  
 centum, a *hundred*.  
 cēra, ae, F., *wax*; pl., *wax tablets* (for writing).  
 Cerēs, eris, F., *Ceres*, goddess of grain and harvest.  
 cēreus, a, um, *waxen*.  
 cerno,<sup>3</sup> ere, crēvī, crētum or certum, *distinguish, descry, decide*.  
 certāmen, inis, N., *contest, rivalry*.  
 certātum, *emulously*.  
 certē, *surely, at any rate*.  
 certiōrem facere, *to inform one*.  
 certō, *certainly*.  
 certo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *decide, vie, strive, contend* (90).  
 certum est, *it is resolved*.  
 certus, a, um (part. of cerno), *decided, certain, sure, resolved*.  
 cervix, icis (F.; generally plur.), *neck, shoulders*.  
 cervus, ī, M., *stag*.  
 cēspes, itis, M., *turf*.  
 cēssō,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *cease*.  
 [cēterus], a, um (masc. sing. not used), *other, the rest*.  
 Chrēsippus, ī, M., *Chrysippus*, a Stoic philosopher.  
 cibus, ī, M., *food* (36).  
 cicāda, ae, F., *tree-locust, katydid*.  
 Cicero, ōnis, M., *Cicero*.  
 cicōnia, ae, F., *stork*.  
 cieo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, cīvī, citum, *to rouse, stir*.  
 Cinna, ae, M., a Roman name.  
 circā, *about, around* (acc.).

circiter, (adv. or prep.), *about*.  
 circum-aro,<sup>1</sup> *to plough around*.  
 circumcīdo,<sup>3</sup> ere, cidī, cīsum, *to cut or trim around*.  
 circumcīsus, a, um, *cut off all around*.  
 circumdo,<sup>1</sup> dāre, dedī, dātum, *to put round*.  
 circum-fero, ferre, tulī, lātum, *to cast around*.  
 circumplico,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *fold or wrap round, surround*.  
 circumsedeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, sedī, *to sit round, besiege*.  
 circumspecto,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to look round upon*.  
 circus, ī, M., *circus* (for exhibitions, races, &c.).  
 citātus, a, um, *hastening, stirred*.  
 cīvilis, e, *of a citizen, civil*.  
 cīvis, is, C., *citizen*; — meus, *my fellow-citizen*.  
 cīvitās, ātis, F., *city, state* (as organized commonwealth: 98).  
 clādēs, is, F., *massacre, loss* (24).  
 clāmito,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to shout, call* (freq. of clāmo<sup>1</sup>).  
 clāmor, ōris, M., *shout, scream, cry* (97). [loud].  
 clārus, a, um, *bright, famous*.  
 clāssicum, ī, N., *trumpet-signal*.  
 classis, is, F., *fleet*.  
 Claudius, ī, M., *Claudius*, a Roman family name.  
 claudus, a, um, *lame*.  
 clēmēns, tis, *merciful, gentle*.  
 clēmēntia, ae, F., *mercy*.  
 cliēns, tis, C., *client, dependant*.  
 clipeus, ī, M., *shield* (28).  
 cloāca, ae, F., *drain, sewer*.  
 Clusīnus, a, um, *of Clusium*.  
 Cn. for Gnaeus or Cneius.  
 coactus, a, um (part. of cōgo), *compelled, gathered*.  
 cochlea, ae, F., *snail*.  
 Cocles, itis, M., a surname of Horatius ("one-eyed").  
 coctilis, e, *baked*.  
 coepī, def. (§ 38, 1. a), *I began*.  
 coērcēo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, cuī, citum, *compel, restrain* (arceo).

coetus, ūs, M., *assembly*.  
 cōgito,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to think, reflect*.  
 cognātio, ōnis, F., *relationship (by blood)*.  
 cognōmen, inis, N., *surname, family name (74)*.  
 cognosco,<sup>3</sup> ere, nōvī, nitum, *learn, recognize, know*.  
 cōgo,<sup>3</sup> ere, cōgī, coactum, *to gather, compel (co, ago)*.  
 cohortor,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *to encourage, exhort*.  
 collēga, ae, M., *colleague*.  
 collego (or colligo),<sup>3</sup> ere, lēgī, lectum, *gather, collect*.  
 colligo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to bind together*.  
 collis, is, M., *hill*.  
 collum, ī, N., *neck*.  
 colo,<sup>3</sup> ere, coluī, cultum, *cherish, till, worship*.  
 colōnus, ī, M., *farmer, colonist*.  
 color, ōris, M., *color*.  
 columba, ae, F., *dove*.  
 coma, ae, F., *hair*; pl. (poetically), *foliage*.  
 comes, itis, C., *companion (29)*.  
 comētēs, ae, M., *comet*.  
 cōmis, e, *kind, courteous (41)*.  
 comitium, ī, N., *place of gathering*; plur., *election*.  
 commemoro,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *call to mind, relate, recount*.  
 commendo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to put in charge, intrust*.  
 commigro,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to migrate, remove*.  
 commilitis, ōnis, M., *fellow-soldier, comrade*.  
 commode, *conveniently*.  
 commoditās, ātis, F., *convenience, advantage, fitness*.  
 commodum, ī, N., *convenience, advantage, profit*.  
 commoveo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move, disturb (violently), stir*.  
 commūnis, e, *common*.  
 communitās, ātis, F., *community (con, munus)*.  
 compāreo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, *to appear*.

comparo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to get together, procure, compare*.  
 compēnsō,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to recompense, repay, compensate*.  
 compes, edis, F., *fetter*.  
 complector,<sup>3</sup> tī, plexus, *embrace*.  
 compleo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, ēvī, ētum, *to fill*.  
 complētus, a, um, *full, complete*.  
 complūrēs, a or ia, *very many*.  
 compōno,<sup>3</sup> ere, posuī, positum, *to arrange, settle, put together*.  
 comprehendo,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, sum, *to seize, perceive, comprehend*.  
 comprobo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *make good, prove, verify*.  
 computo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *reckon, compute*.  
 concēdo,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēssī, cēssum, *allow, retreat, withdraw*.  
 concerpo,<sup>3</sup> [con, carpo], ere (no perf.), cerptum, *pluck, gather*.  
 concessus, ūs, M., *concession, permission*.  
 concilio,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *win, acquire, unite, conciliate*.  
 concilium, ī, N., *council*.  
 concito,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *rouse, excite (strongly)*.  
 conclāmo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *cry aloud*.  
 conclūdo,<sup>3</sup> [con, claudio], ere, clūsī, clūsum, *to shut up*.  
 conclūsus, a, um (part. of last), *shut up*.  
 concordia, ae, F., *concord, harmony*.  
 concors, cordis, *harmonious, friendly (cor)*.  
 concursus, ūs, M., *concourse, a running together*.  
 concutio,<sup>3</sup> [con, quatio], ere, cussī, cussum, *shake, clash*.  
 condemno,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *condemn*.  
 condicio (conditio), ōnis, F., *condition, terms*.  
 condimentum, ī, N., *seasoning, sauce*.  
 condio,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī (ii), itum, *to season, embellish*.

**condo**,<sup>3</sup> *dere, didī, ditum, put together, found, build, put to rest, get in, cure (of crops).*  
**condocefactus**, a, um, *trained, tamed.* [together, hire.  
**condūco**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, xī, ctum, bring*  
**cōnfectus**, a, um (part. of **cōnficio**), *wrought, reduced.*  
**cōnfero**, *ferre, tulī, lātum (collātum), to bring together, compare, betake (one's self), put upon, convey.*  
**cōnfertus**, a, um, *full, crowded.*  
**cōnficio**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, fēcī, fectum, make thoroughly, finish, prepare.*  
**cōnfirmo**,<sup>1</sup> *āre, āvī, ātum, confirm, strengthen, affirm.*  
**cōnfiteor**,<sup>2</sup> *ērī, fessus [fateor], confess, acknowledge, admit.*  
**cōnfluo**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, fluxī, flow together, throng.*  
**cōnfringo**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, frēgī, fractum, break in pieces [frango].*  
**cōnflugio**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, fugī, to flee for refuge.*  
**congrego**,<sup>1</sup> *āre, āvī, ātum [grex], gather in flocks, congregate.*  
**conjicio** (**cōnicio**),<sup>3</sup> *ere, jēcī, jectum, to cast, to hurl.*  
**conjunctio**, ōnis, F., *a joining, companionship.*  
**conjunctus**, a, um, *joined.*  
**conjungo**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, junxī, junctum, to join closely.*  
**conjunx** (or **conjux**), *jugis, c., partner, i.e. husband or wife.*  
**conjūrātio**, ōnis, F., *conspiracy.*  
**conjūrātus**, ī, M., *conspirator.*  
**conjūro**,<sup>1</sup> *āre, āvī, ātum, to conspire (con; jūro, swear).*  
**conligo**,<sup>1</sup> *āre, āvī, ātum, to bind, fasten together (= colligo<sup>1</sup>).*  
**conloquor**,<sup>3</sup> *quī, locūtus, to converse.*  
**cōnor**,<sup>1</sup> *ārī, ātus, try, endeavor, attempt (18).*  
**conquiro** [con; quaero],<sup>3</sup> *ere, quīsivī, quisītum, to inquire, search out.*  
**cōnscientia**, ae, F., *consciousness, conscience.*

**cōnscio**,<sup>4</sup> *īre, to be conscious.*  
**cōnsecro**,<sup>1</sup> *āre, āvī, ātum, consecrate (con; sacer).*  
**cōnscius**, a, um, *conscious.*  
**cōnsenesco**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, senuī, to grow old (con; senex).*  
**cōnsēnsus**, ūs, M., *consent, fellow-feeling (con; sentio).*  
**cōnsequor**,<sup>3</sup> *sequī, secūtus, to follow close, overtake (95).*  
**cōnservātio**, ōnis, F., *preservation (con; servo<sup>1</sup>).*  
**cōnsessus**, ūs, M., *meeting, assembly (con; sedeo<sup>2</sup>).*  
**cōnsidero**,<sup>1</sup> *āre, āvī, ātum, to consider, ponder.*  
**cōnsido**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, sēdī, sessum, to sit down (con; sideo<sup>3</sup>).*  
**cōnsilium**, ī, N., *counsel, plan, wise counsel, wisdom (31).*  
**cōnsimilis**, e, *very like, just like.*  
**cōnsisto**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, stitī, stitum, to stand fast, halt, stay.*  
**cōnsocio**,<sup>1</sup> *āre, āvī, ātum, to associate with, join, connect.*  
**cōnsolātio**, ōnis, F., *consolation.*  
**cōnspectus**, ūs, M., *sight, view.*  
**cōnspicio**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, spexī, spectrum, to view, behold.*  
**cōnspicor**,<sup>1</sup> *ārī, ātus, to get sight of.*  
**cōnstāntia**, ae, F., *firmness.*  
**cōnstituo**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, stituī, ūtum, to establish, resolve [statuo].*  
**cōnstō**,<sup>1</sup> *stāre, stitī, stātum, consist, be established; cōnstat, it is settled (fact or resolve).*  
**cōnstringo**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, strinxī, strictum, to bind fast.*  
**cōnsuesco**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, suēvī, suētum, become accustomed.*  
**cōnsuētūdo**, inis, F., *custom (70).*  
**cōnsul**, ulis, M., *consul (chief executive officer of Rome).*  
**cōnsulātus**, ūs, M., *consulship.*  
**cōnsulo**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, uī, sultum, to consult (acc.), consult for (dat.).*  
**cōnsultō**, *on purpose.*  
**cōnsultum**, ī, N., *counsel.*  
**cōnsurgo**,<sup>3</sup> *ere, surrexī, surrectum, to rise up, revolt.*



**contemno**,<sup>3</sup> ere, temp̄sī, temp-  
tum, *to despise.*

**contemptus**, ūs, M., *contempt, scorn.*

**contendo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, tum, *stretch towards, strive, contend*; con-  
tendo ab, *urge upon.*

**contentio**, ōnis, F., *strife, con-  
test.*

**contero**,<sup>3</sup> ere, trīvī, trītum, *to  
wear away, bruise, waste.*

**terrītus**, a, um, *terrified.*

**contexo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, texuī, textum,  
*weave together.*

**conticesco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ticuī, *to grow  
silent* (incept. of taceo<sup>2</sup>).

**continēns**, tis (part. of con-  
tineo), *continuous*; as a noun,  
*the continent.*

**contineo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, continuī, tentum  
[con; teneo], *hold together,  
contain, keep.*

**contingo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, tigī, tactum [tan-  
go], *to touch, befall*; contin-  
git, *it happens* (4).

**continuō**, *immediately.*

**continuus**, a, um, *constant, in  
succession.*

**contrā**, as prep. (acc.), *against,  
over against*; as adv., *on the  
other hand.*

**contraho**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to draw  
together, contract, restrain.*

**contrārius**, a, um, *contrary.*

**contremisco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, tremuī, *to be  
seized with trembling.*

**contulī**, see conféro.

**convenio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, vēnī, ventum,  
*to meet, gather.*

**convetus**, ūs, M., *meeting, con-  
course.*

**converto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, tī, sum, *turn.*

**convīva**, ae, C., *fellow-guest,  
companion* (at table).

**convīvium**, ī, N., *feast, banquet.*

**convoco**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *call  
together.*

**cōpia**, ae, F., *abundance, oppor-  
tunity* (78); plural, *forces.*

**cōpiōsus**, a, um, *abounding in  
resources.*

**coquo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, coxī, coctum, *to cook.*

**cōr**, cordis, N., *heart.*

**cōram**, *openly*; (with abl.), *in the  
presence of.*

**Corinthus**, a, um, *Corinthian.*

**Corinthus**, ī, F., *Corinth, a city  
of Greece.*

**Cornēlia**, ae, F., a Roman matron,  
daughter of Scipio and mother  
of Gracchus.

**cornicen**, cinis, M. [cornu; cano],  
*horn-blower.*

**cornū**, ūs (ū), N., *horn.*

**corpus**, ōris, N., *body.*

**corripio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ripuī, reptum, *to  
seize* (25).

**corruptus**, a, um (part. of cor-  
rumpto), *spoiled, corrupt.*

**cortex**, icis, M. or F., *bark, hull.*

**corvus**, ī, M., *a crow.*

**crās**, *to-morrow.*

**crāstinus**, a, um, *belonging to  
the morrow*; crastinus (sc.  
dies), ī, M., *the morrow.*

**crēber**, bra, brum, *thick, close,  
frequent.*

**crēbresco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, bruī or buī,  
*grow dense, thicken, increase.*

**crēdo**,<sup>3</sup> dere, didī, ditum, *to give  
in trust, trust, believe* (92).

**creo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to create,  
elect.* [din.]

**crepitus**, ūs, M., *noise* (rattling),

**Crēs**, **Crētis**, C., *Cretan.*

**creresco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, crēvī, crētum, *grow,  
increase.*

**Crēta**, ae, F., *Crete, an island.*

**crēta**, ae, F., *chalk.*

**crētāceus**, a, um, *of chalk.*

**Crētēnsis**, e, *belonging to Crete.*

**crīminor**, āri, ātus, *to accuse.*

**crīnis**, is, M., *hair.*

**crōcio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, *to croak* (as a raven).

**crocodīlus**, ī, M., *crocodile.*

**crucio**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *torture,  
torture.*

**crūdēlis**, e, *bloody, cruel* (93).

**crūdēlitās**, ātis, F., *cruelty.*

**cruentus**, a, um, *bloody.*

**cruor**, ōris, M., *blood* (when it is  
shed).

crūs, crūris, N., *leg.*  
 crux, crucis, F., *cross.*  
 ‡CUB, *to lie* (-cumbo<sup>3</sup>).  
 cubiculum, ī, N., *chamber.*  
 cucūlo,<sup>1</sup> āre, *to call "cuckoo."*  
 cucūlus, ī, M., *a cuckoo.*  
 culpa, ae, F., *fault* (32).  
 culpo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to blame.*  
 cultrix, icis, F. [colo], *she that tills, &c.*  
 cultūra, ae, F., *cultivation.*  
 cultus, ūs, M., *tillage, worship, mode of living, attention.*  
 cum (prep. abl.), *with.*  
 cum (adv.), *when; cum primum, as soon as; cum . . tum, while . . so also; both . . and.*  
 cūnābula, ōrum, N., *cradle.*  
 cūnae, ārum, F., *cradle.*  
 cunctatio, ōnis, F., *delay.*  
 cunctator, ōris, M., *delayer.*  
 cunctor,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *to delay.*  
 cunctus, a, um, *all* (77: more often in the plural).  
 cuniculus, ī, M., *rabbit.*  
 cupiditās, ātis, F., *eager desire, cupidity.*  
 cupidō, inis, F., *desire.*  
 cupidus, a, um, *eager, desirous, greedy* (20).  
 cupio,<sup>3</sup> ere, ivī, itum, *desire* (33).  
 cūr, why.  
 cūra, ae, F., *care, anxiety* (38).  
 cūratio, ōnis, F., *care, treatment.*  
 Curēs, ium, M., F., *a Sabine town.*  
 cūria, ae, F., *senate-house.*  
 cūro,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *provide, take care of.*  
 curro,<sup>3</sup> ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run.*  
 currus, ūs, M., *chariot, car.*  
 cursus, ūs, M., *running, course, race, voyage.*  
 curvus, a, um, *crooked, bent.*  
 cūstodia, ae, F., *custody, guard.*  
 cūstodio,<sup>4</sup> ire, ivī, itum, *guard.*  
 cūstōs, ōdis, M., *guard, guard-ian.*  
 cygnus, ī, M., *a swan.*  
 cymba, ae, F., *a boat* (73).  
 Cyrus, ī, M., *Cyrus, a Persian king.*

## D.

damno,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *condemn.*  
 dē (abl.), *down from, of, about* (1).  
 dea, ae, F., *goddess* (p. 4, a).  
 dēbeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *to owe, ought.*  
 dēbilis, e, *weak, feeble.*  
 dēcēdo,<sup>3</sup> ere, cessī, cessum, *to withdraw, retreat* (3).  
 decem, ten.  
 decemvir, virī, M., *decemvir* (one of a board of ten).  
 dēcerno,<sup>3</sup> ere, crēvī, crētum, *to decree.*  
 dēcero,<sup>3</sup> ere, psī, ptum, *to pluck, gather* [carpo].  
 dēcerto,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to contend, strive* (90).  
 decet,<sup>2</sup> uit, *it is becoming.*  
 dēcido,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, *to fall off, sail* [cado].  
 decimus, a, um, *tenth.*  
 dēclāro,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *make clear, show, declare.*  
 dēclīno,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to bend aside, avoid.*  
 decor, ōris, M., *beauty, grace.*  
 decōrus, a, um, *beautiful, becoming* (91); *ad decōrum, neatly.*  
 dēcresco,<sup>3</sup> ere, crēvī, crētum, *to decrease.*  
 dēcurre,<sup>3</sup> ere, currī or cucurrī, cursum, *run down, advance.*  
 decus, oris, N., *ornament, honor, dignity* (46).  
 dēdecet, uit, *it is unbecoming.*  
 dēdecus, oris, N., *dishonor.*  
 dēdo,<sup>3</sup> didī, dītum, *to surrender.*  
 dēdūco,<sup>3</sup> xī, ctum, *to lead away.*  
 dēfectio, ōnis, F., *revolt, eclipse.*  
 dēfendo,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, sum, *to defend.*  
 dēfēnsor, ōris, M., *defender.*  
 dēflecto,<sup>3</sup> ere, flexī, flexum, *bend, turn off* (down or away).  
 deinde, then.  
 dējicio (dēcicio),<sup>3</sup> ere, jēcī, jectum, *to cast down; dejectus, downcast.*  
 dēlectatio, ōnis, F., *delight.*

**dēlecto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *delight, please.*

**dēlectus**, ūs, M., *a levy of troops.*

**dēleo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, ēvī, ētum, *blot out, destroy, annihilate.*

**dēlicātus**, a, um, *delicate, effeminate, dainty.*

**dēlictum**, ī, N., *fault (32).*

**dēlitesco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, lituī, *to lie hid (lateo).*

**Dēlos**, ī, F., *an island of the Aegean, sacred to Apollo.*

**dēmentia**, ae, F., *madness, folly.*

**dēmergo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, *to plunge, (trans.); pass., to dive, sink.*

**dēmetior**,<sup>4</sup> īrī, mēnsus, *to measure out (sparingly).*

**dēmeto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, messuī, messum, *to reap, mow, cut off.*

**dēmigro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to remove.*

**Dēmostenēs**, is, M., *an orator of Athens.*

**dēmum**, *at length, in short.*

**dēnique**, *at length, in short.*

**dēns**, dentis, M., *tooth, tusk.*

**dēnsus**, a, um, *crowded, dense, close.* [down.

**dēpendeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre (no perf.), *hang*

**dēpendo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, sum, *to weigh out, pay.*

**dēpōno**,<sup>3</sup> ere, posuī, positum, *to lay down or aside.*

**dēposco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, poposcī, *to demand, claim, request (79).*

**dēprehendo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, sum, *to catch, seize, arrest.*

**dēpugno**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *fight (out a battle).*

**dēscendo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, sum, *to descend.*

**dēscribo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, scrīpsī, ptum, *to describe, write about, trace, draw, mark off.*

**dēsero**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dēseruī, dēsertum, *forsake, desert [sero, bind].*

**dēsiderium**, ī, N., *a longing for.*

**dēsidero**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *want, desire, feel the want of (33).*

**dēsilio**,<sup>4</sup> [de; salio], īre, siluī, sultum, *leap down.*

**dēsino**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dēsivī (dēsī), dēsī-tum, *leave off, cease.*

**dēsipio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, *to be foolish.*

**dēspēro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to despair of.*

**dēspicio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, spexī, spectrum, *to look down on, despise.*

**dēstitūtus**, a, um, *left alone.*

**dēsum**, esse, fuī, *to be wanting.*

**dēterreo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *to terrify, alarm.*

**dētrimentum**, ī, N., *loss, damage (de; tero: 35).*

**dētrūdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, *to thrust away, push back.*

**deus**, ī, M., plūr. deī, diī or dī (p. 5. e), *a god, divinity.*

**dēvastō**,<sup>1</sup> āre, ātum (no perf.), *to lay waste.*

**dēversor**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *turn aside.*

**dēversōrium**, ī, N., *a resting-place, inn.*

**dēvinco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, vīcī, victum, *to conquer.*

**dexter**, tera (tra), terum (trum), *right, right hand.*

†**DIC**, say (dīco,<sup>3</sup> disco,<sup>3</sup> dico<sup>1</sup>).

**dicio**, ōnis, F., *sway, subjection.*

**dīco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *say, tell (64); imperat., dīc.*

**dictito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *keep saying, repeat.*

**didici**, see **disco**.<sup>3</sup>

**Dīdō**, ōnis (or Dīdūs), F., *Dido, queen of Carthage.*

**diēs**, diēī, M. (rarely F.), *day.*

**differo**, ferre, distulī, dilātum, *to delay, differ, defer.*

**difficilis**, e, *difficult.*

**diffugio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fūgī, *scatter, flee away.*

**diffundo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour far and wide, pour out, spread.*

**digitus**, ī, M., *finger, toe.*

**dignitās**, tātis, F., *dignity.*

**dignor**, ārī, ātus, *to deem worthy.*

**dignus**, a, um, *worthy (abl.).*

**dīlābor**,<sup>3</sup> ī, lāpsus, *fall apart, glide away.*

**diligēns**, tis, *diligent.*

**diligenter**, *diligently.*

**diligentia**, ae, F., *diligence*.  
**diligo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, lexī, lectum, *love*  
 (less strong than **amo**: 11).  
**dīmico**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī or uī, ātum, *to*  
*fight, contend* (90).  
**dīmidium**, ī, N., *half*.  
**dīmitto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, mīsī, missum, *send*  
*away, dismiss*.  
**Dīōn**, ōnis, M., *Dion*, a patriot of  
 Sicily.  
**dīrectus**, a, um (part. of **dīrigo**),  
*straight, perpendicular*.  
**dīreptio**, ōnis, F., *plundering*.  
**dīrimo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ēmī, emptum, *to*  
*divide, put asunder* [**dis, emo**].  
**dīrus**, a, um, *dreadful* (93).  
**Dīs**, Dītis, *Pluto*, god of the  
 Lower World.  
**dis** (in comp.), *apart*.  
**discēdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cessī, cessum, *de-*  
*part, pass away, cease*.  
**discepto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to dis-*  
*pute, discuss*.  
**discessus**, ūs, M., *departure,*  
*separation*.  
**discidium**, ī [**dīscindo**], N., *sep-*  
*aration, parting, quarrel*.  
**dīscindo**, ere, cidī, cissum, *to*  
*cut apart, separate, divide*.  
**disciplina**, ae, F., *system of teach-*  
*ing, discipline, training*.  
**discipulus**, ī, M., *scholar, dis-*  
*ciple*.  
**disco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, didicī, *to learn*.  
**discordia**, ae, F., *discord*.  
**discrimen**, inis, N., *decision* (by  
 conflict), *crisis, peril*.  
**discurro**,<sup>3</sup> ere, currī (cucurrī),  
 cursum, *to run about*.  
**disertus**, a, um, *eloquent* (72).  
**dispar**, paris, *unequal, unlike*.  
**disputo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to dis-*  
*pute* (think apart), *discuss,*  
*deliver an opinion*.  
**dissēnsio**, ōnis, F., *disagreement*.  
**dissentio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, sēnsī, sum, *to*  
*disagree*.  
**dissimilis**, e, *unlike*.  
**distinctē**, *distinctly*.  
**distinctus**, a, um [**distinguo**],  
*studded, marked, set-off*.

**distineo** [**teneo**<sup>2</sup>], ere, uī, ten-  
 tum, *to hold apart, divide*.  
**distinguo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, nxī, nctum, *to*  
*set-off, mark, distinguish*.  
**disto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, *to be distant or apart,*  
*to differ*.  
**dītior**, dītissimus, *richer, richest*  
 (used as compar. and superl.  
 of **dives**).  
**diū**, diūtius, diūtissimē, *long* (of  
 time), *in a long time*.  
**diūturnitās**, atis, F., *long dura-*  
*tion*.  
**diūturnus**, a, um, *long* (in time),  
*lasting, durable, long con-*  
*tinued*.  
**dīversus**, a, um, *inconsistent*.  
**dīves**, itis, *rich*.  
**dīvido**,<sup>3</sup> ere, isī, isum, *to divide*.  
**dīvīnus**, a, um, *divine, godlike,*  
*superhuman*.  
**dīvītae**, ārum, F., *riches, wealth*  
 (78).  
**do**, dāre, dēdī, dātum, *give* (37);  
 in compos., *place*.  
**doceo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, docuī, doctum, *teach,*  
*tell* (followed by two acc.).  
**doctor**, ōris, M., *teacher*.  
**doctus**, a, um, *learned, skilled*.  
**doleo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, dolui, *be painful, feel*  
*pain, grief, suffer* (with abl. of  
 that from which one suffers).  
**dolor**, ōris, M., *pain, grief* (38).  
**dolus**, ī, M., *trick, fraud, craft*.  
**domesticus**, a, um, *of the house*  
 or *family*.  
**domī** (loc.), *at home*.  
**domicilium**, ī, N., *home, resi-*  
*dence*.  
**domina**, ae, F., *queen, mistress*.  
**dominātus**, ūs, M., *dominion,*  
*tyranny*.  
**dominor**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to rule, be*  
*master or tyrant*.  
**dominus**, ī, M., *master, lord;*  
*domine* (voc.), *sir*.  
**domo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, domuī, domitum,  
*subdue, tame, break in*.  
**domus**, ūs, F. (p. 18. b), *house;*  
 domī, *at home* (39).  
**dōnec**, *until*.

**dōno**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum (§ 51, I. c),  
to give, present (37).

**dōnum**, ī, N., gift (40).

**dormio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī, ītum, to sleep.

**dōs**, dōtis (g. pl. ium), F., dowry.

**Druidēs**, um, *Druids*, the priestly class of Gaul.

**dubitatio**, ōnis, F., doubt.

**dubito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum (with an or quin), doubt; (with infin.), hesitate.

**dubius**, a, um, doubtful.

**duc**, lead (**dūco**,<sup>3</sup> **dux**).

**ducentī**, ae, a, two hundred.

**dūco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dūxī, ductum; imperat., **dūc**, to lead, hold, think.

**dulcēdo**, inis, F., charm, sweetness.

**dulcis**, e, sweet, fresh (of water).

**dum**, with indic., while; with subj. (generally), until.

**dūmētum**, ī, N., bramble-thicket.

**dūmus**, ī, M., brier, bramble.

**duo**, ae, o (see p. 7), two.

**duplico**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, double.

**dūritia**, ae, F., hardness.

**dūro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, endure, last, hold out.

**dūrus**, a, um, hard, hardy (93).

**dux**, ducis, C., leader, guide (42).

## E.

**ē** (**ex**), from, out of (I); in compos., out, completely.

**ea**, fem. of **is**; **eam**, her.

**ecquid**, what? any, at all?

**edāx**, ācis, greedy.

**ēdisco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, didicī, to learn thoroughly.

**ēditus**, a, um (part. of **ēdo**<sup>3</sup>), prominent.

**ēdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ēdidī, editum, exhibit, put forth, utter, produce.

**edo**, edere or esse, ēdī, ēsum (Gr. p. 80), eat.

**effēmino**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, debase by luxury, enfeeble [**fēmina**].

**effero**, ferre, extulī, elātum, carry out, carry away.

**efficientia**, ae, F., efficacy, potency.

**efficio**,<sup>3</sup> [**ex**; **facio**], ere, fēcī, fec-tum, make out, effect.

**effigies**, iēī, F., an image, apparition.

**effluo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, flūxī, to flow out, or away.

**effodio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fōdī, fossum, dig up or out.

**effugio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fūgī, to flee away, escape from.

**egēns**, tis (part. of **egeo**), destitute (82).

**egeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, eguī, be destitute, need (abl. or gen.).

**Egeria**, ae, F., nymph of a grotto near Rome.

**Egerius**, ī, M., a proper name.

**egēstās**, ātis, F., poverty, destitution.

**ēgī**, **ēgeram**, see **ago**.<sup>3</sup>

**ego**, meī, mihi, mē (p. 18), I.

**egomet**, I myself.

**ēgredior**,<sup>3</sup> dī, gressus, to go forth.

**ēgregius**, a, um, excellent, distinguished, unusual, fine, remarkable [**e**; **grex**].

**ējus**, eī (gen. and dat. of **is**), his, hers, &c.

**ēlātus**, a, um (part. of **effero**), carried away, uplifted.

**ēlegāns**, tis, fine, elegant.

**ēlegantia**, ae, F., elegance.

**elementum**, ī, N., beginning.

**elephāntus**, ī, M., elephant.

**ēlevo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, ātum (no perf.), disparage, make light of [**levis**].

**ēligo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ēlēgī, electum, pick out, elect, select, choose.

**ēloquēns**, eloquent (72).

**ēloquentia**, ae, F., eloquence.

**ēlūdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, to delude, mock, make game of [**lūdus**].

**ēmergo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, to emerge.

**ēmineo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, to project, be conspicuous [**e**; **maueo**].

**emo**,<sup>3</sup> ere. ēmī, emptum, buy (originally take).

**emptor**, ōris, M., purchaser.

**empturio**,<sup>4</sup> ire, I want to buy.

**ēn** (exclam.), behold! ho!

**ēnervo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *enervate, unman, enfeeble* [*nervus*].  
**enim**, *for* (following one or more words).

**Ennius**, ī, M., *Ennius*, an early poet of Rome.

**ēnsis**, is, M., *sword* (poetic).

**ēnumero**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to recount, reckon* (*numerus*).

**eō**, *thither*.

**eō . . quō** (with comparatives), *the . . the*: see § 22, 2.

**eo**, īre, īvī, itum (p. 39), *go* (43).

**Epamīnōndās**, ae, a general and statesman of Thebes.

**epistola** (ula), ae, F., *a letter*.

**epulae**, ārum, F., *banquet* (36).

**eques**, itis, M., *rider, horseman, knight*; pl., *cavalry* (*equus*).

**equester**, tris, tre, *belonging to cavalry, equestrian*.

**equidem**, *in fact, for my part* (concessive), *it is true, to be sure*.

**equitātus**, ūs, M., *cavalry*.

**equito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to ride*.

**equus**, ī, M., *horse*.

**ergā**, *towards* (acc.).

**ergō**, *therefore, then*.

**Eriphylē**, ēs, F., wife of Amphiarāus.

**ēripio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ripuī, reptum, *snatch away, remove, rescue* (*rapio*).

**erro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *wander, err, stray, mistake*.

**ērudio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī (ii), itum, *to instruct, train* (*e*; *rudis*).

**ērumpo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ērūpī, ēruptum, *to break out, burst forth, begin to flow* (verb-root RUP).

**esca**, ae, F., *food, bait*.

**esse** (see *sum*), *to be*.

**ēsurio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī (ii), itum, *to fast, be hungry* (desider. of *edo*).

**et**, *and even*; **et . . et**, *both . . and*; *on the one hand . . on the other*.

**etenim**, *for* (you see, you know).

**etiam**, *also, even, yes*.

**Etruscus**, a, um, *Etruscan*.

**eum**, *him* [*is*].

**Eurōtās**, ae, M., a river of Sparta.  
**ēvādo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, *come out, escape, pass out*.

**ēvenio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, vēnī, ventum, *to come forth, happen* (4).

**ēventus**, ūs, M., *event, result*.

**ēverto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, tī, sum, *overturn*.

**ex**, *out of, from, of, directly after, on account of, according to* (1).

**exanimo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to render lifeless* (**ex**; *anima*).

**exaudio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī (ii), itum, *hear* (at a distance), *overhear*.

**excēdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēssī, cēssum, *to go forth, withdraw*.

**excello**,<sup>3</sup> ere, uī, sum, *to excel*.

**excipio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēpī, ceptum, *to overtake, receive, welcome* (25).

**excito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to rouse, excite, stir up* (**ex**; *cieo*).

**exclāmo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *cry out, exclaim*.

**exclūdo**,<sup>3</sup> clūdere, clūsī, clūsum, *shut out, hatch* (**ex**; *claudio*).

**excūsatio**, ōnis, F., *excuse*.

**exedo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ēdī, ēsum, *eat out, consume, wear away*.

**exemplum**, ī, N., *sample, pattern, example*.

**exeo**, īre, ii, itum, *go forth* (3).

**exerceo**,<sup>2</sup> cēre, cui, citum, *keep busy, manage*; (in passive), *train one's self* (**ex**; *arceo*).

**exercitatio**, ōnis, F., *exercise*.

**exercitus**, ūs, M., *army* (5).

**exēsus**, see *exedo*.

**exigo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ēgī, actum, *to drive out* (**ex**; *ago*).

**exiguus**, a, um, *small, mean, scanty*.

**exilis**, e, *slender, feeble* (44).

**exīstimatio**, ōnis, F., *estimate, judgment*.

**exīstimo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *think, deem, reckon* (*aestimo*: 92).

**existo**, see *exsisto*.

**exitium**, ī, N., *destruction, ruin* (**ex**; *eo*: lit., *a going out*).

**exordium**, ī, N., *the beginning, origin* (**ex**, *ordior*).

**exorior**,<sup>4</sup> īrī, ortus, *arise*.

**expeditus**, a, um, *unencumbered, rapid* (**ex**; **pes** = *foot-free*).  
**expello**,<sup>3</sup> ere, expulsi, expulsum, *to drive out, expel*.  
**expergēfacio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fēcī, factum, *to rouse, awaken*.  
**expergiscor**,<sup>3</sup> cī, experrectus, *to rouse one's self, wake*.  
**experimentum**, ī, M., *trial, experiment*.  
**experior**,<sup>4</sup> īrī, expertus, *to try, prove, test*.  
**expers**, tis, *without a share, destitute* (**ex**; **pars**).  
**expeto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, petīvī (ii), petītum, *to seek, claim* (79).  
**explico**,<sup>1</sup> āre, uī, itum (or āvī, ātum), *to unfold, explain*.  
**explōrātor**, ōris, M., *searcher, scout*.  
**exprimo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, pressī, pressum, *to press out, express* (**premo**).  
**exprōmo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, mpsī, mptum, *to take out, exhibit, declare*.  
**expugno**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to take by siege, storm, conquer*.  
**expulsor**, ōris, M., *expeller*.  
**expulsus**, see **expello**<sup>3</sup>.  
**exsilio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, siluī, sultum, *to leap forth, start up* (**salio**).  
**exsilium**, ī, N., *exile, banishment* (**exsul**).  
**exsisto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, stitī, stitum, *arise, appear, exist* (**sisto**, STA).  
**exspecto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *look out for, expect, wait*.  
**exstinguo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, stinxī, nctum, *to extinguish, destroy, kill*.  
**exsto**,<sup>1</sup> stāre (no perf. or sup.), *stand forth, rise*.  
**exsul**, ulis, C., *an exile*.  
**extemplō**, *instantly*.  
**externus**, a, um, *foreign*; as a noun, *stranger*.  
**extrā** (acc.), *outside of, beyond*.  
**extraho**,<sup>3</sup> ere, traxī, tractum, *draw out, drag*.  
**extrēmus**, a, um, *last*; **extrēma insula**, *the end of the island*.

F.

†FA, say (**for**,<sup>1</sup> **fātum**).  
**fabricārier** = **fabricārī**, old inf. of  
**fabricor**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *manufacture, fabricate, forge*.  
**fābula**, ae, F., *fable, tale* (**for**).  
†FAC, make, do (**facio**).<sup>3</sup>  
**facesso**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ī, itum, *to do eagerly*; **facesso negotium**, *bring trouble upon* (dat.).  
**facētia**, ārum, F., *wit, fun*.  
**facētus**, a, um, *elegant, funny*.  
**facile**, *easily*.  
**facilis**, e, *easy*.  
**facinus**, oris, N., *act, crime* (of violence: 32).  
**facio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fēcī, factum, *make, do*; imperat., **fac**; pass., **fio**.  
**facultās**, ātis, F., *opportunity, ability* (88).  
**fāgus**, ī, F., *beech-tree*.  
**fallāx**, ācis, *treacherous, deceitful*.  
**fallo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fefellī, falsum, *cheat, deceive, disappoint* (45).  
**falsō**, *falsely*.  
**falsus**, a, um (part. of **fallo**), *deceived, false*.  
**falx**, falcis, F., *sickle, pruning-knife*.  
**fāma**, ae, F., *common talk, report, fame* (46).  
**famēs**, is, F., *hunger, famine*.  
**familia**, ae, F., *household, family*, especially the slaves (**famulus**).  
**familiāris**, e, *belonging to a family, familiar*; (noun), *friend*.  
**fasciculus**, ī, M., *bundle, faggot*.  
**fateor**,<sup>2</sup> ērī, fassus, *to confess*.  
**fatigo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to weary, distress*.  
**fātum**, ī, N., *fate, destiny*.  
**faucēs**, ium, F., *jaws, throat, passage* (into any thing).  
**fautor**, ōris, M., *favorer, supporter*.  
**faveo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, fāvī, fautum, *to favor* (dat.).

**fax**, facis, F., *torch, firebrand*.  
**fēcundus**, a, um, *fertile, productive, prolific*.  
**fēlis** (or **fēlēs**), is, C., *cat*.  
**fēlix**, īcis, *happy, fortunate, of good omen* (47).  
**fēmina**, ae, F., *woman, female* (root FE: "the producer").  
**fenestra**, ae, F., *window*.  
**fēnus**, oris, N., *interest, usury, profit* (root FE, in *fetus*).  
**fera**, ae, F., *wild creature, wild animal or beast* (14).  
**ferāx**, ācis, *fertile, productive*.  
**ferē**, *almost, for the most part, about*.  
**ferēs**, tis, *bearing, bringing*.  
**fēriae**, ārum, F., *holidays*.  
**ferio**<sup>4</sup> (no perf. or sup.), *to strike*.  
**feritās**, ātis, F., *wildness, fierceness*.  
**fermē**, *nearly, almost, about*.  
**fero**, ferre, tulī, lātum (p. 39); *bear, carry, tell; praē se ferre, to show, exhibit*.  
**ferōx**, ōcis, *fierce, cruel* (93).  
**ferreus**, a, um, *of iron*.  
**ferrum**, ī, N., *iron*.  
**fertilis**, e, *fertile*.  
**fertilitās**, ātis, F., *fertility*.  
**ferus**, a, um, *wild, fierce* (93).  
**ferveo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, buī, *to glow, burn, be hot*.  
**fessus**, a, um, *weary*.  
**festīno**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to hasten*.  
**festus**, a, um, *festal*. [*prolific*.  
**fētus**, a, um, *producing, full*.  
**†FID**, *split* (**fīndo**,<sup>3</sup> **fissio**).  
**fīdēlis**, e, *faithful*.  
**Fīdēnās**, ātis, of *Fīdenāe*.  
**fīdēs**, is, F., *string; plur., lyre*.  
**fīdēs**, eī, F., *faith*.  
**fīdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fīsus, *to trust* (dat.).  
**fīdus**, a, um, *faithful*.  
**†FIG**, *shape* (**fīngo**,<sup>3</sup> **fictilis**).  
**fīgūra**, ae, F., *figure, shape*.  
**fīgūro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *fashion, shape*.  
**fīlia**, ae, F. (see p. 4, a), *daughter*.  
**fīliola**, ae, F., *little daughter*.  
**fīliolus**, ī, M., *little son*.

**fīlius**, ī, M., *son; voc., fīli*.  
**fīndo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fīdī, fīssum, *to split, divide, separate*.  
**fīngo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fīnxī, fīctum, *fashion, form, imagine* (root FIG).  
**fīnio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī (īī), ītum, *to limit, bound, fix*.  
**fīnis**, is, M., *end; plur., bounds, limits, territory* (48).  
**fīnitimus**, a, um, *neighboring*.  
**fīo**, fīerī, factus, *become, be made, be done* (used as passive of **facio**:<sup>3</sup> p. 39).  
**fīrmus**, a, um, *firm, steady*.  
**fīssio**, ōnis, F., *cleft, cleaving*.  
**fīstula**, ae, F., *pipe, reed, flute*.  
**fīagrāns**, tis, *blazing*.  
**fīāmen**, inis, N., *blast of wind*.  
**fīamma**, ae, F., *blaze, flame*.  
**fīāvesco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, *to grow yellow*.  
**fīāvus**, a, um, *yellow*.  
**fīecto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, xum, *to bend, turn*.  
**fīexuōsus**, a, um, *crooked, bending*.  
**fīōrēs**, tis, *flourishing*.  
**fīōreo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, fīōruī, *to flourish, bloom* (flos).  
**fīōresco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, *begin to bloom*.  
**fīōs**, fīōris, M., *flower*.  
**†FLU**, flow (**fīuo**,<sup>3</sup> **fīumen**).  
**fīuctus**, ūs, M., *wave, flood*.  
**fīūmen**, inis, N., *flowing water, stream, river* (49).  
**†FOD**, dig (**fōdio**,<sup>3</sup> **fōssa**).  
**fīuo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fīuxī, fīuxum, *flow*.  
**fīocus**, ī, M., *fire-pan, brazier*.  
**fīocus**, ī, M., *fire-place, hearth*.  
**fōdio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fōdī, fōssum, *to dig, pick*.  
**fōedus**, eris, N., *a treaty, league*.  
**fōedus**, a, um, *foul, disgraceful*.  
**fōlium**, ī, N., *leaf*.  
**fōns**, fontis, M., *spring, fountain*.  
**fōre**, *will be* (fut. inf. of **esse**).  
**fōrma**, ae, F., *inward form* (organization), *form, shape*.  
**fōrmīca**, ae, F., *ant*.  
**fōrmīdo**, inis, F., *dread, terror*.  
**fōrmīdolōsus**, a, um, *formidable*.  
**fōrmōsus**, a, um, *beautiful, shapely* (91).



**formula**, ae, F., *little model, pattern, rule, writ* (legal).

**fortis**, e, *sturdy, strong, brave, valiant* (23).

**fortiter**, *bravely*.

**fortitūdo**, inis, F., *bravery, courage, fortitude*.

**fortūna**, ae, F., *fortune*.

**fortūnātus**, a, um, *fortunate* (47).

**forum**, ī, N., *forum* (public square).

**fossa**, ae, F., *ditch, trench* (FOD).  
**foveo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, fōvi, fōtum, *warm, fondle, cherish, brood over*.

‡FRAG, *break* (**frango**,<sup>3</sup> **fragor**).

**fragilis**, e, *frail, easily broken*.

**fragor**, ōris, M., *crash, crashing noise* (97).

**frango**,<sup>3</sup> ere, frēgī, *fractum, break*.

**frāter**, tris, M., *brother*.

**fraudo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to cheat, deprive* (45).

**frēno**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to check, curb*.

**fretum**, ī, N., *strait, a narrow sea* (67).

**frigidus**, a, um, *cold*.

**frigus**, oris, N., *cold*.

**frōns**, dis, F., *leaf*.

**frōns**, tis, F., *brow, forehead*.

‡FRU, *enjoy* (**fruor**,<sup>3</sup> **fruges**).

**fructuōsus**, a, um, *fruitful, profitable*.

**fructus**, tūs, M., *fruit* (94), *fruits* (generally), *profit*.

**frūgēs**, um, F., *grain, produce*.

**frūgī** (a dat. used as indecl. adj.), *good, honest, thrifty*.

**frūgifer**, fera, ferum, *productive*.

**frūmentum**, ī, N., *grain* (94).

**fruor**,<sup>3</sup> ī, *fructus. enjoy* (abl.).

**frustrā**, *in vain*.

**frustror**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *to deceive, disappoint, elude* (45).

**frustum**, ī, N., *piece, fragment*.

‡FUD, *pour* (**fundo**,<sup>3</sup> **fusum**).

**fui**, see **sum**.

**fugio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fūgī, itum, *to flee*.

**fugo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to drive, put to flight*.

**fulgeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, fulsī, *to shine, glow*.

**fulgur**, uris, N., *lightning* (75).

**fulmen**, inis, N., *thunderbolt, flash of lightning* (75).

**fūmo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, *to smoke*.

**funditus**, *utterly, from the bottom*.

**fundo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fūdī, fūsum, *to pour, pour forth*.

**fundus**, ī, M., *ground, estate*.

**fūnestus**, a, um, *fatal*.

**fungor**,<sup>3</sup> ī, *functus, to fulfil, perform* (abl.).

**fūr**, fūris, M., *thief*.

**furor**, ōris, M., *madness* (raving), *rage* (mad).

**fūrōr**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *steal* (by craft).

**furtim** (adv.), *by stealth*.

**fustis**, is, M., *club*.

**fūsus**, a, um [**fundo**], *poured forth, routed*.

**futūrus**, a, um [**sum**], *about to be*.

## G.

**Gāius**, **Caius**, M., a proper name, e.g., C. Laelius (§ 15).

**galea**, ae, F., *helmet*.

**Gallia**, ae, F., *Gaul*, including France, with part of Belgium and Switzerland.

**Gallicus**, a, um, *of Gaul, Gallic*.

**gallīna**, ae, F., *a hen*.

**Gallus**, ī, M., *a Gaul*.

**gallus**, ī, M., *a cock*.

**gannio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, *to snarl, yelp*.

**garrulus**, a, um, *chattering*.

**gaudeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, gāvīsus, *to rejoice*.

**gelū**, ūs, N., *frost, cold*.

**geminus**, a, um, *twin*.

**gemma**, ae, F., *a bud, gem, jewel*.

**gemitus**, ūs, M., *groan, sigh*.

**gemmātus**, a, um, *jewelled*.

‡GEN, *produce* (gnascor, gigno).

**gener**, erī, M., *son-in-law*.

**genero**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to generate, produce*.

**genetrīx**, trīcis, F., *mother*.

**genitus**, a, um (**gigno**<sup>3</sup>), *born*.

**gēns**, gentis, F., *race, nation* (50).

**genū**, ūs, N., *knee*.

**genus**, eris, N., *race, family, descent, kind, class* (50).

**Germānus**, a, um, *German*.

**gero**,<sup>3</sup> ere, gessī, gestum, *carry, carry on, bear, wear, do* [GES].

**gestus**, ūs, M., *gesture, bearing; agere gestūs, make motions*.

**gigno**,<sup>3</sup> ere, genuī, genitum, *produce* (verb-root GEN : gi-geno).

**glaciālis**, e, *icy*.

**glaciēs**, ēī, F., *ice*.

**gladiātor**, ōris, M., *swordsman, gladiator*.

**gladiolus**, ī, M., *little sword*.

**gladius**, ī, M., *sword* (16).

**glæba**, ae, F., *sod, turf* (of untilled ground).

**glōria**, ae, F., *glory* (46).

**glōrior**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *glory, glory in* (abl.), *boast* (with accus. of a neuter pronoun).

†**GNO**, *know* (gnosco, gnovi).

**Gracchus**, ī, M., the name of two brothers, Tiberius and Caius, leaders of the people's party in Rome.

**gradus**, ūs, M., *step, stride*.

**Graecia**, ae, F., *Greece*.

**Graecus**, a, um, *Greek*; Graecī, pl., *the Greeks*.

**grāmen**, inis, N., *grass*.

**grandis**, e, *large, big, tall* (65); — natu, *old*.

**grando**, inis, F., *hail*.

**grassor**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to roam, advance upon*.

**grātia**, ae, F., *favor, influence, good will* (88); gratiā (with gen.), *for the sake of*; plur., *thanks*.

**grātiōsus**, a, um, *favorite, popular*.

**grātulātiō**, ōnis, F., *congratulation*.

**grātus**, a, um, *pleasing*.

**gravātē**, *reluctantly*.

**gravis**, e, *heavy, weighty, respectable, influential, oppressive*.

**graviter**, *heavily, severely*.

**grex**, gregis, M., *flock, herd* (51).

**grunnio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī, ītum, *to grunt*.

**guberno**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *steer, govern*.

**gusto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to taste*.

**gymnasium**, ī, N., *gymnasium*.

H. . S

**habeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *hold, have, keep, imply, have in itself, consider, have for*; bene se habet, *that is right*.

**habilis**, e, *handy*.

**habito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *inhabit, live*.

**habitus**, ūs, M., *habit, suit, bearing*.

**haereo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, sī, sum, *to cling, stick*.

**haesito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to hesitate* (intens. of haereo).

**hāmus**, ī, M., *link, hook*.

**Hannibal**, alis, M., *Hannibal, a Carthaginian general*.

**hasta**, ae, F., *spear* (16).

**haud**, *not* (modifying only one word).

**haurio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, sī, stum, *to drain, drink in*.

**Helvētīi**, ōrum, people of Helvetia (Switzerland).

**hem** (interj.), *ah! indeed!*

**Henna**, ae, F., *Enna, a vale in Sicily*.

**Hennēnsis**, e, *of Enna*.

**Hēraclīdēs**, is, M., a name of a philosopher.

**herba**, ae, F., *grass, turf*.

**Herculēs**, is, M., the most famous hero of Greek fable.

**herī**, *yesterday*.

**hērōicus**, a, um, *heroic*.

**hērōs**, ōis (acc. sing. ōa, pl. ōās), *hero* (a Greek word).

**herus**, ī, M., *master* (less approved spelling for erus).

**heu**, *alas!*

**heus** (interj.), *ho! hallo!*

**hiberna**, ōrum, N., *winter quarters* of an army.

**Hibernia**, ae, F., *Ireland*.

**hic**, *here*.

**hic**, *haec*, **hōc**, *this* (near the speaker : 52).

**hiems** (**hiemps**), *hiemis*, F., *winter, storm*.

**hilaris**, e, *cheerful*.

**hilariter**, *cheerfully*.

**hinc**, *hence, next*; **hinc** . . **hinc**, *on this side* . . *on the other*.

**hinnio**,<sup>4</sup> *īre*, *to neigh, whinny*.

**hio**,<sup>1</sup> *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *to gape*.

**hirundo**, *inis*, F., *a swallow*.

**Hispānia**, ae, F., *Spain*.

**Hispānus**, a, um, *Spanish, Spaniard*.

**histōria**, ae, F., *history*.

**hodiē**, *to-day*.

**hodiernus**, a, um, *to-day's*; **hodierno die**, *to-day*.

**Homērus**, ī, M., *Homer*, the Greek poet.

**homo**, *hominis*, M., *man* (as a human being), *person, fellow* (53; see p. 125).

**honestus**, a, um, *becoming, honorable*.

**honor** (**ōs**), *ōris*, M., *respect, honor* (46).

**honōrificē**, *honorably*; — **appello**, *salute with titles of honor*.

**honōrificus**, a, um (comp. -centior; superl. -centissimus), *honorable, giving honor*.

**honōro**,<sup>1</sup> *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *to honor* (do honor to).

**hōra**, ae, F., *hour*; **omnium horarum homo**, *a man for any thing*.

**Horātius**, ī, M., a Roman name.

**horreo**,<sup>2</sup> *ēre*, *horruī*, *shudder* (at).

**horridus**, a, um, *rough, horrid*.

**hortor**,<sup>1</sup> *ārī*, *ātus*, *exhort*.

**hortulus**, ī, M., *little garden*.

**hortus**, ī, M., *garden*.

**hospes**, *itis*, M., *host, guest*.

**hospitium**, ī, N., *office of host, hospitality, an inn*.

**hostilis**, e, *of an enemy*.

**hostis**, is, C., *enemy* (54).

**hūc**, *hither*.

**hūmānitās**, *ātis*, F., *refinement, courtesy, culture*.

**hūmānus**, a, um, *of man, human*.

**hūmēns**, *tis*, *moist*.

**humerus**, ī, M., *shoulder*.

**hūmidus**, a, um, *moist*.

**humilis**, e, *low, lowly*.

**humo**,<sup>1</sup> *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *bury*.

**humus**, ī, F., *ground*; **humī**, *on the ground*.

**huncine** (interrog.), acc. of **hic** = **huncne**.

## I.

**I**, *go* (**eo**, *īre*; **iter**).

**Iāsōn**, *onis*, M., *Jason*, leader of the Argonauts.

**ibi**, *there*.

**ibis**, is, F., *ibis*, a sacred bird of Egypt.

**īco**,<sup>3</sup> *ēre*, *īcī*, *īctum*, *to strike, hit*.

**īdem**, *eadem*, *idem*, *the same*.

**identidem**, *again and again, now and then*.

**īdeō**, *so, therefore, for this purpose*.

**īdōlon**, ī, N. (a Greek noun), *an image, apparition*.

**īdōneus**, a, um, *fit, apt, capable* (with **ad** or rel. clause).

**igitur**, *therefore*.

**ignārus**, a, um, *unaware, ignorant*.

**ignāvia**, ae, F., *sloth, cowardice*.

**ignāvus**, a, um, *cowardly, sluggish*.

**ignis**, is, M., *fire*.

**ignōro**,<sup>1</sup> *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *to be ignorant*; pass., *to be unknown*.

**ignosco**,<sup>3</sup> *ēre*, *nōvī*, *nōtum*, *to pardon* (dat. of person : GNO).

**ille**, *illa*, *illud*, *that* (away from speaker : 52).

**illūc**, *to that place*.

**illūstro**,<sup>1</sup> *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *to shine upon, brighten, bring to light*.

**illūstris**, e, *bright, well-lighted, illustrious*. [tion.

**imāgo**, *inis*, F., *image, appari-*

**imber**, bris (ium), M., a rain-storm (75).

**imitor**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *imitate*.

**immānis**, e, monstrous (93).

**immānitās**, ātis, F., cruelty, ferocity.

**immemor**, oris, *unmindful*.

**immēsus**, a, um, *measureless, immense, unbounded*.

**immitto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, mīsi, missum, *to let in, send upon*.

**immo**, nay, on the contrary, nay rather.

**immortālis**, e, *immortal*.

**immortālitās**, ātis, F., *immortality* (in-; mors).

**immūtābilis**, e, *unchangeable*.

**impavidus**, a, um, *without terror* (in-; pavelo).

**impedimentum**, ī, N., *hindrance*; plur. *baggage*.

**impedio**,<sup>1</sup> īre, īvi, itum, *to hinder, impede* (in-; pes).

**impendeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, *to overhang, threaten*.

**impendo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, sum, *to pay, bestow* (weigh out to).

**imperātor**, ōris, M., *commander* (in chief: 42).

**imperitus**, a, um, *unacquainted, unskilled* (gen.).

**imperium**, ī, N., *authority, command, state* (as a power: 88.)

**impero**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *command, require* (dat. and ut).

**impetro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *accomplish, obtain* (a request).

**impetus**, ūs, M., *attack, violence, impulse*; animī impetus, *impetuosity of feeling*.

**impiger**, gra, grum, *vigorous*.

**impius**, a, um, *impious, wicked*.

**impleo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, ēvī, etum, *to fill*.

**implico**,<sup>1</sup> āre, cuī, citum (or āvī, ātum), *entwine, entangle*.

**implōro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to implore, entreat*.

**impōno**,<sup>3</sup> ere, posuī, positum, *to place upon, impose, inflict*.

**importo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to import*.

**impotēns**, tis, *impotent, uncontrollable*.

**impotentia**, ae, F., *impotence, ungovernableness*.

**improbis**, a, um, *bad, wicked, mischievous, obstinate* (66).

**impūbēs**, is or eris, *youthful, beardless*.

**impudēns**, tis, *shameless*.

**impudentia**, ae, F., *impudence*.

**imū**, a, um, *lowest, foot of*.

**in** (acc.), *into, for, towards*; (abl.), *in, in regard to, upon*.

**inānis**, e, *empty, unreal*.

**incantāmentum**, ī, N., *enchantment*.

**incēdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēssi, cēssum, *move on, advance*.

**incendium**, ī, N., *fire* (conflagration).

**incendo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, sum, *set on fire, inflame*.

**incertus**, a, um, *uncertain*.

**inchoo** (or **inchoo**),<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to begin, undertake*.

**incido**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cidī, cāsum, *to fall upon, happen* (in; cado).

**incido**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cidī, cīsum, *to cut upon, inscribe* (in; caedo).

**incipio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēpī, ceptum, *to begin* (in; capio, take hold).

**incito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to incite, rouse*.

**inclūdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, *to shut in, enclose* (in; claudō).

**incolo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, coluī, *to inhabit*.

**incolumis**, e, *safe, unhurt*.

**inconmodum**, ī, N., *annoyance, inconvenience, disaster* (by a euphemism: 35).

**inconditus**, a, um, *unfashioned, rude* (ill put together).

**incrēdibilis**, e, *incredible*.

**increpo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, uī, itum, *to chide, shout at*.

**incultus**, a, um, *uncultivated, rude* (in; colo).

**incumbo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cubuī, cubitum, *lie upon, devote one's self to*.

**incūnābula**, ōrum, N., *cradle*.

**indē**, thence, then.

**indecōrus**, a, um, *unbecoming, dishonorable*.

**index**, icis, C., *guide*.

**indico**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *point out, indicate*.

**indico**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to declare*.

**indigeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī [egeo], *to need* (with gen : 26).

**indignor**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to be indignant, deem unworthy*.

**indignus**, a, um, *unworthy* (abl.).

**inditus**, a, um, *put on, given*.

**indo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, didī, ditum, *to put upon, bestow*.

**indolēs**, is, F., *talent, disposition* (13).

**indūco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to lead or bring on*.

**indūro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *harden*.

**indulgentia**, ae, F., *indulgence*.

**indulgeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, sī, sum, *to indulge* (dat.).

**induo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, uī, ūtum, *to put on*.

**industria**, ae, F., *industry, diligence*; de —, *on purpose*.

**indūtus**, a, um, *clad*.

**inedia**, ae, F., *fasting, famine*.

**ineptē**, *foolishly*.

**inerro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, *to wander in or over, pass before* (dative).

**iners**, tis, *stupid, lazy*.

**infacētus**, a, um, *without humor*.

**infāmis**, e, *ill-famed, infamous*.

**infāndus**, a, um, *shocking, unspeakable*.

**infāns**, tis, C., *infant*. [tunate.

**infēlix**, icis, *unfruitful, unfor-*

**infēnsus**, a, um, *angry, hostile*.

**inferior**, ius (comp. of *inferus*), *lower, inferior*. [below.

**infernus**, a, um, *of the world*

**infero**, ferre, tulī, lātum (illātum), *bring or throw in or upon*;

**bellum infero**, *make war*.

**inferus**, a, um, *lower, below*.

**infestus**, a, um, *hostile, dangerous, in a dangerous condition*.

**infidus**, a, um, *unfaithful*.

**infimus**, a, um, *lowest*.

**infinitus**, a, um, *unlimited, infinite, immeasurable* (**fīnis**).

**infirmus**, a, um, *feeble, infirm*.

**inflammo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to set on fire*.

**inflātus**, a, um, *inflated, puffed up*.

**infortūnium**, ī, N., *misfortune*.

**ingeniōsus**, a, um, *full of genius*.

**ingenium**, ī, N., *nature, mind, genius* (13).

**ingēns**, tis, *vast, monstrous* (65).

**ingenuus**, a, um, *noble, free-born* (62).

**inhabito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *inhabit*.

**inhūmānus**, a, um, *rude, churlish, ill-bred, barbarous* (p. 125).

**inimicus**, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile*; *personal enemy* (54).

**inīquus**, a, um, *unjust* (aequus).

**initium**, ī, N., *beginning*; *initio*, *at first* (in; eo, entering on).

**injicio** (inīcio),<sup>3</sup> ere, jēcī, jectum, *to cast upon* (in; jacio).

**injūcundus**, a, um, *unpleasant*.

**injussū** (abl.), *without orders*

**injūria**, ae, F., *injury*.

**injūstē**, *unjustly*.

**injūstus**, a, um, *unjust*.

**inlātus**, a, um, *brought upon or against* (īfero).

**innātus**, a, um, *inborn, innate*.

**innocēns**, tis, *harmless, innocent*.

**innocentia**, ae, F., *innocence*.

**innuo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, uī, ūtum, *nod, hint*.

**inopia**, ae, F., *want, need*.

**inquam** (def. Gr. p. 81), *say* (always in direct discourse and following some of the words said): *said he*, &c. (64).

**inrīdeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, rīsī, rīsum, *to mock, laugh at* (acc.).

**inrumpo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, rūpī, ruptum, *to break in or upon, burst in*.

**insānio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī, ītum, *be insane*.

**insānus**, a, um, *unsound, insane*.

**insectum**, ī, N., *insect, fly*.

**insequor**,<sup>3</sup> sequī, secutus, *to follow closely, pursue* (95).

**insero**,<sup>3</sup> ere, seruī, sertum, *to weave in, bind in*.

**insēro**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sēvī, situm, *to implant*.

**insideo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, sēdī, sessum, *to sit upon, be established.*  
**insidiae**, ārum, F., *ambush, plot, treachery.*  
**insidiōr**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *plot against, lie in wait for (as game).*  
**insignis**, e, *marked, distinguished.*  
**insitus**, a, um (part. of **insero**), *fixed, implanted.*  
**insolēns**, tis, *unused, insolent, arrogant.*  
**insomnium**, ī, N., *sleeplessness.*  
**insono**,<sup>1</sup> āre, sonuī, *resound over, rattle (dat.).*  
**instabilis**, e, *varying, unsteady.*  
**instituo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, uī, ūtum, *to establish, train (statuo).*  
**institutum**, ī, N., *institution (any thing established).*  
**insto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, stitī, *to be at hand, insist on, threaten.*  
**instructus**, a, um, *equipped, armed.*  
**instruo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *furnish, set in order, equip.*  
**insula**, ae, F., *island.*  
**insum**, esse, fuī, *to be in or on, belong (dat.).*  
**intactus**, a, um, *untouched.*  
**integer**, gra, grum, *sound, whole.*  
**integritās**, ātis, F., *uprightness, soundness.*  
**intelligo** (-lego),<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to understand (inter; lego).*  
**intendo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, tendī, tentum, ōr sum, *strain, devote.*  
**intentus**, a, um, *fixed, intent.*  
**inter** (acc.), *between, among; inter sē, with each other.*  
**interdico**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *interdict, forbid.*  
**interdiū**, *by day, in the day time.*  
**interdum** (adv.), *sometimes.*  
**intereā**, *in the mean time.*  
**interest**, erat, &c., *it interests or is important (to the state, civitātis; to me, meā, § 50, 4. a).*  
**interficio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fēcī, fectum, *to kill.*  
**interim**, *meanwhile.*

**interior**, ius, *inner.*  
**intermisceo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, miscuī, mixtum or mistum, *minge among.*  
**interpellātor**, ōris, M., *interrupter; sine interpellatore, without interruption.*  
**interrumpo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, rūpī, ruptum, *to break down, interrupt.*  
**intersum**, esse, fui, *to be present at or engaged in (dat.).*  
**intimus**, a, um, *inmost.*  
**intrā** (acc.), *within.*  
**intro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to enter.*  
**intulī**, see **infero**.  
**intus** (adv.), *within.*  
**inundo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to overflow, inundate (unda).*  
**inūtilis**, e, *useless.*  
**invādo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, *to advance upon, attack, invade.*  
**invenio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, vēnī, ventum, *come upon, find (55).*  
**investigo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *track, trace, investigate (following a scent).*  
**invideo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *to envy (dat.).*  
**invidia**, ae, F., *envy, jealousy, malice, odium (76).*  
**invidiōsus**, a, um, *envious, odious.*  
**inviolātus**, a, um, *unharmed.*  
**invisus**, a, um, *hated.*  
**invito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *entertain, invite (with ad or in).*  
**invitus**, a, um, *unwilling, reluctant.*  
**ipse**, a, um, *self (emphatic), himself, herself, &c.*  
**ira**, ae, F., *anger.*  
**irācundē** (adv.), *with irascibility, with little patience.*  
**irācundus**, a, um, *irascible, high-tempered, passionate.*  
**irascor**,<sup>3</sup> ī, irātus, *to be angry.*  
**ire**, see **eo** (p. 39).  
**is**, ea, id, *he, she, it, that (52).*  
**Isocratēs**, is, M., *an orator of Athens.*  
**iste**, ista, istud, *that yonder, that of yours (52).*

ita, so, thus.

Italia, ae, F., Italy.

itaque, therefore, accordingly.

item, likewise, also.

iter, itineris, N., way, journey, march.

itero,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, to repeat.

iterum, again, a second time.

## J.

†JAC, throw (jacio,<sup>3</sup> conjicio).

jaceo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, jacuī, jactum, to lie, be low, lie low.

jacio,<sup>3</sup> ere, jeci, jactum, throw, cast.

jacto,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, cast, toss, boast (intens. of jacio).

jam, now, already; jam nōn, no longer (with present); jam vērō, then again; (with future), presently; jam pridem non fui, it is long since I have been.

Jāniculum, ī, N., a hill of Rome.

jānuā, ae, F., doorway, door (86).

joco,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, jest, joke.

jocus, ī, M.; pl., joca, ōrum, N., jest; per jocum, for fun.

Jovis, see Juppiter.

jubeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, jussī, jussum (acc. and infin.), to order, command.

jūcunditās, ātis, F., pleasure, delight. [ful.]

jūcundus, a, um, pleasant, cheerful.

jūdex, icis, C., judge, juror; in plural, properly jurors.

jūdicium, ī, N., judgment, court.

jūdico,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, judge, decide.

†JUG, join (jungo,<sup>3</sup> conjux).

jūglāns, andis, F., walnut.

jugum, ī, N., yoke, ridge of hill.

Jugurtha, ae, M., a king of Numidia.

Jūlius, ī, M., Julius, a man's name; as adj., of Julius.

jungo,<sup>3</sup> ere, nxī, nctum, to join, connect (JUG: 63).

Jūno, ōnis, F., Juno, queen of the gods.

Juppiter, Jovis, M., Jupiter, king of the gods.

jūs, jūris, N., right, justice (57).

jūs, jūris, N., broth.

jūstitia, ae, F., justice.

jūstus, a, um, just.

jussū (abl.), by command.

juvencus, ī, M., bullock.

juvenis, is, C., young person (from 20 to 40); gen. pl. um.

juventūs, ūtis, F., youth.

juvo,<sup>1</sup> āre, jūvī, jūtum, aid, help, do good, favor, please (acc.).

juxtā, near (acc.).

## K.

Kalendae, ārum, F., Kalends (1st of the month).

Karthāgo, inis, F., Carthage.

## L.

L. for Lucius, a Roman name.

labor (ōs), ōris, M., toil, hard-ship (58).

lābor,<sup>3</sup> ī, lāpsus, to fall, fail, decay, glide. [labor.]

labōriōsē (adv.), with great

labōriōsus, a, um, toilsome.

labōro,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, toil, labor, trouble one's self.

labrum, ī, N., lip.

lāc, lactis, N., milk.

Lacedaemōn, ōnis, ōna, Lacedaemon or Sparta, a city of Greece.

Lacedaemōnius, a, um, Lacedaemonian, Spartan.

lacerātus, a, um, mangled.

lacero,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, to mangle.

lacetus, ī, M., the arm (above the elbow: comp. brachium).

lacrima, ae, F., tear.

lacus, cūs, M., lake (p. 18).

laedo,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, to injure, hurt (acc.).

laetifico,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, to make glad (laetus; facio).

J  
K  
L  
M  
N  
O  
P  
Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z

- laetitia, ae, F., *joy*.  
 laetus, a, um, *glad, blooming, gladdening* (by abundance).  
 laevus, a, um, *left* (left hand).  
 lampas, adis (os), ada, adas, F., *lamp, torch*.  
 lapis, idis, M., *a stone* (59).  
 lapsus, a, um, *fallen* (lābor).  
 lapsus, sūs, M., *flow*.  
 laqueus, ī, M., *noose, snare*.  
 largior,<sup>4</sup> īrī, itus, *to lavish, give lavishly* (37).  
 largitās, ātis, F., *generosity, abundance, bounty*.  
 largus, a, um, *broad*.  
 Lars, tis, M., an Etruscan title.  
 lateo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, latuī, *be hidden* (with acc., *from*).  
 laterculus, ī, M., *brick*.  
 Latinus or Latius, a, um, *Latin* (of Latium).  
 lātītūdō, inis, F., *breadth*.  
 latro,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to bark*.  
 latro, ōnis, M., *robber*.  
 latrōcinium, ī, N., *robbery*.  
 latus, eris, N., *side*.  
 lātus, a, um, *wide*.  
 laudātio, ōnis, F., *praise, eulogy*.  
 laudātus, a, um (part. of following), *much praised*.  
 laudo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to praise*.  
 laus, laudis, F., *praise* (46).  
 lautus, a, um, *noble, elegant, dainty*; part. of  
 lavo, āre or ere, lavī or lavāvī, lavāt- laut- or lōtum, *to wash*.  
 lectus, ī, M., *bed* (60).  
 lēgātus, ī, M., *lieutenant, ambassador* (part. of lēgo: 42).  
 legio, ōnis, F., *legion* (61).  
 lēgitimus, a, um, *lawful, established by law*.  
 (lego,<sup>3</sup> ere, lēgī, lectum, *gather, read, choose*.  
 legūmina, um, N. pl., *vegetables*.  
 lēnio,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī (īi), itum, *soothe, calm, soften*.  
 lēnis, e, *gentle, smooth, mild* (41).  
 lentus, a, um, *slow*.  
 leo, ōnis, M., *lion*.  
 lepus, oris, M., *hare*.  
 lētum, ī, N., *death*.  
 levāmen, inis, N., *relief, alleviation*.  
 levis, e, *light*.  
 lēvis, e, *smooth*.  
 levitās, ātis, F., *lightness*.  
 lēvitūdō, inis, F., *smoothness*.  
 levo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to lighten, lift, relieve*.  
 lēx, lēgis, F., *law* (written).  
 liber, brī, M., *book*.  
 liber, era, erum, *free* (62).  
 Lībera, ae, F., *Proserpine, daughter of Ceres*.  
 liberātor, ōris, M., *deliverer*.  
 liberē, freely.  
 liberī, ōrum, M., *children*.  
 libero,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *set free*.  
 libertās, tātis, F., *liberty, freedom*.  
 libet (or lubet), uit, itum est, *it pleases* (dat.).  
 libīdo, inis, F., *passion, desire*.  
 libum, ī, N., *cake*.  
 †LIC, leave (linquo<sup>3</sup>).  
 licet, licuit, licitum est, *it is permitted, one may* (dat.).  
 lictor, ōris, M., *lictor, attendant on a Roman magistrate; executioner*.  
 ligo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to fasten, bind* (63).  
 ligo, ōnis, M., *hoe, mattock*.  
 ligustrum, ī, N., *privet* (a hedge-plant).  
 limen, inis, N., *threshold, entrance* (86).  
 lingua, ae, F., *tongue, language*.  
 linquo,<sup>3</sup> ere, liqui, *to leave*.  
 liquidus, a, um, *clear, transparent*.  
 lis, litis, F., *lawsuit, quarrel*.  
 lītera (littera), ae, F., *letter of the alphabet: plur., a letter, epistle, literature*.  
 līterātus, a, um, *learned, lettered*.  
 litus (littus), oris, N., *shore*.  
 loco,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to place, station, let* (for hire).  
 locuplēs, ētis, *wealthy*.



**locuplêto**,<sup>1</sup> âre, âvī, âtum, *enrich*.  
**locus**, ī, M.: plur., loca, ōrum,  
N., *place, region*.

**lōcusta**, ae, F., *locust, grass-*  
*hopper*.

**longaevus**, a, um, *aged*.

**longē**, ius, issimē, *far, by far,*  
*at a distance*.

**longimanus**, a, um, *long-handed*.

**longinquus**, a, um, *distant, long*  
(of time).

**longus**, a, um, *long*; longum est,  
*it would take too long*.

**loquāx**, ācis, *talkative*.

**loquor**,<sup>3</sup> ī, locūtus, *speaks* (64).

**lubet** (or libet), *it pleases, one is*  
*glad*.

**lūbricus**, a, um, *slippery*.

**lūcidus**, a, um, *bright, trans-*  
*parent, glittering* (lux).

**lucrum**, ī, N., *gain*.

**luctor**,<sup>1</sup> āri, *to wrestle, struggle*.

**luctus**, ūs, M., *grief, mourning*  
(38).

**Lūcullus**, ī, M., a Roman name.

**Lucumo**, ōnis, an Etruscan title,  
properly, *one inspired*.

**lūcus**, ī, M., *grove* (96).

**lūdbrium**, ī, N., *jest, mockery*.

**lūdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, *to play, sport*.

**Ludovīcus**, ī, M., *Lewis*.

**lūdus**, ī, M., *play, school*; plur.,  
*public games*.

**lūgeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, xī, ctum, *to grieve,*  
*mourn*.

**lūmbricus**, ī, M., *earth-worm*.

**lūmen**, inis, N., *light*.

**lūna**, ae, F., *moon*.

**lupa**, ae, F., *she-wolf*.

**lupus**, ī, M., *wolf*.

**luscīnia**, ae, F., *nightingale*.

**lūstro**,<sup>1</sup> âre, âvī, âtum, *purify,*  
*survey*.

**lūsus**, ūs, M., *play, sport*.

**lutulentus**, a, um, *muddy, dirty*.

**lutum**, ī, N., *mud*.

**lūx**, lūcis, F., *light*.

**lūxī**, see lugeo.

**lyra**, ae, F., *lyre*.

**Lyssiās**, ae, M., an orator of  
Athens.

**M.**

**M.**, abbrev. of *Marcus*.

**M'**, abbrev. of *Manius*.

**Macedo**, onis, a *Macedonian*.

**māchina**, ae, F., *machine, engine*.

**maciēs**, iēī, F., *emaciation, lean-*  
*ness*.

**macte** (voc.), *well-done! prosper*.

**maculo**,<sup>1</sup> âre, âvī, âtum, *stain*.

**maestus**, a, um, *sad, sorrowful*.

**magis**, *more*.

**magister**, trī, M., *master, teacher*.

**magistra**, ae, F., *mistress*.

**magistrātus**, tūs, M., *magistrate,*  
*office*.

**magnitūdo**, inis, F., *greatness,*  
*size*; incredibili magnitudine,  
*of marvellous size*.

**magnopere**, *greatly*.

**magnus**, a, um, *great* (in all  
senses), *powerful* (65).

**māior**, us (comp. of magnus),  
*greater, older*.

**māiōsculus**, a, um, *somewhat*  
*large or larger*.

**male**, *ill*.

**maledīco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to speak*  
*ill, curse* (dat.).

**malefīcium**, ī, N., *ill deed, crime*.

**mālo**, mālī, mālūī, *wish more,*  
*choose rather* (p. 38).

**malus**, a, um, *bad, malicious* (i. e.  
intended evil: 66).

**mancipium**, ī, N., a *chattel,*  
*slave* (taken in the hand).

**mandātum**, ī, N., *command*.

**maneo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, māsī, mansum,  
*wait, stay, remain, await*.

**mānēs**, ium, M., a *departed spirit*.

**maniplāris**, e, *belonging to a*  
*company, manipular*.

**maniplus**, ī, M., *wisps of straw*  
(used as a standard for a mili-  
tary company, hence later the  
company itself: 61).

**Mantinēa**, ae, F., a city of  
southern Greece.

**manus**, ūs, F., *hand, troop*.

**Marcellus**, ī, M., a famous Ro-  
man.

**Marcus**, ī, M., a proper name.  
**mare**, is, N., *sea*.  
**maritimus**, a, um, *of the sea, on the sea*.  
**maritus**, ī, M., *husband*.  
**marmoreus**, a, um, *of marble, glistening*.  
**Mars**, Martis, M., the god of war.  
**māter**, tris, F., *mother*.  
**māteria**, ae; iēs, iēi, F., *timber, material*. [bered.  
**māteriātus**, a, um, *built, timbered*.  
**māternus**, a, um, *of a mother*.  
**mātricida**, ae, C., *matricide*.  
**mātrimōnium**, ī, N., *marriage*.  
**mātrōna**, ae, F., *matron, married woman*.  
**mātūrē**, *early, hastily, promptly*.  
**mātūrus**, a, um, *ripe, early*.  
**maximē**, *chiefly, especially*.  
**maximus**, a, um, *greatest*.  
**Maximus**, ī, M., *Q. Fabius Maximus*, a Roman commander in the war against Hannibal.  
**medeor**,<sup>3</sup> ēri, *to heal*.  
**medicābilis**, e, *curable*.  
**medicāmen**, inis, N., *remedy*.  
**medicāmentārius**, *pertaining to (dealing in) remedies*.  
**medicāmentōsus**, *curative*.  
**medicāmentum**, ī, N., *remedy*.  
**medicīna**, ae, F., *medicine*.  
**medicīnālis**, e, *medicinal*.  
**medicor**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *heal*.  
**medicōsus**, a, um, *curative*.  
**medicus**, ī, M., *physician*.  
**meditor**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus (*devote one's self to*), *practise, meditate*.  
**medius**, a, um, *mid, middle, middle of* (in agr. with noun).  
**mel**, mellis, N., *honey*.  
**meleagris**, idis, F., *a guinea-hen*.  
**membrāna**, ae, F., *membrane*.  
**mēmbrium**, ī, N., *limb*.  
**memento** (imperat.), *remember*.  
**meminī** (def.), *remember* (68).  
**memor**, oris, *mindful*.  
**memorāndus**, a, um, *memorable*.  
**memoria**, ae, F., *memory*.  
**memoro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *call to mind, relate*.

**mendācium**, ī, N., *falsehood*.  
**mendāx**, ācis, *false, deceitful*.  
**mēns**, mentis, F., *mind, wits* (13).  
**mēnsa**, ae, F., *table*.  
**mēnsis**, is, M., *month*.  
**mēnsūra**, ae, F., *measure*.  
**mentior**,<sup>4</sup> irī, itus, *to lie (speak falsely)*.  
**mercēnārius**, ī, M., *hireling*.  
**mercēs**, ēdis, F., *wages* (40).  
**mercēs**, ium, F., plur., *commodities, wares*.  
**mercor**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *trade, buy*.  
**Mercurius**, ī, M., *Mercury*, god of trade, &c.  
**mergus**, ī, M., *diver, sea-fowl*.  
**meridiēs**, iēi, M., *mid-day, noon, south*.  
**meritum**, ī, N., *merit, service*.  
**meritus**, a, um (part. of **mereor**), *deserved; meritō, deservedly*.  
**messis**, is, F., *harvest* (94).  
**-met**, intens. (added to pronoun).  
**mētiōr**,<sup>4</sup> irī, mēnsus, *measure, measure out*.  
**metuo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, uī, *fear, dread* (69).  
**metus**, ūs, M., *fear, apprehension*.  
**meus**, mea, meum, *my, mine; voc. M., mī*.  
**mico**,<sup>1</sup> āre, micuī, *quiver, shine, glitter*.  
**migrātiō**, ōnis, F., *migration*.  
**migro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to remove, emigrate*.  
**mīles**, itis, C., *soldier*.  
**mīlia**, pl. of mille.  
**militāris**, e, *military*.  
**militia**, ae, F., *military service* (22); *militiae*, abroad (in military service).  
**milito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *serve* (as a soldier).  
**mille**, plur. **mīlia**, *thousand*.  
**Miltiadēs**, is, an Athenian commander.  
**mināciter**, *threateningly*.  
**minae**, ārum, F., *threats*.  
**mināx**, ācis, *threatening*.  
**Minerva**, ae, F., *Minerva*, goddess of arts and wisdom.

**minimē**, *least-of-all, no, by no means.*

**minimus** (sup. of **parvus**), *the least; — nātū, youngest.*

**minister**, trī, M., *attendant.*

**ministra**, ae, F., *handmaid.*

**ministro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *serve, supply, afford.*

**minitābundus**, a, um, *in a threatening manner.*

**minitor**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to threaten.*

**minor**, minus, *smaller, lesser.*

**minus**, *less* (adj. or adv.).

**mīrābiliter**, *wonderfully.*

**mīrāculum**, ī, N., *a miracle, wonder.*

**mīror**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to wonder.*

**mīrus**, a, um, *wonderful, marvellous; quid mirum? what wonder?*

**misellus**, a, um, dim. of

**miser**, era, erum, *wretched.*

**miserē**, *wretchedly.*

**miseresco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, *pity* (gen.).

**miseria**, ae, F., *misery* (38).

**misericordia**, ae, F., *pity, mercy.*

**miserrimus**, a, um, *unhappiest.*

**mītesco**,<sup>3</sup> *grow soft or mellow.*

**mītigo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to mellow, tame down.*

**mītis**, e, *mild, gentle, mellow.*

**mitto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, mīsi, missum, *to send* (see p. 134).

**mixtura**, ae, F., *mixture.*

**mōbilis**, e, *movable, pliant.*

**modestē**, *modestly.*

**modestia**, ae, F., *modesty.*

**modestus**, a, um, *modest.*

**modicē**, *moderately.*

**modicus**, a, um, *moderate.*

**modius**, ī, M., *modius*, a measure of grain; *a peck.*

**modo** (in a manner), *only, just now; nōn modo, not only.*

**modus**, ī, M., *manner, measure, limit* (48); *ejus modi, such, of that sort.*

**moenia**, ium, N., *fortifications.*

**mola**, ae, F., *mill, grain.*

**molestia**, ae, F., *vexation, distress, trouble* (38).

**molestus**, a, um, *vexatious; molestē fero, to be vexed at.*

**mōlior**,<sup>4</sup> irī, itus, *to attempt, do* (with effort: 18).

**mollio**,<sup>4</sup> ire, ivī, itum, *to soften.*

**mollis**, e, *soft, smooth, mealy* (of fruits, &c.), *ripe* (41).

**mollitia**, ae, F., *effeminacy, softness.*

**momordī**, see **mordeo**.

**moneo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *warn, admonish, advise.*

**monitus**, ūs, M., *admonition.*

**mōns**, montis, M., *mountain.*

**mōnstro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to show, point out* (80). [ster.]

**mōnstrum**, ī, N., *prodigy, mon-*

**monumentum**, ī, N., *monument,*

**mora**, ae, F., *delay.*

**morbus**, ī, M., *disease.*

**mordeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, momordī, morsum, *to bite.*

**mōrēs**, um, M. (**mos**), *character, habit* (70).

**moribundus**, a, um, *dying.*

**morior**,<sup>3</sup> ī, mortuus, *to die.*

**moror**, ārī, ātus, *to delay.*

**mōrōsus**, *cross, ill-tempered.*

**mors**, mortis, F., *death.*

**mortālis**, e, *mortal.*

**mortuus**, a, um, *dead.*

**mōs**, mōris, M., *custom; plur., also character* (70).

**mōtus**, ūs, M., *disturbance* (of insurrections, and the like: 71).

**moveo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move* (in all senses).

**mox**, *presently.* [(16).]

**mūcro**, ōnis, M., *blade, sword*

**mūgio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, ivī (iī), itum, *bellow* (like cattle).

**mulier**, eris, F., *woman.*

**multiplex**, plicis, *manifold, repeated.*

**multitūdo**, inis, F., *multitude, great number.*

**multō** (adverbial ablative), *by much, much.*

**multum**, *much* (with part. gen.).

**multus**, a, um (generally plural), *much, many.*

N  
O  
P  
Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z

mūlus, ī, M., *mule*.  
 mundus, ī, M., *the universe, the world.* [tion.  
 mūnimentum, ī, N., *fortifica-*  
 mūnio,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī (iī), itum, *fortify*.  
 mūnus, eris, N., *office, gift* (40).  
 mūnusculum, ī, N., *little gift*.  
 murmuro,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to murmur, mumble*.  
 mūrus, ī, M., *wall*.  
 mūs, mūris, M., *mouse*.  
 mūtatio, ōnis, F., *change*.  
 mūto,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to change*.  
 mūtus, a, um, *dumb, mute*.  
 myrica, ae, F., *heather*.  
 myrtus, ūs or ī, F., *myrtle*.

## N.

†NAC, *find, win* (nanciscor<sup>3</sup>).  
 nam, namque, *for*.  
 nanciscor,<sup>3</sup> cī, nactus or nactus,  
*catch, get, find* (55).  
 nārēs, ium, F., *nostrils, scent*.  
 narro,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *tell, relate, talk of* (with acc.).  
 Nāsica, ae, M., *Nasica*, a name of a family of Scipios.  
 nascor,<sup>3</sup> cī, nātus, *be born* (GEN).  
 natio, ōnis, F., *nation* (50).  
 nato,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to swim*.  
 nātū, *by birth* (abl.).  
 nātūra, ae, F., *nature*.  
 nātūrālis, e, *natural*.  
 nātus (part. of nascor), a, um, *born*; as noun, *son*.  
 nauta, nāvita, ae, M., *sailor*.  
 nāvigo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to sail, navigate*.  
 nāvis, is, F., *ship*; — longa, *galley* (a ship of war, driven by oars: 73).  
 nē, *lest*; with imperat., *not*; with subj., *not to*; ne . . quidem, *not . . even, not . . either*.  
 -ne (enclitic), mark of interrogation, *whether*.  
 †NEC, *bind* (necto,<sup>3</sup> nexus).  
 nec (neque), *and not, neither, nor*.

nec enim, *for . . not* (you see).  
 necessarius, a, um, *necessary*.  
 necesse (indecl.), *necessary*.  
 necessitās, ātis, F., *necessity*.  
 neco,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to destroy, kill*.  
 nefarius, a, um, *wicked, abominable*.  
 nefās, *moral wrong, impiety*.  
 negligo (ego),<sup>3</sup> ere, neglexī, ctum, *neglect, disregard* (nec; lego).  
 nego,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to refuse, deny* (ne; aio).  
 negōtior,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *do business*.  
 negōtium, ī, N., *business, task*.  
 nēmo, inis, c., *no one, no* (in apposition with noun); nemo non, *every one*.  
 nemus, oris, N., *wood, grove* (96).  
 nepōs, ōtis, M., *grandson*.  
 nēquam (indecl.), ior, issimus, *worthless*.  
 nēquāquam, *by no means*.  
 neque, see nec.  
 nequeo, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *cannot* (see p. 40).  
 nēquīquam (nēquicquam), *in vain, to no purpose*.  
 nēquis, nēqua, nēquid, *not (lest) any*.  
 nērēis, idis, F., *nereid, sea-nymph*.  
 Nēreus, ī (eos), M., *Nereus, god of the sea-depths*.  
 nescius, a, um, *ignorant*.  
 Nestor, oris, M., *Nestor, a wise and aged Greek chieftain*.  
 nēve, *nor*.  
 nex, necis, F., *death* (by violence) (neco<sup>1</sup>).  
 nīdus, ī, M., *nest*.  
 niger, gra, grum, *black, dark in color* (9).  
 nihil, indec., *nothing*; (as adv.), *not at all*.  
 nihilōminus, *nevertheless*.  
 nihilum, ī, N., *nothing*.  
 nīl = nihil, *nothing*.  
 nimius, a, um, *excessive*.  
 nimis, *too, too much*.  
 nisi, *unless*.

niteo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, *to shine, glitter.*  
 nix, nivis, F., *snow.*  
 nōbilis, e, *well-known, famous, noble* (GNO in gnosco).  
 nōbilitās, ātis, F., *nobility.*  
 nocēns, tis, *injurious, guilty* (66).  
 noceo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, nocuī, nocitum, *do harm, hurt, injure* (dat.).  
 nocturnus, a, um, *nightly, of the night* (nox).  
 nōdōsus, a, um, *knotty.*  
 nōdus, ī, M., *knot.*  
 nōlo, nōlle, nōluī, *to be unwilling* (p. 38); nōlī, *do not* (prohib.).  
 nōmen, inis, N., *name, bill of exchange* (74). [mention.  
 nōmino,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to name,*  
 nōn, *not.*  
 nōnāgintā, *ninety.*  
 nondum, *not yet.*  
 nonne, *not? (does not? do . . not? whether . . not).*  
 nonnullus, a, um, *some.*  
 nonnunquam, *sometimes.*  
 nōrim for nōverim, see nosco.  
 nōs, nostrum, trī, nōbis, *we.*  
 nosco,<sup>3</sup> ere, nōvī, nōtum, *learn;*  
 perf. *know* (as an acquaintance: GNO).  
 nōster, tra, trum, *our, ours.*  
 nōtus, a, um, *known* (nosco).  
 Notus, ī, M., *south wind.*  
 novem, *nine.*  
 noverca, ae, F., *stepmother.*  
 nōvī, *I know* (nosco).  
 novo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to renew.*  
 novus, a, um, *new.*  
 nox, noctis, F., *night.*  
 nūbēs, is, F., *cloud* (75).  
 nūbilus, a, um, *cloudy.*  
 nūbo,<sup>3</sup> ere, nūpsī, nūptum (dat.), *marry* (of the woman).  
 nūdus, a, um, *naked, bare, unclad.*  
 nullus, a, um (gen. īus), *no, none.*  
 num, sign of question expecting negative answer: translate in indirect question, *whether*; in direct, by denial and question together, *is not, is it?*  
 nūmen, inis, N., *nod, will, divine being, divinity.*

numero,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to number, account.*  
 numerus, ī, M., *number.*  
 Numida, ae, M., *a Numidian.*  
 Numitor, ōris, M., *grandfather of Romulus.*  
 nummus, ī, M., *coin* = 5 cts.  
 numquam (nunquam), *never.*  
 nunc, *now* (emphatic).  
 nuntio,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *bring news, announce, report.*  
 nuntius, ī, M., *messenger, message.* [veiled).  
 nupta, ae, F., *married, bride* (lit. nuptiae, ārum, F., *marriage.*  
 nusquam, *nowhere.*  
 nūtrio,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī (īi), ītum, *to nourish.*  
 nux, nucis, F., *nut*; ludere or certare nucibus, *play marbles.*  
 nymphā, ae, F., *nymph.*

## O.

O (interjection), *Oh!*  
 ob (acc.), *on account of.*  
 obo, īre, īi, ītum, *go to meet or in the way, to die.*  
 obfero (offero), ferre, tulī, lātum, *bring in the way of, offer.*  
 obfirmo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to strengthen against, strengthen.*  
 objicio (ōbicio),<sup>3</sup> ere, jēcī, jectum, *cast at, throw in the way.*  
 oblecto,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *delight, amuse, entertain.*  
 oblītus, a, um, *forgetful*, part. of obliviscor,<sup>3</sup> ī, oblītus, *to forget.*  
 obnoxius, a, um, *exposed, liable.*  
 obscūrus, a, um, *obscure.*  
 obsequium, ī, N., *indulgence* (of whims), *deference.*  
 observo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to keep, observe, watch.*  
 obses, idis, C., *hostage.*  
 obsideo,<sup>2</sup> sēdī, sessum, *besiege.*  
 obsidio, ōnis, F.; -ium, ī, N., *siege.*  
 obsisto,<sup>3</sup> ere, stitī, stitum, *to withstand, resist.*

N  
O  
Ob  
P  
Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z

**obstinātus**, a, um, *obstinate*.  
**obsto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, stitī, stātum, *to stand against, oppose*.  
**obstupefacio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, fēcī, factum, *to stupefy, amaze*.  
**obtempero**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to give heed, observe* (dat.).  
**obtestor**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *appeal, adjure* (79).  
**obtineo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, tentum, *to hold, retain* (ob; teneo).  
**obtingo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, tigī, *fall to the lot of any one* (dat.: ob; tango).  
**obtrecto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to detract, oppose, speak enviously*.  
**obtrunco**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to kill* (with a blow: truncus).  
**obtulī**, see **obfero** (**offero**).  
**occāsio**, ōnis, F., *opportunity*.  
**occāsus**, ūs, M., *setting, west*.  
**occido**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cidī, cāsū, *to fall, set* (ob; cado).  
**occīdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, sum, *to kill* (ob; caedo).  
**occulo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, culū, cultum, *hide*.  
**occultus**, a, um, *hidden*; in occultō, *under cover*.  
**occupātus**, a, um, *busy, engaged*.  
**occupo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *seize, take possession of*.  
**occurro**,<sup>3</sup> ere, curī or cucurrī, cursum, *to run up, run to meet, oppose*.  
**octāvus**, a, um, *eighth*.  
**octo**, *eight*.  
**octōgēsīmus**, a, um, *eightieth*.  
**oculus**, ī, M., *eye*.  
**ōdī**, ōdisse, ōsus, *to hate* (p. 40).  
**odiōsus**, a, um, *odious, hateful*.  
**odium**, ī, N., *hate, hatred* (76).  
**odor**, ōris, M., *smell*.  
**offero**, see **obfero**.  
**officiū**, ī, N., *duty, service* (57).  
**oleum**, ī, N., *olive-oil, oil*.  
**ōlim**, *once, of old, formerly*.  
**olīva**, ae, F., *the olive-tree*.  
**olivētum**, ī, *olive-orchard*.  
**ōmen**, inis, N., *omen*.  
**omitto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, misī, missum, *to let go, neglect*.  
**omniū**, *altogether, at all*.

**omnis**, e, *all, every* (77); **omnia**, *every thing*.  
**onerārius**, a, um, *of burden* (as a ship).  
**onus**, eris, N., *burden*.  
**opāco**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to darken*.  
**opera**, ae, F., *work, help, pains* (58); pl., *workmen*.  
**opēs**, opum, F., plur., *resources, wealth* (78).  
**opifex**, ficis, C., *workman*.  
**opinio**, ōnis, F., *notion, idea* (31).  
**opīnor**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *to think, deem*.  
**opiparis**, e, *sumptuous*.  
**oportet**, uit, *there is need* (p. 40).  
**oppidānus**, ī, M., *townsman*; pl., *townspeople*.  
**oppidum**, ī, N., *fortified town* (98).  
**opportūnitās**, ātis, F., *fitness*.  
**opportūnus**, a, um, *fit, suitable, exposed* (30).  
**opprimo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, pressī, pressum, *oppress, crush* (ob; premo).  
**oppugno**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *attack, besiege* (in the modern sense).  
**[ops]**, opis, F. (only used in the nominative as name of a goddess; in the other cases), *help*.  
**optimē** (superl. of bene), *best*.  
**optimus**, a, um, *best (bonus)*.  
**opto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *choose, desire, wish for* (with acc.).  
**opulentia**, ae, F., *wealth*.  
**opus**, eris, N., *work* (58), *need*; as pred., *needful*.  
**ōra**, ae, F., *shore, coast*.  
**ōrātio**, ōnis, F., *speech, oration, plea, discourse*.  
**ōrātor**, ōris, M., *orator, envoy*.  
**orbis**, is, M., *circle, world*; orbis terrārum, *the earth*.  
**orbis**, a, um, *bereft, deprived*.  
**ordino**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to set in order, regulate*.  
**ordo**, inis, M., *order, rank, class*.  
**Orgetorix**, igis, M., an Helvetian chief.  
**oriēns**, tis, M., *rising, east*.  
**origo**, inis, F., *origin*.

**orior**, *irī*, **ortus**, *rise* (inflected in 3d conjugation).

**ornāmentum**, *ī*, N., *ornament*.

**ornātus**, *ūs*, M., *ornament*.

**orno**,<sup>1</sup> *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *to furnish, adorn, equip*.

**oro**,<sup>1</sup> *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *pray, entreat, pray for* (79).

**ortus**, *ūs*, M., *rising, birth*.

**ortus**, *a*, um (part. of **orior**), *risen, rising, descended*.

**Ortygia**, *ae*, F., the island on which Syracuse is built.

**ōs**, *ōris*, N., *mouth*.

**os**, *ossis*, N., *bone*.

**oscen**, *inis*, M., *a bird giving omens by its note* (technical word of augury: **os**; **cano**).

**osculor**,<sup>1</sup> *ārī*, *ātus*, *kiss*.

**ostendo**,<sup>3</sup> *ere*, *dī*, *sum*, or *tum*, *to show* (80).

**ostento**,<sup>1</sup> *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *display*.

**ostium**, *ī*, N., *door* (outer: 86), *mouth* (of a river).

**ostrum**, *ī*, N., *purple*. [*leisure*.

**ōtior**,<sup>1</sup> *ārī*, *ātus*, *be idle, enjoying*

**ōtiōsus**, *a*, um, *at ease, leisurely*.

**ōtium**, *ī*, N., *leisure, ease, peace*.

**ovile**, *is*, N., *sheepfold*.

**ovis**, *is*, F., *sheep*.

**ōvum**, *ī*, N., *egg*.

## P.

**P.** for *Publius*.

**pāce tuā**, *by your leave* (**pāx**).

**pactum**, *ī*, N., *way, means*.

**paedagōgus**, *ī*, M., *tutor of boys*.

**paene**, *almost*.

**paenitentia**, *ae*, F., *penitence*.

**paenitet** (**poenitet**), *uit*, *it repents* (p. 40); *me* —, *I repent*.

**PAG.** *fix* (**pango**; <sup>3</sup> **pax**).

**pāgānus**, *ī*, M., *a villager*.

**pāgus**, *ī*, M., *village, canton, district*.

**palam**, *openly*.

**palātum**, *ī*, N., *palate, taste*.

**pallesco**,<sup>3</sup> *ere*, *uī*, *to grow pale*.

**pallidus**, *a*, um, *pale, pallid*.

**palliolum**, *ī*, N., *robe* (99).

**palūdāmentum**, *ī*, N., *military cloak* (99).

**pālūs**, *ūdis*, F., *marsh*.

**palūster**, *tris*, *tre*, *marshy*.

**pando**,<sup>3</sup> *ere*, *dī*, *pāsum* or *pasum*, *to spread* (80).

**pāpilio**, *ōnis*, M., *butterfly*.

**pār**, *paris*, *equal, a match for* (6).

**parātus**, *a*, um, *ready, prepared*.

**parco**,<sup>3</sup> *ere*, *pepercī*, *parcitur* or *parsum*, *to spare* (dat.: 81).

**parēns**, *tis*, C., *parent*.

**pāreo**,<sup>2</sup> *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*, *obey* (dat.).

**paries**, *etis*, M., *wall* (of house).

**pario**,<sup>3</sup> *ere*, *peperi*, *partum* (*partum*), *bring forth, produce*.

**pariter**, *equally, alike*.

**paro**,<sup>1</sup> *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *to prepare, get, provide, furnish*.

**parricidium**, *ī*, N., *parricide*.

**pars**, *partis*, F., *part, share*.

**particula**, *ae*, F., *a particle*.

**partus**, *ūs*, M., *birth*.

**partus**, *a*, um (part. of **pario**), *gained, got, produced*.

**parum** (adv.), *a little, not enough*.

**parumper**, *a little while*.

**parvulus**, *a*, um (dim. of **parvus**), *very small*; *ab parvulis, from childhood*.

**parvus**, *a*, um, *small, scanty*.

**pasco**,<sup>3</sup> *ere*, *pāvī*, *pastum*, *feed*.

**pascuum**, *ī*, N., *pasture*.

**passus**, *a*, um, part. of **patior**,<sup>3</sup> *suffer*; also of **pando**,<sup>3</sup> *spread*; *crīnibus passīs, with dishevelled hair*.

**passus**, *ūs*, M., *step, pace*; *mille passuum, a mile*.

**pastor**, *ōris*, M., *shepherd*.

**pastus**, *a*, um, *fed, pastured*.

**pastus**, *ūs*, M., *pasturage*.

**patefacio**,<sup>3</sup> *facere*, *fēcī*, *factum*, *lay open*; *pass.*, **patefio** (80).

**patēns**, *tis*, *open, outspread*.

**pateo**,<sup>2</sup> *ēre*, *uī*, *lie open, be open*.

**pater**, *tris*, M., *father*.

**patera**, *ae*, F., *bowl* (sacrificial).

**paternus**, *a*, um, *of a father, of one's father*.

P  
Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z

- patiēns, tis, *patient* (patior).  
 patientia, ae, F., *patience*.  
 patina, ae, F., *plate, dish*.  
 patior,<sup>3</sup> ī, passus, *to suffer, permit*.  
 patria, ae, F., *fatherland, native city or land*.  
 patricius, a, um, *patrician*.  
 patrius, a, um, *of a father, of one's native city*.  
 patro,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to commit, perpetrate*.  
 paucī, ae, *a few, a few (only)*;  
 paucis, *in few words, briefly*.  
 paulātim, *little by little*.  
 paulisper, *a little while*.  
 paulus, a, um, *small*; paulum, *a little, a little while*; paulo post, *a little after*.  
 Paulus, ī, M., *a man's name*.  
 pauper, eris, *poor* (82).  
 paupertās, ātis, F., *poverty*.  
 pāvī, see pasco.  
 pavor, ōris, M., *terror*.  
 pāx, pācis, F., *peace*.  
 peccātum, ī, N., *sin, wrong* (32).  
 pecco,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *do wrong*.  
 pecto,<sup>3</sup> ere, pexī, pexum or pectitum, *to comb*.  
 pectus, oris, N., *breast, heart*.  
 pecūlium, ī, N., *property* (private savings of a slave).  
 pecūnia, ae, F., *money, a sum of money*.  
 pecus, udis, F., *creature* (in a flock), *domestic animal* (51).  
 pecus, oris, N., *flock* (51).  
 peditātus, ūs, M., *infantry*.  
 pellis, is, F., *skin, hide* (34).  
 pello,<sup>3</sup> ere, pepulī, pulsum, *to drive, expel*.  
 pendeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, pependī, *to hang*;  
 — ex, *depend on*.  
 pendo,<sup>3</sup> ere, pependī, pēnsum, *to weigh, pay* (weighing out the coin). [trate.  
 penetra,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to penetrate*.  
 penna, ae, F., *feather, wing*.  
 pēnsum, ī, N., *task* (pendo).  
 per- (in comp.), *very*; as permagnus.  
 per (acc.), *through, by means of*.  
 peractus, a, um (perago<sup>3</sup>), *finished, complete*.  
 peragro,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to travel over*.  
 perceptio, ōnis, F., *a gathering*.  
 percipio,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēpī, ceptum, *to gather, gain, perceive* (capio).  
 percommodus, a, um, *very convenient*.  
 percontor,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *to inquire*.  
 percrēbresco,<sup>3</sup> ere, uī, *thicken, become frequent, spread*.  
 percussus, a, um (percello<sup>3</sup>), *struck through, amazed*.  
 Perdiccās, ae, M., *a king of Macedon*.  
 perdifficilis, e, *very difficult*.  
 perdix, icis, C., *partridge*.  
 perdo,<sup>3</sup> didī, ditum, *to lose, ruin, destroy* (83).  
 peregrīnus, a, um, *foreigner, foreign*.  
 perennis, e, *perennial*.  
 pereō, ire, īī, itum, *perish* (in perf.), *be dead, be destroyed*.  
 perexcelsus, a, um, *very high*.  
 perfectus, a, um, *perfect, consummate*.  
 perficio,<sup>3</sup> ere, fēcī, fectum, *to do thoroughly, finish, perform*.  
 perfruo,<sup>3</sup> ī, fructus, *to enjoy thoroughly* (abl.).  
 perfugio,<sup>3</sup> ere, fūgī, fugitum, *to take refuge*.  
 perfundo,<sup>3</sup> ere, fūdī, fūsum, *to pour upon, drench* (FUD).  
 pergo,<sup>3</sup> ere, perrexī, perrectum, *keep on, proceed* (rego).  
 periclitātio, ōnis, F., *trial*.  
 periculōsus, a, um, *dangerous*.  
 periculum, ī, N., *trial, danger*.  
 perinde, *just so, so much*; — ac si, *just as if*.  
 peritus, a, um, *skilled* (with gen.).  
 perlucidus, a, um, *very clear*.  
 permaneo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, mānsī, mānsum, *to remain*.  
 permōtus, a, um (part. of permoveo<sup>2</sup>), *moved, disturbed*.  
 permultī, ae, a, *very many*.



**pernīcītās**, ātis, F., *swiftness*.  
**perobscūrus**, a, um, *very obscure*.

**perpaucī**, ae, a, *very few*.  
**perpetuus**, a, um, *perpetual, eternal*; **perpetuō**, *constantly*.

**Persa**, ae, M., *a Persian*; **Persa**, a name (of a dog).

**persequor**,<sup>3</sup> sequī, secūtus, *pur-sue, follow out*.

**Persēs**, ae, M., *Perses*, a king of Macedonia.

**Perseus**, eos (eī), M., the slayer of Medusa.

**persevēro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to persevere*.

**Persicus**, a, um, *Persian*.

**persōna**, ae, F., *mask, character* (of a play or dialogue).

**perspicio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, spexī, spectum, *to perceive, ascertain*.

**persuādeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, sī, sum, *per-suade* (dat.).

**pertineo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, tinuī, tentum, *reach, extend*; *pertineo ad, belong to, have to do with*.

**perturbo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to disturb*.

**pervenio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, vēnī, ventum, *to come through, arrive at* (with *ad* or *in*).

**perverto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, tī, sum, *overturn, overthrow*.

**pēs**, pedis, M., *foot*.

**pestilēns**, tis, *infected, unwholesome*.

**peto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, petīvī (ii), petītum, *aim at, seek, ask* (79).

**Phalaris**, idis, M., *Phalaris*, a name of a tyrant.

**phāsiānus**, ī, M., *pheasant*.

**philosophia**, ae, F., *philosophy*.

**philosophus**, ī, M., *philosopher*.

**Phōciōn**, ōnis, M., a statesman of Athens.

**pictūra**, ae, F., *painting, picture*.

**pietās**, ātis, F., *filial or family love*.

†**PIG**, *paint* (**pingo**,<sup>3</sup> **pictura**).

**piger**, gra, grum, *sluggish, inactive, stupid*.

**pignus**, oris, N., *pledge*.

**pigritia**, ae, F., *indolence, stupidity*.

**pingo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, pinxī, pictum, *paint*.

**pīnus**, ūs or ī, F., *pine-tree*.

**piscātor**, ōris, M., *fisherman*.

**piscis**, is, M., *fish*.

**piscor**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *fish, catch fish*.

**pīus**, a, um, *pious, tender, kind-hearted*.

**placeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī (or -itus sum), itum, *please*; *mihi placet, I am willing, I like*; *placetne, would you like?*

**placidus**, a, um, *mild, gentle*.

**plāco**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to soothe, appease*.

**plānē**, *plainly, absolutely*.

**plānitēs**, iēī, F., *plain, level*.

**Platō**, ōnis, M., *Plato*, a Greek philosopher.

**plausus**, ūs, M, *clapping* (of hands), *applause*.

**plēbēius**, a, um, *of the people, plebeian*.

**plēbs**, plēbis, F., *common people, commons* (85).

**plēnus**, a, um, *full*.

**plērusque**, -aque, -umque, *most*; *pl., very many*; *plerumque, generally, for the most part*.

**plūrimus**, a, um, *most, very much*; *pl., very many*; *plurimum, very much, most*.

**plūs**, plūris (see page 16), N., *more*; *plur., more, several*.

**pluvia**, ae, F., *rain* (properly an adj. with *aqua*).

**pōcūm**, ī, N., *bowl* (for drinking; *PO*).

**poēma**, atis, N., *poem* (27).

**Poenus**, a, um, *Carthaginian*.

**poēta**, ae, M., *poet*.

**polliceor**,<sup>2</sup> ērī, itus, *promise* (freely), *offer* (84).

**pōmum**, ī, N., *apple, fruit*.

**pōno**,<sup>3</sup> ere, posuī, positum, *to put, place*.

**pōns**, pontis, M., *bridge*.

**poposcī**, see **posco**. [*people*.

**populāris**, e, *popular, of the*

Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z

populatio, ōnis, F., *devastation*.  
 pōpuleus, a, um, *of the poplar*.  
 populus, ī, M., *people or organized community* (85).

por- (in compos.), *forward*.

porta, ae, F., *gate* (86).

portentum, ī, N., *a portent, prodigy*.

porticus, ūs, F., *gallery, porch, colonnade*.

porto,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *carry*.

portus, ūs, M., *harbor* (p. 18).

†POS, *put* (pono).

posco,<sup>3</sup> ere, poposci, *demand, claim, call for* (79).

possessio, ōnis, F., *possession, occupation*.

possideo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, sēdī, sessum, *possess, occupy* (potis; sedeo).

possum, posse, potuī, *can, be able*; past tenses, *could* (87).

post (acc.), *behind, after*; (adv.), = *postea, afterwards*.

posterus, a, um, *later*; with diēs, *next*; plur., *posterity*.

posthabeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *to esteem less, neglect*.

posthāc, *hereafter*. [as.

postquam, *after, when, as soon*

postrēmus, a, um, *last*; postremum, *lastly*; ad —, *at last*.

postridiē, *the next day, or the day after*.

postulo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to demand* (79).

potēns, tis, *powerful*.

potentia, ae, F., *power* (88).

potestās, ātis, F., *power* (over, with gen.: 88).

pōtio, ōnis, F., *a drink*.

potior,<sup>4</sup> irī, itus, *to possess, win, gain* (p. 37: abl.).

potior, us, *better, preferable*; potius, *rather*; potissimum, *first-of-all, chiefly*.

prae (abl.), *before, in comparison with, considering*; prae se ferre, *to display*. [yield.

praebeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *to afford*,

praebibō,<sup>3</sup> ere, bibī, bibitum, *to drink one's health*.

praecaveo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, cāvī, cautum, *to take precaution*.

praeceps, cipitis, *headlong*.

praeceptor, ōris, M., *instructor*.

praeceptum, ī, N., *instruction, precept*.

praecipio,<sup>1</sup> ere, cēpī, ceptum, *instruct* (dative).

praecipito,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to hurry, precipitate*.

praeclārē, nobly, *handsomely*.

praeclārus, a, um, *glorious*.

praeda, ae, F., *spoils, booty*.

praedico,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to predict*.

praedico,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *tell, boast, speak of with praise*.

praedo, ōnis, M., *robber, freebooter*.

praedium, ī, N., *landed estate*.

praeo, īre, ivī (iī), itum, *to go before, precede* (dat.).

praeſātus, a, um, *having spoken beforehand*; — *veniam, apologizing*.

praefero, ferre, tulī, lātum, *hold before, bear before, prefer* (dat.).

praemitto,<sup>3</sup> ere, misī, missum, *to send forward, in advance*.

praemium, ī, N., *reward, prize*.

praeparo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to prepare in advance*.

praeſruptus, a, um, *broken, steep* (rumpo).

praescribo,<sup>3</sup> ere, psī, ptum, *to prescribe*.

praesēns, tis, *present*.

praesertim, *especially*.

praeſidium, ī, N., *defence*.

praestābilis, e, *excellent, admirable*.

praestāns, tis, *excellent, conspicuous*.

praesto,<sup>1</sup> āre, stitī, (āvī), stitum (ātum), *to excel, bestow*; praestat, *it is better*.

praesum, esse, fuī, *to be at the head of or in command*.

praetendo,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, tum, *hold before or close* (dative). [except.

praeter (acc.), *beyond, besides*,

*praetereā, besides.*

*praetereo, ire, ii (ivī), itum, to pass by; to go (or return) beyond; praeterita, the past.*

*praetor, ōris, M., praetor, a Roman officer, who presided in courts.*

*prātum, ī, N., meadow (8).*

*prāvus, a, um, bad, evil (66).*

*precēs, um, F., plur. (also dat., acc., abl. sing.), prayers.*

*precor,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, to beseech, pray (79); bene —, wish well.*

*premo,<sup>3</sup> ere, pressī, pressum, to press; pressum lāc, cheese or curd.*

*pretium, ī, N., price.*

*Priamidēs, ae, M., son of Priam.*

*Priāmus, ī, M., Priam, king of Troy.*

*prīdem, long ago, long since.*

*prīmōrēs, um, chief men. † first.*

*prīmus, a, um, first; prīmō, at*

*princeps, ipis, chief.*

*principium, ī, N., beginning.*

*prīscus, a, um, early, ancient.*

*prīstinus, a, um, former, early.*

*prīus, before, sooner.*

*prīvātīm, privately.*

*prīus . . . quam, before, sooner than; nōn . . . —, not . . . until.*

*prīvātus, ī, M., private person.*

*prīvo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, to deprive.*

*prō (abl.), before, for, instead, in behalf of, in proportion to, as.*

*probābilis, e, probable, approved.*

*probo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, to prove, approve.*

*procella, ae, F., storm, tempest.*

*procerēs, um, chiefs.*

*prōcōnsul, ulis, M., proconsul.*

*procul, far off.*

*prōdeo, ire, ii, itum, to go forth.*

*prōdesse, infin. of prosum.*

*prōdigiōsus, a, um, prodigious, astonishing.*

*prōdigium, ī, N., prodigy.*

*prōdo,<sup>3</sup> dere, didī, ditum, give forth, betray. [bring forward.*

*prōdūco,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, lead or*

*proelior,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, give battle.*

*proelium, ī, N., battle (22).*

*profectō, as a fact, surely.*

*prōfero, ferre, tulī, lātum, publish, give out, put forth,*

*prōficio,<sup>3</sup> ere, fēcī, fectum, to effect, put forward.*

*prōficiscor,<sup>3</sup> cī, profectus, set forth, go, proceed (43).*

*prōfugio,<sup>3</sup> ere, fūgī, to escape, flee.*

*prōfui, see prosum.*

*prōfundo,<sup>3</sup> ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour forth, lavish.*

*prōgredior,<sup>3</sup> dī, gressus, to advance (pro; gradior).*

*prohibeo,<sup>2</sup> ere, uī, itum, to forbid.*

*proinde, accordingly, so, then.*

*prōjicio<sup>3</sup> (prōicio), ere, jēcī, jectum, cast forth, throw.*

*prōlēs, is, F., offspring.*

*prōmitto,<sup>3</sup> ere, mīsi, missum (let go forth), promise (84).*

*prōmissus, a, um (part. of preceding), long; N., a promise.*

*prōmo,<sup>3</sup> ere, mpsī, mptum, to draw forth; promptus, ready.*

*Pronoea, ae, F., Providence.*

*prope (acc.), near, near by; as adv., nearly, almost.*

*propemodum, almost, nearly.*

*properē, in haste.*

*propero,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, hasten.*

*propinquus, a, um, near, neighboring.*

*propitius, a, um, propitious.*

*prōpōno,<sup>3</sup> ere, posuī, positum, propose, set forward.*

*prōpositum, ī, N., purpose.*

*propter (acc.), near, on account of; propterea quod, because.*

*prōrēpo,<sup>3</sup> ere, psi, ptum, to crawl forth.*

*prōrsus, altogether, precisely.*

*prōscribo,<sup>3</sup> ere, scripsi, scriptum, post up (in writing), advertise, proscribe.*

*Proserpina, ae, F., Proserpine, daughter of Ceres, and queen of the lower world.*

*prōsilio,<sup>4</sup> ire, uī, spring forth.*

*prōspicio,<sup>3</sup> ere, spexī, spectrum, to look forth, view, see.*

Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z

prōsum (p. 26), *to benefit, help*.  
 prōtero,<sup>3</sup> ere, trīvī, trītum, *to tread upon* (follow closely).  
 protervus, a, um, *saucy, bold*.  
 prōtinus (adv.), *farther on, at once, immediately*.  
 prōtulī (profero), *put forth*.  
 prōverbium, ī, N., *proverb*.  
 prōvidentia, ae, F., *providence, foresight, prudence*.  
 prōvideo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, vidī, vīsum, *provide, foresee*.  
 prōvidus, a, um, *provident*.  
 prōvincia, ae, F., *province* (sphere of action).  
 prōvoco,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to call forth, challenge*.  
 prōximus, a, um, *nearest, next; e proximo, from near by*.  
 prūdēns (= providens), tis, *prudent, wise*.  
 prūdenter, *prudently*.  
 prūdētia, ae, F., *prudence, discretion*.  
 prūnum, ī, N., *a plum*.  
 prytanīum, ī, N., *town hall*.  
 publicē, *publicly, officially, at the public expense*.  
 publicus, a, um, *public*.  
 Publius, ī, M., *Roman name*.  
 pudet, uit, *it shames* (p. 40).  
 pudicitia, ae, F., *modesty*.  
 pudīcus, a, um, *modest*.  
 pudor, ōris, M., *sense of shame, or honor*.  
 puella, ae, F., *girl, maiden*.  
 puer, ī, M., *boy, child*.  
 pueritia, ae, F., *childhood* (ending at 17).  
 puerulus, ī, M., *little boy*.  
 ‡PUG, *push, prick* (pungo,<sup>3</sup> punctus).  
 pugillārēs, um, *note-book* (M.).  
 pugna, ae, F., *battle, fight*.  
 pugnātor, ōris, M., *fighter, fighting man*.  
 pugnāx, ācis, *pugnacious*.  
 pugno,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *fight* (90).  
 pugnus, ī, M., *fist*.  
 pulcher (or pulcer), cra, crum, *beautiful* (91).

pulcritūdo, inis, F., *beauty*.  
 pullus, ī, M., *chicken, young bird*.  
 pulso,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to knock, beat* (intens. of pello).  
 pulsus, a, um, *part. of pello, driven, expelled*.  
 punctum, ī, N., *point, spot*.  
 Pūnicus, a, um, *Carthaginian*.  
 puppis, is, im, ī, F., *stern, ship* (poetical: 73).  
 purpura, ae, F., *purple*.  
 purpurātus, a, um, *dressed in red; a courtier*.  
 pusillanimus, a, um, *feeble-hearted*.  
 pusillus, a, um, *feeble, slight*.  
 puter, tris, tre, *rotten, fetid*.  
 pūtesco,<sup>3</sup> ere, putui, *to grow offensive* (in smell), *rot*.  
 puto,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to think, suppose* (92).  
 putrefacio,<sup>3</sup> ere, fēcī, factum, *to corrupt, rot; pass., fīo*.  
 Pyrrhus, ī, M., *a king of Epirus*.  
 Pythagorās, ae, M., *an ancient Greek philosopher*.

## Q.

Q. for Quintus.  
 quā, *where, in what way*.  
 quācumque, *wherever*.  
 quadriennium, ī, N., *space of four years*.  
 quae, see quī, or quis.  
 quaero,<sup>3</sup> ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, *to seek, ask* (79).  
 quaeso,<sup>3</sup> ere, ivī (iī), *to ask*.  
 quaestio, ōnis, F., *investigation*.  
 quaestor, ōris, M., *quaestor, a Roman officer; like paymaster*.  
 quālis, e, *as, what* (correl. to tālis); *such as*.  
 quam, *how, as, than; quam maximus, the very greatest* (as great as the greatest); *quam primum, as soon as possible*.  
 quamdiū, *how long, as long as*.  
 quamobrem, *why, wherefore*.

quamquam, *although* (lit. *how-ever*), *though* (corrective).  
 quamvis, *however much, though*.  
 quando, *when* (interrog.), *since*; num —, *whether ever*.  
 quandoquidem, *since*.  
 quantopere, *how greatly*.  
 quantus, a, um, *how great*.  
 quartus, a, um, *fourth*.  
 quasi, *as if, as it were*.  
 quater, *four times*.  
 quatio,<sup>3</sup> ere, quassum, *to shake*.  
 quattuor, *four*.  
 -que (enclitic), *and*.  
 quemadmodum, *how*.  
 queo (def. Gr. p. 82), *can* (87).  
 quercus, ūs, F., *oak*.  
 queror,<sup>3</sup> ī, questus, *to complain, bewail*.  
 quī, quae, quod, *who, which, that, as* (rel.); quod, *so far as*.  
 quī, old ablative form of quis; as quicum, *with whom*.  
 quia, *because*.  
 quicquam, *any thing, at all*.  
 quicquid, *whatever*. [*whoever*.  
 quicumque, quaecumque, &c.,  
 quid (adv. acc.), *what? why?*  
 quīdam, quaedam, &c., *a certain one* (p. 21, a).  
 quidem, *in fact, to be sure, at least*; ne . . quidem, *not even*.  
 quidnī, *why not?*  
 quiēs, ētis, F., *quiet, rest*.  
 quiētus, a, um, *quiet, still*.  
 quilibet, quaelibet, &c., *any* (whatever: p. 21, a).  
 quīn, *why not? but that*.  
 quīnam, quisnam, (emph. interrog.), *who* (tell me)?  
 quintuplex, plicis, *five-fold*.  
 Quintus, ī, M., *a proper name*.  
 quintus, a, um, *fifth*.  
 Quiritēs, ium, *citizens* (Roman).  
 quis, quae, quid, *who? what?* (p. 20), *quis homo? what man* (the person)? quī homo? *what sort of man?*  
 quispiam, *any one, some one*.  
 quisquam, quaequam, &c., *any, any one* (p. 21, a).

quisque, quaeque, quodque, *every, each*.  
 quisquis, *whoever* (p. 21, c).  
 quō, *whither*; with comparatives, eō . . quō, *the . . the*.  
 quoad, *as far as, according as*.  
 quōcumque, *whithersoever*.  
 quod (adv. acc.: see quī or quis), *so far as, the fact that* (see p. 118).  
 quōminus, *so that not* (after verbs of hindrance: p. 108, c).  
 quōmodo, *how*.  
 quondam, *once, formerly*.  
 quoque, *also, as well*.  
 quot, *how many, as* (many).  
 quotannis, *each or every year, yearly*.  
 quotidiānus, a, um (adj.), *daily*.  
 quotidiē (adv.), *daily*.  
 quotiēs, *how often? as often as*.  
 quōtus, a, um, *one of how many*; quota hora, *what o'clock?* (as prima, &c.).

## R.

rādo,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, *to scrape, graze, shave*.  
 rāmulus, ī, M., *a little branch, twig*.  
 rāmus, ī, M., *a branch, bough*.  
 rāna, ae, F., *frog*.  
 ‡RAP, *seize* (rapio).  
 rapidus, a, um, *swift, violent*.  
 rapio,<sup>3</sup> ere, rapuī, raptum, *seize, carry off* (with force: 25).  
 raptio,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvi, ātum, *seize*.  
 raptus, a, um, *caught, stolen*.  
 raptus, ūs, M., *a carrying off*.  
 rārō, *rarely, seldom*.  
 rārus, a, um, *rare, few, scattered*.  
 rāstrum, ī, N., *rake*; pl. rastrī.  
 rāsus, a, um, *shorn* (rādo).  
 ratio, ōnis, F., *reckoning, reason, method*.  
 ratus, a, um, *confirmed, fixed*.  
 ‡RE, *thing, think* (res, reor<sup>2</sup>).  
 re- or red- (in compos.), *back or again*.

recēns, tis, *recent, fresh*.  
 recidivus, a, um, *restored*.  
 recido,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, cāsum, *fall back*.  
 recipio,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēpi, ceptum, *to take back, recover (capio)*.  
 recito,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to recite*.  
 reclūdo,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, *to unlock, throw open (80: claudō)*.  
 rectē, *rightly*.  
 rector, ōris, M., *ruler (rego)*.  
 rectus, a, um, *straight, right*.  
 recūso,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *decline, refuse (causa)*.  
 redditus, a, um, *restored*.  
 reddo,<sup>3</sup> dere, didī, ditum, *give back, restore, give out, produce*.  
 redeo, īre, īi, itum, *return*.  
 redintegro,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to renew, restore*.  
 reditus, ūs, M., *return*.  
 redolēns, tis, *having the smell of*.  
 redundo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *overflow (unda)*.  
 refero, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bring back, relate, represent, restore*.  
 refervescō,<sup>3</sup> ere, vī, *to boil up*.  
 reficio,<sup>3</sup> ere, fēcī, fectum, *to repair, refresh*.  
 reflo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to blow contrary*.  
 †REG, guide, rule (rego,<sup>3</sup> rex).  
 rēgia, ae. F. (sc. domus), *palace*.  
 rēgiē, *royally*.  
 rēgīna, ae, F., *queen, princess*.  
 regio, ōnis, F., *region*.  
 rēgius, a, um, *royal, kingly*.  
 regno,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *reign*.  
 rēgo,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to rule (81)*.  
 religio, ōnis, F., *religion, worship, reverence*.  
 relinquo,<sup>3</sup> ere, liquī, lictum, *to leave, abandon*.  
 reliquus, a, um, *remaining*.  
 remedium, ī, N., *remedy*. [(68).  
 reminiscor,<sup>3</sup> ī, *to call to mind*.  
 remissus, a, um, *slack, remiss; comparative, less intense*.  
 remitto,<sup>3</sup> ere, mīsi, missum, *send back, let go, relax*.  
 remoror,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to delay*.  
 remōtus, a, um, *remote*.

remūneror,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to reward*.  
 renovo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to renew*.  
 renuntio,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to carry back tidings*.  
 reor,<sup>2</sup> rērī, ratus, *think (92)*.  
 reparo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to recover, restore, renew*.  
 repello,<sup>3</sup> ere, pulī, pulsum, *to push back, repel*.  
 repente, *suddenly*.  
 repentinus, a, um, *sudden*.  
 reperio,<sup>1</sup> īre, reperī, repertum, *find, discover (55)*.  
 repeto,<sup>3</sup> ere, īvī (īi), itum, *to claim back, demand*.  
 repetundae, ārum, F., *claim for restitution, on a charge of extortion (sc. res)*.  
 repōno,<sup>3</sup> ere, posuī, positum, *to put by, store*.  
 reporto,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to carry back*.  
 reprehendo,<sup>3</sup> ere, dī, sum, *blame, seize*.  
 reprehēnsio,<sup>1</sup> āre, *hold in check*.  
 reprimo,<sup>3</sup> ere, pressī, pressum, *to push back, repress, restrain*.  
 repudio,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to reject, repudiate*.  
 repugno,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to fight back, resist*.  
 requiēs, ētis, F., *rest, repose*.  
 requiro,<sup>3</sup> ere, sīvī (sīi), sītum, *to seek, search, miss (quaero)*.  
 rēs, reī, F., *thing, property, state, event; plur., circumstances; res publica, commonwealth, public life*.  
 rescindo,<sup>3</sup> ere, scidī, scissum, *to cut away*.  
 reservo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *reserve, keep back, preserve*.  
 resolvo,<sup>3</sup> ere, vī, solūtum, *melt, dissolve*.  
 resono,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, *to resound*.  
 respicio,<sup>3</sup> ere, spexī, spectrum, *to look back*.  
 respondeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, dī, sum, *to reply, answer*.  
 rēs publica, reī publicae, F., *republic, public life*.

restat, *it remains* (to be done).  
 restinguo,<sup>3</sup> ere, stinxī, stinctum,  
*to extinguish, quench.*  
 restituo,<sup>3</sup> ere, uī, ūtum, *to re-*  
*store (statuo).*  
 rēte, is, N., *hunting or fishing-*  
*net.*  
 retineo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, tentum, *to hold*  
*back, retain (teneo).*  
 retraho,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to drag*  
*back.*  
 retrō, *back, backward, behind.*  
 rēvērā, *in truth, really.*  
 reverentia, ae, F., *reverence.*  
 revertor,<sup>3</sup> tī, sus, *to return.*  
 revīso,<sup>3</sup> ere, *revisit, see again.*  
 revoco,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *recall.*  
 revolo,<sup>1</sup> āre, *to fly back.*  
 rex, rēgis, M., *king.*  
 Rhea Silvia, ae, F., *the mother*  
*of Romulus.*  
 Rhēnus, ī, M., *the Rhine.*  
 Rhodanus, ī, M., *the Rhone.*  
 Rhodus, ī, F., *Rhodes.*  
 rictus, ūs, M., *the open mouth.*  
 rideo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, sī, sum, *to laugh,*  
*laugh at, ridicule.*  
 rīpa, ae, F., *river-bank.*  
 risus, ūs, M., *smile, laughter.*  
 rīte, *rightly, duly.*  
 rīvulus, ī, M., *little stream.*  
 rīvus, ī, M., *stream, brook (49).*  
 rīxa, ae, F., *brawl, quarrel.*  
 rōbustus, a, um, *stout, sturdy.*  
 rogo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *demand,*  
*ask, entreat (two acc.: 79).*  
 Rōma, ae, F., *Rome.*  
 Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman.*  
 Rōmulus, ī, M., *the founder of*  
*Rome.*  
 rōs, rōris, M., *dew.*  
 rosa, ae, F., *rose.*  
 rōscidus, a, um, *dewy.*  
 rōstrum, ī, N., *beak; pl., the*  
*rostrum (the raised platform*  
*from which Roman orators*  
*addressed the people).*  
 rubēns, tis, *glowing, red.*  
 ruber, bra, brum, *red, ruddy.*  
 rūbigo, inis, F., *rust, blight.*  
 rudo,<sup>3</sup> ere, īvī, ītum, *to bray.*

rūdus, eris, N., *rubbish.*  
 rugio,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī, ītum, *to roar.*  
 rugītus, ūs, M., *roaring, braying.*  
 ruīna, ae, F., *downfall, ruin.*  
 rūnōsus, a, um, *ruinous. [(46).*  
 rūmor, ōris, M., *report, rumor*  
 rumpo,<sup>3</sup> ere, rūpī, ruptum, *to*  
*break, burst (RUP).*  
 rūpēs, is, F., *rock (59).*  
 ruptus, a, um, *broken.*  
 rūrsus, *again.*  
 rūs, rūris, N., *the country (as*  
*opposed to city); pl., fields (8);*  
 rūri, *in (rure, from) the coun-*  
*try; rus (acc.), to the country.*  
 rūsticus, a, um, *of the country,*  
*rustic; M., a farmer.*

## S.

Sabīnus, a, um, *Sabine.*  
 sacer, cra, crum, *sacred (SAC).*  
 sacerdōs, ōtis, M. or F., *priest,*  
*priestess.*  
 sacra, ōrum, N., *sacred rites.*  
 saepe, ius, issimē, *often.*  
 saepenumero, *oftentimes.*  
 saevitia, ae, F., *cruelty.*  
 saevus, a, um, *cruel (93).*  
 sagācitās, ātis, F., *keenness of*  
*scent, sagacity, keenness.*  
 sagāx, ācis, *keen, sagacious.*  
 Saguntum, ī, N., *a city of Spain.*  
 sāl, salis, M., *salt.*  
 salio,<sup>4</sup> īre, uī, saltum, *to leap.*  
 saltatio, ōnis, F., *dancing.*  
 saltem, *at least.*  
 salto,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to dance,*  
*leap (intens. of salio).*  
 salūber, bris, bre, *wholesome.*  
 salūs, ūtis, F., *health, safety,*  
*preservation. [some.*  
 salūtifer, fera, ferum, *whole-*  
 salūto,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to salute.*  
 salveo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, *be well; imp., hail!*  
 salvus, a, um, *safe, sound.*  
 sancio,<sup>4</sup> īre, sanxī, sanctum, *to*  
*sanction, establish (SAC).*  
 sanctus, a, um, *sacred.*  
 sānē, *to be sure, doubtless.*

S  
T  
U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z

**sanguis**, inis, M., *blood* (in the veins, or fresh), *stock, race*.  
**sānus**, a, um, *sound, sane*.  
**sapiēns**, tis, *wise*.  
**sapientia**, ae, F., *wisdom*.  
**sapio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, īvī (iī), *to taste or savor of, understand, be wise*.  
**Sardēs**, ium, *Sardis*, the capital of Lydia (F.).  
**satelles**, itis, C., *satellite, attendant*.  
**satis**, *enough*; — est, *very well*.  
**satis-facio**,<sup>3</sup> *satisfy* (dat.).  
**satus**, a, um (part. of **sero**), *sown, sprung, descended*.  
**saxum**, ī, N., *a stone, rock* (59).  
**scabo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, bī, *to scratch*.  
**Scaevola**, ae, M., a man's name, meaning *left-handed*.  
**scalmus**, ī, M., *thole-pin*.  
**scelerātus**, a, um; **scelestus**, a, um, *wicked, criminal* (66).  
**scelus**, eris, N., *crime, guilt*.  
**scēna**, ae, F., *scene, theatre-curtain, stage*.  
**scientia**, ae, F., *knowledge* (17).  
**scilicet**, *that is to say, forsooth*.  
**scindo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, scidī, scissum, *to cut, rend, divide*.  
**scio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī, ītum, *know* (as fact).  
**Scīpio**, ōnis, M., *Scipio*.  
**scībitor**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to inquire*.  
**scrība**, ae, M., *scribe, secretary*.  
**scrībo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, psī, ptum, *to write*.  
**scriptum**, ī, N., *a writing*.  
**scūtum**, ī, N., *a shield* (28).  
**Scythēs**, ae, M., *Scythian* (of an Asiatic or Tartar people).  
**sē**, suī, sibi, *self* (p. 19).  
**sē-**, **sēd-** (in compos.), *apart*.  
**seco**,<sup>1</sup> āre, uī, sectum, *cut*.  
**sector**, ōris, M., *divider, buyer*.  
**sector**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to chase* (95), *hunt* (intens. of **sequor**).  
**secundum** (prep. acc.), *along, by, according to*.  
**secundus**, a, um, *second, favorable* (**sequor**).  
**secūris**, is, im, ī, F., *axe*.  
**sēcūrus**, a, um, *secure, without care or difficulty*.

**secūtus**, see **sequor**.  
**sed**, *but*.  
**sēdecim**, *sixteen*.  
**sedeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, sēdī, sessum, *sit*.  
**sedēs**, is, F., *seat, abode* (39).  
**seges**, etis, F., *standing crop* (94).  
**segnis**, e, *lazy, sluggish*.  
**semel**, *once*.  
**sēmēstris**, e, *of six months*.  
**sēmet**, see **-met**.  
**semper**, *always*.  
**senātus**, ūs, M., *senate*.  
**Seneca**, ae, M., a Roman philosopher.  
**senectūs**, ūtis, F., *old age*.  
**senesco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, senuī, *to grow old, wane, waste away*.  
**senex**, senis, M., *old man* (100).  
**sēnī**, ae, a, *six* (each, at a time).  
**senilis**, e, *of an old man*.  
**senior**, ōris, *older*; pl., *elders*.  
**Senones**, um, a people of Gaul.  
**sēnsus**, ūs, M., *feeling, sense*.  
**sententia**, ae, F., *opinion* (31).  
**sentio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, *feel, notice, perceive, understand*.  
**sentis**, is, M., *thorn, brier*.  
**sepelio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī (iī), *sepultum, to bury*.  
**sēpio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, sēpsī, sēptum, *to fence, enclose*.  
**septem**, *seven*.  
**septimus**, a, um, *seventh*.  
**septingentī**, ae, a, *seven hundred*. — **Ser.** for *Servius*.  
**sepulcrum**, ī, N., *tomb*.  
**sequor**,<sup>3</sup> quī, cūtus, *follow* (95).  
**serēnus**, a, um, *calm, clear, fair*.  
**Serīphus**, a, um, of *Seriphus*, a Greek island.  
**sermo**, ōnis, M., *talk, discourse*.  
**sero**,<sup>3</sup> ere, seruī, sertum, *weave*.  
**sero**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sēvī, satum, *to plant*.  
**serpēns**, tis, M. or F., *serpent* (12).  
**sērus**, a, um, *late, too late*.  
**servilis**, e, *of slaves, servile*.  
**servitūs**, ūtis, F., *slavery*.  
**servitium**, ī, N., *slavery, troop of slaves*.  
**servo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to save, preserve, keep*.



**servus**, ī, M., *slave*.  
**sessio**, ōnis, F., *sitting*.  
**sessum**, (sup. of **sedeo**), *to a seat*.  
**sēstertium**, ī, M., 1000 sesterces, = \$50 (Gr. § 85).  
**sēstertius**, ī, M., *sesterce*, a coin of the value of 5 cents.  
**seu**, *or*; **seu . . seu**, *whether . . or, if either . . . or if*.  
**sevērē**, *with severity*.  
**sevērus**, a, um, *stern, severe*.  
**sex**, *six*.  
**sextus**, a, um, *sixth*.  
**sī**, *if*.  
**sībilo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, *to hiss*.  
**sīc**, *so, thus*.  
**sīcine**, *so?* (interrog.).  
**Sicilia**, ae, F., *Sicily*.  
**Siciliēnsis**, e, or **Sīculus**, a, um, *Sicilian*.  
**sīcut**, **sīcuti**, *as, just as, as also*.  
**sīdus**, eris, N., *star, constellation*.  
**significo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *make a sign, signify, indicate*.  
**signum**, ī, N., *mark, sign, standard, statue*.  
**silentium**, ī, N., *silence*.  
**sileo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, *to be silent (about)*.  
**silva**, ae, F., *wood, forest* (96).  
**simia**, ae, F., *a monkey* ("pug-nose").  
**similis**, e, *like, similar* (6).  
**similitūdo**, inis, F., *likeness*.  
**simul**, *at the same time*; **simul** ac, *as soon as*.  
**simulācrum**, ī, N., *an image*.  
**simulo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to feign, pretend*.  
**sīn**, *but if*.  
**sine** (abl.), *without*.  
**singulāris**, e, *singular, unique*.  
**singulī**, ae, a (distributive numeral), *one by one, single*.  
**sino**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sīvī, situm, *to leave, let, permit*.  
**sisto**,<sup>3</sup> ere, stitī, statum, *to set, place* (STA).  
**sitio**,<sup>1</sup> ire, īvī (īī), *to thirst*.  
**sitis**, is, im, ī, F., *thirst*.  
**situla**, ae, F., *water-bucket*.

**situs**, ūs, M., *neglect, dust*.  
**situs**, a, um (**sino**), *placed*; **est situs**, *rests, is situated*; **in eō** —, *consisting in this*.  
**sive**, *whether, or*.  
**socer**, cerī, M., *father-in-law*.  
**societās**, ātis, F., *partnership, alliance*.  
**socius**, ī, M., *companion, partner, ally* (29).  
**Sōcratēs**, is, M., *a philosopher of Athens*.  
**sodālis**, is, C., *companion, friend, schoolmate* (29).  
**sōl**, sōlis, M., *the sun*.  
**soleo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, solitus, *be accustomed*.  
**sōlātium** (**sōlācium**), ī, N., *solace, comfort*.  
**sōlītūdo**, inis, F., *solitude*.  
**sollennis**, e, *customary, solemn*.  
**sollers**, tis, *skilful*.  
**sollertia**, ae, F., *skill*.  
**solstitium**, ī, N., *solstice* ("sun-stay"), *midsummer*.  
**sōlum**, *only*.  
**sōlum**, ī, N., *soil, ground*.  
**sōlus**, a, um, *alone, only* (p. 7).  
**solvo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, solvī, solūtum, *loosen, relieve*; **crines solvere**, *to throw loose the hair* (in sign of mourning).  
**somnium**, ī, N., *dream*.  
**somnus**, ī, M., *sleep*.  
**sono**,<sup>1</sup> āre, uī, itum, *to resound, sound*.  
**sonus**, ī, M., *sound* (97).  
**sopor**, ōris, M., *sleep*.  
**sordidus**, a, um, *dirty, mean* (20).  
**soror**, ōris, F., *sister*.  
**sors**, sortis, F., *lot, destiny*.  
**sospes**, itis, *safe* (escaped from peril).  
**Sp.** abbrev. of *Spurius*.  
**spargo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sī, sum, *to scatter*.  
**Sparta**, ae, F., *a city of southern Greece*.  
**spatior**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to walk about*.  
**spatiōsus**, a, um, *spacious*.  
**spatium**, ī, N., *space*.  
**speciēs**, iēī, F., *show, appearance*.

T  
U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z

**specimen**, inis, N., *show, specimen.*  
**speciosus**, a, um, *showy, beautiful* (91).  
**spectābilis**, e, *of noble aspect.*  
**spectāculum**, ī, N., *spectacle.*  
**specto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *behold, view, look, face (-spicio).*  
**spelunca**, ae, F., *cavern.*  
**spēro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to hope.*  
**spēs**, eī, F., *hope.*  
**spīro**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to breathe.*  
**splendidus**, a, um, *splendid.*  
**spolio**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to rob, plunder.*  
**spondeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, spondī, spōnsum, *to promise, pledge, betroth* (84). [*isēd.*]  
**spōnsus**, a, um, *betrothed, promise*  
**sponte** (abl.), *accord; suā —, of his own accord.*  
**squālens**, tis, *rude, disfigured.*  
**squāleo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, *to be in mourning.*  
**squālor**, ōris, M., *filth, mourning apparel, wretched plight* (38).  
**†STA**, *stand* (sto,<sup>1</sup> sisto,<sup>3</sup> statuo, instituo<sup>3</sup>).  
**statim**, *immediately.*  
**statio**, ōnis, F., *post, station.*  
**statua**, ae, F., *statue.*  
**statūra**, ae, F., *stature.*  
**status**, ūs, M., *posture, attitude, condition.*  
**stella**, ae, F., *star.*  
**sterno**,<sup>3</sup> ere, strāvī, strātum, *strew, spread a couch.*  
**stilus**, ī, M., *style* (for writing).  
**stimulus**, ī, M., *goad.*  
**stipendium**, ī, N., *soldier's pay.*  
**stipula**, ae, F., *stubble.*  
**stirps**, stirpis, *stock, race* (50).  
**sto**,<sup>1</sup> stāre, stetī, statum, *stand, stop, cost.*  
**Stōicus**, ī, M., *a Stoic.*  
**stomachor**,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *be vexed.*  
**strenuus**, a, um, *bold, vigorous.*  
**strepitus**, ūs, M., *noise* (97).  
**struo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to build.*  
**studeo**,<sup>2</sup> ere, studuī, *to be earnest or eager, favor* (dat.), *study.*

**studium**, ī, N., *earnestness, fondness* (for), *study, zeal.*  
**stultitia**, ae, F., *folly.*  
**stultus**, a, um, *foolish; M., a fool.*  
**stupor**, ōris, M., *stupor.*  
**suādeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, sī, sum, *to advise.*  
**suāpte** (abl.), *his, her, or their own* (intens. of suā, abl.).  
**suāvis**, e, *sweet* (41).  
**suāvitās**, ātis, F., *sweet taste, sweetness.*  
**suāviter**, *sweetly.*  
**sub** (abl.), *under, near.*  
**subdūco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to withdraw.*  
**subigo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, ēgī, actum, *subdue, break in* (sub-ago).  
**subitus**, a, um, *sudden; subito, suddenly.*  
**sublātus**, see *tollo.*  
**sublevo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to uplift, lighten, relieve* (levis).  
**sublicius**, a, um, *of timber, on piles.*  
**subsidium**, ī, N., *help, aid, relief.*  
**subvenio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, vēnī, ventum, *come to the relief, help.*  
**succēdo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēssī, cēssum, *come up to, advance, prosper, succeed.*  
**succurro**,<sup>3</sup> ere, currī, cursum, *to run up to, help.*  
**sūdo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to sweat, exude.*  
**sūdor**, ōris, M., *sweat.*  
**Suēvī**, ōrum, M., *Suevi or Swabians, a German tribe.*  
**Sulla**, ae, M., *Sulla, a Roman general.*  
**sum**, esse, fuī, *I am, to be.*  
**summus**, a, um, *highest, utmost, greatest, highest part; — cortex, outer hull.* [*take* (25).]  
**sūmo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, sumpī, sumptum, *to super* (acc. or abl.), *upon.*  
**superbia**, ae, F., *pride.*  
**superbus**, a, um, *proud, haughty.*  
**superincidēs**, tis, *falling upon.*  
**superior**, us, *upper.*  
**supero**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *surpass.*

**superstes**, stitis, *surviving, a survivor.*

**supplex**, icis (adj.), *suppliant.*

**supplicium**, ī, N., *supplication, (capital) punishment.*

**suppono**,<sup>3</sup> ere, posuī, positum, *to put beneath (dative).*

**suprā** (acc.), *above, beyond.*

**surculus**, ī, M., *sapling.*

**surgo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, surrexī, surrectum, *to rise.*

**sūs**, suis, C., *swine* (p. 14, 3).

**suscipio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, cēpī, ceptum, *to undertake, receive (in succession).*

**suscito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to rouse, excite.*

**suspicio**,<sup>3</sup> ere, spexī, spectrum, *look up to or at, suspect; suspectus, suspicious.*

**sustento**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *sustain, keep alive.*

**sustineo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, tentum, *to sustain, check, bear up against (sub; teneo).*

**sustulī**, *sustuleram, see tollo.*

**suus**, a, um, *his (her or their), reflexive* (89).

**Syrācūsae**, ārum, F., *Syracuse, a city of Sicily.*

**Syrācūsānus**, a, um, *Syracusan.*

T.

**tabellae**, ārum, F., *tablets (for writing; singular rare).*

**tabellarius**, ī, M., *messenger, runner* (bearer of messages).

**taberna**, ae, F., *shop, hut.*

**tabula**, ae, F., *plank, panel (for pictures), picture.*

**tacitus**, a, um, *silent.*

**tactus**, a, um (**tango**), *touched.*

**taeda**, ae, F., *pine-tree, torch.*

**taedet**, uit, *it wearies* (acc. and gen. or infin.).

**taedium**, ī, N., *weariness, fatigue.*

†**TAG**, touch (**tango**<sup>3</sup>).

**talentum**, ī, N., *talent* (weight or money).

**tālis**, e, *such; tāle, such a thing.*

**tālus**, ī, M., *ankle, heel.*

**tamen**, yet, nevertheless, however.

**tamquam** (**tanquam**), *so as, just so, as if.*

**tandem**, at length, pray (with question).

**tango**,<sup>3</sup> ere, tetigī, tactum, *touch.*

**tanquam**, see **tamquam**.

**tantopere**, *so much.*

**tantum**, *so much, only; with plur. gen., so many; tantum abest, it is so far [from being the case].*

**tantus**, a, um, *so great.*

**Tarentum**, ī, N., *Tarentum, a town of South Italy.*

**taurus**, ī, M., *bull.*

**tectum**, ī, N., *roof, dwelling.*

**tēcum** = cum and te from tu.

†**TEG**, cover (**tego**, **tectum**).

**tegimentum**, ī, N., *covering, clothing, shelter.*

**tego**,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to shelter, cover.*

**tellūs**, ūris, F., *earth.*

**tēlum**, ī, N., *weapon of attack* (16).

**temere**, *rashly, hastily.*

**temno**,<sup>3</sup> ere, temp̄sī, *to despise.*

**temperātus**, a, um, *tempered, temperate.*

**tempero**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to moderate, control, restrain; spare* (dat.: 81).

**tempestās**, ātis, F., *weather, storm.*

**tempestivē**, *seasonably, in season.*

**templum**, ī, N., *temple.*

**tempus**, oris, N., *time.*

†**TEN**, strain (**tendo**,<sup>3</sup> **teneo**<sup>2</sup>).

**tenāx**, ācis, *tenacious* (**teneo**).

**tendo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, tetendī, tentum, or tēsum, *to stretch, spread.*

**tenebrae**, ārum, F., *darkness, dark recess.*

**teneo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, tenuī, tum, *hold, possess; hoc tene, mind this.*

**tener**, era, erum, *tender.*

tenuis, e, *slender* (44).  
 ter, *three times*.  
 tergum, ī, N., *back*; ā tergō, *in the rear*.  
 ternus, a, um, *by threes, three*.  
 terra, ae, F., *earth, land*.  
 terreo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *terrify, alarm*.  
 terrester, tris, tre, *earthly*.  
 terribilis, e, *full of terror*.  
 territōrium, ī, N., *territory*.  
 terror, ōris, M., *alarm, terror* (object of alarm)  
 tertius, a, um, *third*.  
 tesca, ōrum, N., *thickets*.  
 testāmentum, ī, N., *will, testament*.  
 testimōnium, ī, N., *testimony, proof*.  
 testis, is, C., *witness*.  
 testor,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *to witness, call to witness*.  
 tēter, tra, trum, *foul, rancid*.  
 tetigī, see tango.  
 theātrum, ī, N., *theatre*.  
 Thēbae, ārum, F., *Thebes, a city of Greece*.  
 Themistoclēs, is, or ī, M., *a statesman of Athens*.  
 Thermopylae, ārum, F., *Thermopylae*.  
 Thēseus, eos (eī), *king and law-giver of Athens, slayer of the Minotaur*.  
 Ti., *abbrev. for Tiberius*.  
 Tiberīnus, ī, M., *god of the river Tiber*.  
 Tiberis, is, M., *the Tiber*.  
 tibia, ae, F., *pipe, leg, shin*.  
 Tiburtēs, um, *people of Tibur*.  
 tigillum, ī, N., *a small log*.  
 tignum, ī, N., *beam, log*.  
 tigris, is (idis), C., *tiger*.  
 timeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, timuī, *fear* (69).  
 timescēns, tis, *taking alarm*.  
 timidus, a, um, *fearful, timid*.  
 timor, ōris, M., *fear*.  
 titulus, ī, M., *placard*.  
 toga, ae, F. [tego], *toga* (99).  
 tolerābilis, e, *tolerable, passable*.  
 (tolero,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to endure*.

tollo,<sup>3</sup> ere, sustulī, sublātum, *raise, take up, take away*.  
 tormentum, ī, N., *torment*; *engine for hurling stones* (torqueo).  
 torqueo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, torsī, tortum, *to twist, hurl*.  
 torvus, a, um, *cruel, cross* (in aspect).  
 tot, *so many*.  
 tōtus, a, um (p. 7), *whole, entire*; with adv. force, *wholly* (77).  
 trādo,<sup>3</sup> ere, didī, ditum, *to deliver up, betray*.  
 trādūco,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to lead across* (with two acc.).  
 tragoedia, ae, F., *tragedy*.  
 traho,<sup>3</sup> ere, xī, ctum, *to draw, drag, bring*; trahit sua quemque voluptas, *every one to his liking* (Eng. DRAG).  
 tranquillus, a, um, *tranquil, calm*.  
 trāno,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to swim across* (trāns; no).  
 trāns (acc.), *across, beyond*.  
 transeo, īre, īī, itum, *to cross, go over*.  
 trānsfigo,<sup>3</sup> ere, fixī, fixum, *to transfix, pierce through*.  
 trānsfuga, ae, M., *deserter*.  
 trānsilio,<sup>4</sup> īre, uī or īvī, *to leap across* (trāns; salio).  
 trānsitus, ūs, M., *crossing, passage*.  
 trānsno, see trāno.  
 trānsvolo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to fly across*.  
 trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred*.  
 tremo,<sup>3</sup> ere, tremuī, *tremble* (69).  
 tremulus, a, um, *trembling*.  
 trepidātio, ōnis, F., *cowardice, alarm*.  
 trepido,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to be in terror* (root TREP, turn).  
 trepidus, a, um, *timid, trembling*.  
 trēs, tria, *three*.  
 tribūnal, ālis, N., *tribunal, seat of justice*.  
 tribūnālis, e, *of a tribune*.

tribūnus, ī, M., *tribune*, a plebeian officer.

tricēsimus, a, um, *thirtieth*.

triduum, ī, N., *three days*.

triennium, ī, N., *three years*.

trigeminī, ōrum, *three of one birth*.

trīgintā (indec.), *thirty*.

triquetrus, a, um, *three-cornered*.

tristiculus, a, um, *a little sad*.

tristis, e, *sad, gloomy, cruel*.

trīticum, ī, N., *wheat* (94: *tero*).

Trōja, ae, F., *Troy*.

Trōjānus, a, um, *Trojan*.

tropaeum, ī, N., *trophy*.

trucido,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to massacre* (*trux*; *caedo*).

trux, trucis, *cruel, grim, stern, ferocious* (93).

tū, tuī, tibi, tē, *thou* (p. 18).

tuba, ae, F., *trumpet* (straight).

tubicen, inis, M., *trumpeter* (tuba; *cano*).

†TUD, *beat* (*tundo*<sup>3</sup>).

tueor,<sup>2</sup> tuērī, tuitus, *to gaze at, preserve, protect*.

tulī, perf. of *fero* (p. 39).

Tullus, ī, M., a Roman king.

tum, *then*; tum . . tum, *now . . now, not only . . . but also*.

tumeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, *to swell*.

tumultuōsus, a, um, *tumultuous* (*tumeo*).

tumultus, ūs, M., *tumult* (22).

tūne, *you?* — tunc, *then*.

tunica, ae, F., *tunic* (99).

turba, ae, F., *a crowd* (85).

turbo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to disturb*.

turpis, e, *ugly, disgraceful, evil*.

turris, is, F. (p. 14), *a tower*.

tūs (thūs), tūris, N., *incense*.

tūtus, a, um, *safe, defended*; in tūtum, *to a safe place* (*tueor*).

tuus, a, um, *thy, thine, your* (almost always).

Tyndaris, idis, F., *daughter of Tyndarus* (Helen).

tyrannus, ī, M., *tyrant*.

Tyrius, a, um, *Tyrian*, of Tyre, an ancient city of Syria.

## U.

ūber, eris, *rich, fertile*.

ubi, *where, when; where? when?*

ubinam, *where* (emphatic)?

ubique, *everywhere*.

ubivīs, *anywhere* (where you will).

ulciscor,<sup>3</sup> cī, ultus, *to revenge, punish*.

Ulixēs, is or eī, M., *Ulysses*.

ullus, a, um (gen. ius : p. 7), *any*.

ultimus, a, um, *last*.

ultor, ōris, M., *avenger*.

ultus, see *ulciscor*.

umbilicus, ī, M., *navel, centre*.

umbra, ae, F., *shade, shadow*.

umbrōsus, a, um, *shadowy, shady*.

umquam, *ever*.

unā, *together*; unā cum, *along with*.

unda, ae, F., *wave*.

unde, *whence, from which*.

undique, *from every side, everywhere*.

unguentum, ī, N., *ointment*.

unguis, is, M., *claw, talon*.

ūnicus, a, um, *single, unique*.

ūniversus, a, um, *all together, whole, entire* (77).

unquam, see *umquam*.

ūnus, a, um (gen. ius : p. 7), *one*.

ūnusquisque, unaquaeque, &c. (gen. uniuscūjusque); *each one, every one*.

urbānus, a, um, *of the city, polite*.

urb, urbis, F., *city* (98).

ūro,<sup>3</sup> ūrere, ūsī, ūstum, *to burn*.

ursus, ī, M., *a bear*.

urtica, ae, F., *nettle* (*uro*).

usquam, *anywhere*.

usque, *even, up to*; quo —, *how far? — ad, as far as*.

ūsus, ūs, M., *use, advantage, experience* (70).

ut (with subj.), *that, so that*; (with indic.), *when, as, how*.

uter, utra, utrum, gen. utrius, (see p. 7), *which* (of the two)?

uterque, utraque, utrumque (gen. utriusque), *both* (making the verb plural in English).

uti (ut), *that, so that.*

ūtilis, e, *useful, advantageous, serviceable, expedient* (30).

ūtilitās, ātis, F., *utility, advantage, usefulness.*

ūtor,<sup>3</sup> ūtī, ūsus, *use, employ* (abl.).

utrimque, *on both sides.*

utrum, *whether* (see p. 11).

ūva, ae, F., *grape, cluster.*

### V. uter

vacat, *there is leisure.*

vaccinium, ī, N., *hyacinth, blea-berry.*

vacillo,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to shift about, stagger.*

vacuus, a, um, *empty, unoccupied, empty-handed.*

vādo,<sup>3</sup> ere, *to go, advance* (43).

vae, alas!

vāgio,<sup>4</sup> īre, īvī (īī), ītum, *to cry* (as an infant).

vagor,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to wander, roam.* [ing.

vagus, a, um, *wandering, roam-valdē, strongly, very, quite.*

valeo,<sup>2</sup> ēre, uī, itum, *be strong, be well, be worth, prevail* (87); valē (imperat.), *farewell*; valeat, *valeant, farewell to, away with.*

valētūdo, inis, F., *health* (state of health).

validus, a, um, *strong* (in almost all senses).

vallis (vallēs), is, F., *valley.*

vallum, ī, N., *rampart, palisade.*

vānus, a, um, *empty, idle, vain.*

varietās, ātis, F., *variety, variation.*

vario,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to vary.*

varius, a, um, *various.*

vastitās, ātis, F., *devastation, desolation, vastness.*

vasto,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to devastate, lay waste.*

vastus, a, um, *vast* (65), *desolate.* -ve (enclitic), *or.*

vehementer, *vigorously, very much.*

Vēientēs, ium, the people of Vēiī, ōrum, M, a city near Rome.

vel, *or, even*; vel . . vel, *either*

velox, ōcis, *swift.* [ . . or.

velut, *as, just as.*

vēnābulum, ī, N., *hunting-spear.*

vēnālis, e, *for sale.*

vēnātio, ōnis, F., *hunting.*

vēnātor, ōris, M., *hunter.*

vēnātrīx, īcis, F., *huntress.*

vēnātum, see *venor.*

vēnditio, ōnis, F., *sale.*

vēnditor, ōris, M., *the seller.*

vēndo,<sup>3</sup> dere, didī, ditum, *put to sale, sell* (*venum*; *do*).

venēnum, ī, N., *poison.*

vēneo, īre, īvī (īī), itum, *to be sold* (go to sale: *venum*; *eo*).

veneror,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *to venerate, worship.*

Venetī, ōrum, M., a people of western Gaul.

venia, ae, F., *pardon, permission, favor, indulgence.*

venio,<sup>4</sup> īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*

vēnor,<sup>1</sup> ārī, ātus, *hunt*; vēnātum (sup.), *a-hunting.*

ventus, ī, M., *wind* (19).

Venus, eris, F., the goddess of Love and Beauty. [*elegance.*

venustās, ātis, F., *grace, polish,*

vēr, vēris, N., *spring.* [*scourge.*

verbero,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to beat, verbum, ī, N., a word.*

vērē, *truly, with truth, rightly.*

verēcundus, a, um, *bashful, modest.*

vereor,<sup>2</sup> ērī, itus, *to respect, fear* (69), *vereor ne veniat, I fear he will come*; *vereor ut —, I fear he will not come.*

vērītās, ātis, F., *truth.*

vērnus, a, um, *spring* (adj.), *of the spring, vernal.*

vērō, *in truth, in fact, but, and* (with emphasis on the word which precedes).

**Verrēs**, is, M., a tyrannical Roman governor of Sicily.  
**verro**,<sup>8</sup> ere, verri, versum, *to sweep, sweep away*.  
**verso**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to turn* (freq. of **verto**).  
**versor**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *to be, abide, turn about, occupy one's self in*.  
**versus**, ūs, M., *verse* (**verto**).  
**vertex**, icis, M., *the head, top, vertex* (sometimes equivalent to **vortex**, *whirl, eddy*).  
**verto**,<sup>8</sup> ere, tī, sum, *to turn*.  
**vērūm**, but, *in truth*. [*earnest*.  
**vērūs**, a, um, *true*; re verā, in **vescor**,<sup>3</sup> cī, *to feed on* (abl.).  
**vesper**, erī, M., *evening*; ad vesperum or vesperī, *at evening*.  
**vespera**, ae, F., *evening*.  
**Vesta**, ae, F., goddess of the Hearth or Home.  
**vestibulum**, ī, N., *vestibule*.  
**vestigium**, ī, N., *footprint, trace*.  
**vestio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, ivī (ii), itum, *to clothe, cover* (as with garment, forests, &c.).  
**vestis**, is, F., *clothing, raiment, vesture* (99).  
**vestitus**, ūs, M., *clothing, garb, covering* (99).  
**veto**,<sup>1</sup> āre, vetuī, vetitum, *to forbid* (acc. and infin.).  
**vetus**, eris, *old, ancient* (100).  
**vetustās**, ātis, F., *antiquity*.  
**vexillum**, ī, N., *flag, standard*.  
**vexo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to vex, trouble, distress*.  
**via**, ae, F., *way, road, course* (56).  
*Sacra Via*, the principal street of Rome.  
**viātor**, ōris, M., *a traveller*.  
**‡VIC**, *conquer* (**vinco**<sup>3</sup>).  
**vīcēsīmus**, a, um, *twentieth*.  
**vicīnum**, ī (N. of the following), *neighborhood*.  
**vicīnus**, a, um, *neighboring*; M., *neighbor*.  
**viciis** (gen.), em, e; plur. ēs, ībus, F., *share, turn, changing aspect*; meam vicem, *on my account*; in vicem, *in turn*.

**victor**, ōris, M., *conqueror*; (as adj.), *victorious*.  
**victōria**, ae, F., *victory*.  
**victus**, ūs, M., *food, living* (**vīvo**).  
**video**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, vidī, visum, *see*; videor, ērī, vīsus, *to be seen, seem, appear*.  
**vidēsne**, don't you see?  
**vigeo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, *to be vigorous or flourishing*.  
**vigil**, ilis, *watchful*; M., *a watchman* (**vigeo**).  
**vigilāntia**, ae, F., *watchfulness*.  
**vigilia**, ae, F., *watching, watch* (division of the night).  
**vigilo**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to watch, wake, remain awake*.  
**vīgintī** (indecl.), *twenty*.  
**vilis**, e, *cheap*.  
**vilitās**, ātis, F., *cheapness*.  
**villa**, ae, F., *farm-house, villa or country-house* (39).  
**villus**, ī, M., *shaggy hair* (of animals), *wool*.  
**vincio**,<sup>4</sup> īre, vinxī, vinctum, *to bind about, fasten* (63).  
**vinculum** = **vinculum**.  
**vinco**,<sup>3</sup> ere, vicī, victum, *to conquer* (**VIC**).  
**vinculum**, ī, N., *bond, tie, chain*.  
**vindico**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *assert, claim, punish*.  
**vīnea**, ae, F., *a vine-trellis, shed* (for besiegers).  
**vīnum**, ī, N., *wine*.  
**vir**, virī, M., *man* (53), *husband*.  
**virēns**, tis, *green, flourishing*.  
**virēs**, ium (**vīs**), F., *strength*.  
**virga** (ula), ae, F., *rod, twig*.  
**virginitās**, ātis, F., *virginity, age or condition as a maiden*.  
**virgo**, inis, F., *maiden, virgin*.  
**virgultum**, ī, N., *shrubbery* (15).  
**virilis**, e, *of a man, manly*.  
**virtūs**, ūtis, F., *manliness, valor, excellence, virtue*.  
**vīs**, vis, vim, vī, F., *force, violence*; plur. **virēs**, *strength*.  
**viscera**, um, N., *flesh* (plur. of **viscus**, *a vital organ*).  
**visne** or **vīn** (**volo**), *will you?*

**visūrus**, fut. part., and **visus**, perf. part. of **video**.  
**visus**, ūs, M., *sight, vision* (**video**).  
**vita**, ae, F., *life*.  
**vitiōsus**, a, um, *vicious, full of faults*.  
**vītis**, is, F., *grape-vine*.  
**vitium**, ī, N., *vice, fault*.  
**vito**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to avoid*.  
**vitupero**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to blame, censure* (**vitium**).  
**vivo**,<sup>3</sup> ere, vīxī, vīctum, *live*.  
**vīvus**, a, um, *alive, living*.  
**vix**, *with difficulty, scarcely*.  
**vōcālis**, e, *loud, vocal, tuneful*.  
**vōciferor**,<sup>1</sup> āri, ātus, *to call aloud, shout* (**vox**; **fero**).  
**voco**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *call* (in all senses).  
**volāntia**, um, N., *flying things, insects*.  
**volcānus**, ī, M., *fire* (Vulcan).  
**Volcānus** or **Vulcānus**, ī, M., *Vulcan, the god of Fire*.  
**volēns**, tis, *willing*.  
**volō**,<sup>1</sup> āre, āvī, ātum, *to fly*.  
**volō**, velle, voluī (irreg. p. 38), *to wish* (33).

**voluntās**, ātis, F., *will, feeling, wish*.  
**voluptās**, ātis, F., *pleasure*.  
**vōs**, vēstrum or vōstrum (trī), vōbīs, *you* (p. 18).  
**vōsmet**, *yourselves* (emphatic; see **-met**).  
**vōtum**, ī, N., *vow*.  
**voveo**,<sup>2</sup> ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *vow*.  
**vōx**, vōcis, F., *voice* (97).  
**vulcānus**, see **volcānus**.  
**vulgāris**, e, *of the crowd, vulgar*.  
**vulgus** (**volgus**), ī, N., *the lower classes, the crowd* (85).  
**vulnus** (**volnus**), eris, N., *a wound*.  
**vulpēs**, is, F., *fox*.  
**vultus** (**voltus**), ūs, M., *expression, face, countenance*.

## X.

**Xerxēs**, is, M., *a king of Persia*.

## Z.

**Zephyrus**, ī, M., *the West wind*.

---

NOTE.—The final o in verbs, and in such words as *leo, natio*, though almost invariably long, is regarded by most prosodists as common, and has therefore not been marked. The authority for special exceptions will be found in Arnold's "Anticleptic Gradus."



*Frank Dawett.*

SYNONYMES:

WITH GROUPS OF VARIOUSLY RELATED WORDS, ILLUSTRATING  
ONE ANOTHER'S MEANING.

*Frank Dawett.*

NOTE. — In using the following list of allied or kindred words,\* it must be borne in mind that the distinctions drawn are often slight, and that, especially in poetic use, the boundaries are varying and uncertain. The accurate meaning and employment of words should always be sought in a larger lexicon.

1. **A**, **ab** (opp. to **ad**), *away from*; **de**, *down or aside from*; **e**, **ex** (opp. to **in**), *out of*.

2. **abdo**,<sup>3</sup> **abscondo**,<sup>3</sup> *hide*, or put out of sight; **condo**,<sup>3</sup> **recondo**,<sup>3</sup> *lay away for safe keeping*; **occulo**,<sup>3</sup> **occulto**,<sup>1</sup> *cover up*; **celo**,<sup>1</sup> *conceal from one what he has a right to know* (compare 80).

3. **abeo**, *go away*; **exeo**, *go out from*; **discedo**,<sup>3</sup> *depart to some other place*; **decedo**,<sup>3</sup> *give way to some one else*; **excedo**,<sup>3</sup> *withdraw wholly*; **proficiscor**,<sup>3</sup> *set forth on a journey*.

4. **accidit**,<sup>3</sup> *it happens* (suddenly), with reference to some effect; **contingit**, *it befalls* (fortunately), coincident with something else; **evenit**, *it turns out*, as resulting from some event; **obtingit**, *it falls to*, by lot or otherwise; **obvenit**, *it results from some chance*, &c.

5. **acies**, *army in line of battle* — with its "edge" of weapons; **agmen**, *in line of march* (**ago**); **exercitus**, *the disciplined force itself* (see 61).

6. **aequus**, *level, even*; also *fair, calm, just*; **par**, *equal*, in number, strength, &c.; **aequalis**, usually *of like age*; **aequabilis**, *equable in one's self, uniform*; **similis**, *like*.

7. **aetas**, *age* (period of life); **tempus**, *time* (of limited duration); **aevum**, *a long period*; **saeculum**, *age or century*.

8. **ager**, *field in general, especially wild or open, also public territory*; **campus**, *an extended plain*; **arvum**, *ploughed land*; **pratium**, *meadow, level or grassy*; **rus**, *the country*, as opposed to city.

\* Prepared with the aid of Ramshorn's "Latin Synonymes," and of the lists in Bul lions's Dictionary.

9. **albus**, *dead white* (opp. to **ater**); **candidus**, *bright white* (opp. to **niger**); **canus**, *gray or hoary*.

10. **altus**, *high, deep*; **arduus**, *steep, difficult*; **celsus** (**excelsus**), *lofty, stately*; **editus**, *uplifted*; **sublimis**, *on high*.

11. **amo**,<sup>1</sup> *to love with affection*; **diligo**,<sup>3</sup> *with esteem*; **adamo**,<sup>1</sup> *conceive affection for*; **deamo**,<sup>1</sup> *of ardent passion*.

12. **anguis**, *snake* (swift, darting); **serpens**, *the crawling creature* (**vipera**, **coluber**, &c., special venomous kinds); **draco**, *dragon*, often used poetically for **serpens**.

13. **anima**, *life* (animal life); **animus**, *soul* (thought or passion); **mens**, *intelligence*; **indoles**, *disposition, talent*; **ingenium**, *mind or genius*, as innate quality.

14. **animal**, *animal*, the living thing; **bestia**, *beast* (wild and fierce; plur. *brutes* in general); **belua**, a bulky and monstrous creature (as elephant or whale); **fera**, *wild animal* as opposed to tame; **pecus**, *tame animal* as opposed to wild (see 51).

15. **arbor**, *tree*; **frutex**, *shrub*; **arbustum**, a place planted with trees; **virgultum**, *bushes, thicket*.

16. **arma**, *weapons* in general, especially defensive: **galea**, *helmet*; **lorica**, *corselet of leather or metal*; **ocreae**, *greaves for the leg*; **scutum** (or **clipeus**, 28), *shield*. It may also, more generally, include *offensive weapons* (for which the proper word is **tela**): **gladius**, *sword*, short, straight, and pointed (**ensis**, **mucro**, **ferrum**, poetic); **pilum**, *javelin*, a heavy missile with long thin blade and stout handle; **hasta**, *spear or pike*, for thrusting; **jaculum**, *dart*; **arcus**, *bow*; **sagittae**, *arrows*, &c.

17. **ars**, *art* (the practice); **artes**, *acquired skill*; **scientia**, *knowledge* (theory); **artificium**, *skill of the artifex, or craftsman*.

18. **audeo**,<sup>2</sup> *dare*, in reference to danger; **conor**,<sup>1</sup> *undertake*, of importance; **molior**,<sup>4</sup> *attempt*, of difficulty.

19. **aura**, *breeze*; **ventus**, *wind*; **flamen**, *blast*; **flatus**, **flabrum**, of gentle or favorable winds.

20. **avarus**, *covetous*; **avidus**, *greedy*; **cupidus**, *eager*; **parcus**, *frugal*; **sordidus**, *mean, stingy*.

21. **avis**, *a bird* (feathered creature); **ales**, *winged* (especially of large birds, or poetic); **volucris**, as capable of flight; **praepes**, of swift and lofty flight; **oscen** [**os**, **cano**], of omen by the voice.

22. **bellum**, *war*; **pugna**, *fight* (in general); **proelium**, *battle*; **militia**, *warfare* (the soldier's trade); **tumultus**, a sudden tumult or insurrection (near home).

23. **bonus**, *good* (kind or virtuous); **probus**, *upright*; **fortis**, *bold, manly, valiant*; **honestus**, *honorable* (see 41).

24. **caedes**, *killing, massacre* ; **clades**, *defeat, disaster* ; **strages**, *carnage* ; **internecio**, *destruction*.

25. **capio**,<sup>3</sup> *grasp, contain* ; **accipio**,<sup>3</sup> *to receive* ; **excipio**,<sup>3</sup> *take what comes in one's way* ; **recipio**,<sup>3</sup> *to take back* ; **suscipio**,<sup>3</sup> *undertake* ; **rapio**,<sup>3</sup> *seize* ; **adripio**,<sup>3</sup> **corripio**,<sup>3</sup> *seize with force or eagerness* ; **sumo**,<sup>3</sup> *to take (without force)*.

26. **careo**,<sup>2</sup> *to lack or be in want* ; **egeo**,<sup>2</sup> **indigeo**,<sup>2</sup> *to be in need* ; **vaco**,<sup>1</sup> *to be empty or at leisure*.

27. **carmen**, *a song or brief poem (the words)* ; **cantus**, *song (as sung)* ; **versus**, **poema**, *the composition*.

28. **clipeus**, *shield, oval, of brass* ; **scutum**, *of wood, with skin covering and iron rim* ; **parma**, **pelta**, **cetra**, *buckler (small shields of peculiar shape)* ; **ancile**, *short and oval, borne in processions*.

29. **comes**, *companion (fellow traveller)* ; **socius**, *partner or ally* ; **sodalis**, *boon companion, or member of a club*.

30. **commodus**, *convenient or suitable in itself* ; **opportunus**, *fit according to circumstance* ; **utilis**, *of service to some end*.

31. **consilium**, *counsel or advice, the result of reflection* ; **sententia**, *opinion, considered and fixed, especially in deliberative bodies, as the Senate or a jury* ; **opinio**, *notion, conjecture (compare 92)*.

32. **culpa**, *fault* ; **crimen**, *charge of any offence* ; **delictum**, *fault of omission or neglect* ; **peccatum**, *a wilful misdeed* ; **facinus**, *act (facio), often implying violence* ; **maleficium**, *crime*.

33. **cupio**,<sup>3</sup> *to desire, long for any thing* ; **concupisco**,<sup>3</sup> *to feel a longing* ; **opto**,<sup>1</sup> *choose or wish* ; **desidero**,<sup>1</sup> *to feel the want of* ; **volo**, *wish or intend*.

34. **cutis**, *skin (on the body)* ; **pellis**, *the fresh soft hide* ; **corium**, *coarse or tanned hide, leather* ; **aluta**, *a soft leather prepared with alum* ; **tergus**, *skin of the back and body*.

35. **damnum**, *loss or forfeit* ; **detrimentum**, *damage (wearing away)* ; **jactura**, *loss by shipwreck, &c. (a casting away)* ; **incommodum**, *disaster, loss by misfortune or defeat (a euphemism)*.

36. **daps**, *any rich food* ; *pl., feast* ; **epulum**, *a public or religious banquet* ; **cena**, *dinner, the chief meal of the day* ; **prandium**, **merenda**, *lunch* ; **jentaculum**, *an early breakfast* ; **cibus**, *any food*.

37. **do**,<sup>1</sup> *to give in general* ; **dono**,<sup>1</sup> *of a formal or valuable gift* ; **dedo**,<sup>3</sup> *surrender (compare abdo, perdo, trado, prodo, condo, vendo)* ; **largior**,<sup>4</sup> *of lavish gifts*.

38. **dolor**, *pain in general* ; **maeror**, *a settled sadness* ; **luctus**, *grief with signs of mourning* ; **cura**, *anxiety or distress of mind* ;

**aerumna**, misery, affliction ; **aegritudo**, distress (of mind, chiefly) ; **aegrimonia**, of body ; **tristitia**, sadness as shown by outward signs ; **miseria**, wretchedness, as of destitution, &c. ; **molestia**, annoyance or distress from some special cause ; **squalor**, disfigurement in sign of mourning.

39. **domus**, house, as dwelling, also a large or fine house ; **aedes**, as a building, or group of apartments ; **tectum**, shelter ; **sedes**, place of permanent abode ; **villa**, farm-house ; **insula**, a city-mansion or block, occupying a whole square ; **atrium**, hall, the main apartment of the house ; **aula**, poetic, and used of royal courts, &c. (see 86).

40. **donum**, gift ; **munus**, of bounty or obligation (compare 57) ; **praemium**, reward considered as the receiver's due ; **beneficium**, as the giver's bounty ; **merces**, wages.

41. **dulcis**, sweet ; **blandus**, gentle, caressing ; **comis**, kind, courteous ; **lenis**, soft ; **mollis**, smooth (to the touch) ; **suavis**, agreeable to the senses in general ; **amoenus**, to the eye in particular.

42. **dux**, leader, properly a guide (so **ductor**) ; **imperator**, commander, with military authority ; **legatus**, aid or lieutenant, who receives his commission from the Senate instead of popular election, and is hence regarded as a delegate.

43. **eo**, to go, in general ; **gradior**,<sup>3</sup> advance with steps ; **grassor**,<sup>1</sup> (intens.), to walk rapidly ; **proficiscor**,<sup>3</sup> set forth ; **vado**,<sup>3</sup> advance firmly ; **spatior**,<sup>4</sup> with long or stately strides.

44. **exilis**, slight or lean ; **tenuis**, thin, delicate ; **gracilis**, slender, little ; **macer**, lean, lank.

45. **fallo**,<sup>3</sup> to deceive, or betray into error ; **decipio**,<sup>3</sup> to take un-awares ; **fraudo**,<sup>1</sup> deprive of one's due ; **frustror**,<sup>1</sup> to frustrate or disappoint ; **deludo**,<sup>3</sup> beguile.

46. **fama**, fame, repute (wide-spread) ; **rumor**, report ; **gloria**, glory, resting on esteem ; **laus**, praise or good-name ; **praedicatio**, publishing of deeds or merit ; **decus**, outward splendor or distinction ; **honor**, honor or respect, pl. public honors ; **munus**, office, as implying service or obligation (compare 57).

47. **felix**, happy or fortunate ; **beatus**, prosperous ; **faustus**, of good omen ; **fortunatus**, lucky, rich (favored by fortune).

48. **finis**, end (pl. boundary) ; **modus**, limit to excess ; **terminus**, landmark ; **limes**, a belt of land marking the division of estates.

49. **flumen**, river or stream in general ; **fluvius**, the flowing body of water ; **amnis** (generally), broad and navigable ; **rivus**, **rivulus**, brook, rivulet ; **torrens**, a sudden violent flow, from rains, &c.

50. **gens**, *race* including nations (**nationes**), or *house* including families (**familiae**) ; **genus**, *origin* or *kind* ; **stirps**, *stock* ; **prosapia**, used of ancient and extensive family connection.

51. **grex**, *flock*, especially of sheep, &c. ; **armentum**, *herd* of cattle, horses, &c. ; **jumentum**, *yoke-beast* ; **pecus**, *flock* or *herd* (**pecora**, *cattle* in general) ; **pecus** (**udis**), a creature of the flock (14).

52. **hic**, *this* (of the person speaking) ; **iste**, *that* (of the person addressed) ; **ille**, *that* (at a distance, well-known, or the following) ; **is**, especially as correlative with **qui**, *one who*, &c. (see Gr. § 20).

53. **homo**, *man*, as a human being in general ; **vir**, *man*, a male person, or as implying force, energy, &c.

54. **hostis**, *an enemy* (public) ; pl., *the enemy* ; **inimicus**, a personal *foe*, or rival ; **adversarius**, *opponent* at law, &c.

55. **invenio**,<sup>4</sup> *to find* or *meet* ; **reperio**,<sup>4</sup> *discover* something hidden or unknown ; **nanciscor**,<sup>3</sup> *happen upon* (as game) ; **offendo**,<sup>3</sup> *stumble upon*.

56. **iter**, *way* of travel ; **via**, a broad street, &c. ; **semita**, a narrow way ; **trames**, *by-path* ; **callis**, *foot-track* ; **angiportus**, *alley-way*.

57. **jus**, *a right*, or general law ; **lex**, *statute* ; **fas**, *moral right*, or *duty* ; **officium**, *duty* as obligation or service ; **munus**, *duty*, as connected with civil or official position (*function*).

58. **labor**, *toil*, *hardship* ; **opus**, *the work* accomplished ; **opera**, implying workmanship or active energy (pl. *hands*).

59. **lapis**, *stone* of any sort ; **saxum**, *rock*, hard or large ; **silex**, *flint* ; **cautes**, *cliff* ; **rupes**, *a mass of rock*, *precipice* ; **scopulus**, *a peak* (giving an extensive view).

60. **lectus**, *bed* ; **cubile**, any resting-place ; **stratum**, any thing strewn, *couch* or *covering* ; **torus**, *couch*, or *mattress*.

61. **legio**, *legion* (of about 5000) ; **cohors**, *cohort* or *battalion*, one-tenth of a legion (in later use, auxiliary infantry) ; **manipulus**, *maniple*, one-third of the cohort ; **turma**, *troop* of 30 horsemen ; **ala**, a division of auxiliary cavalry ; **caterva**, any band of forces ; **phalanx**, a close array of 800 men (Greek).

62. **liber**, *free* ; **libertus**, *a freedman* ; **libertinus**, one of the class of freedmen ; **ingenuus**, *freeborn*, or becoming to a freeman.

63. **ligo**,<sup>1</sup> *to bind fast* (by winding about) ; **vincio**,<sup>4</sup> *to bind* with chains ; **necto**,<sup>3</sup> *to fasten* by knotting or entwining ; **jungo**,<sup>3</sup> *to unite* in one.

64. **loquor**,<sup>3</sup> *to speak*, *talk* ; **dico**,<sup>3</sup> *to say*, or speak more formally ; **for**,<sup>1</sup> *to use the faculty of speech* ; **aio**, *assent*, *say yes* ; **inquam**, *inquit*, *said I*, *said he*, only in quotations.

65. **magnus**, *great* in all senses ; **ingens**, of extraordinary bulk or force ; **grandis**, *large* of its kind ; **amplus**, *broad, grand* ; **procerus**, *tall* ; **vastus**, **enormis**, of something huge or prodigious.

66. **malus**, *evil* by nature ; **pravus**, *vicious, deformed* ; **improbis**, *unprincipled, dishonest* ; **scelestus**, **sceleratus**, *criminal or wicked* ; **reus**, *arraigned as an offender* ; **sons**, **nocens**, *guilty*.

67. **mare**, *sea*, as opposed to land ; **aequor**, the extended surface ; **pelagus**, the flood of waters ; **pontus**, often of some special part (a poetic word) ; **fretum**, *strait or narrow sea*.

68. **memini**, *remember* ; **reminiscor**,<sup>8</sup> *call to mind* ; **recordor**,<sup>8</sup> *endeavor to recall*.

69. **metuo**,<sup>3</sup> *to fear, dread* more or less remotely ; **timeo**,<sup>2</sup> a more present danger ; **vereor**,<sup>2</sup> with awe or respect ; **formido**,<sup>1</sup> to be in a state of dread ; **paveo**,<sup>2</sup> in a disordered fright ; **tremo**,<sup>3</sup> *tremble*.

70. **mos**, *custom* which grows to a rule of conduct ; hence pl. *character* (as formed by conduct) ; **consuetudo**, a settled custom ; **usus**, *experience or advantage of practice*.

71. **motus**, *emotion* ; **affectio**, of any change or condition of mind or body ; **affectus**, chiefly of the mind ; **perturbatio**, *trouble or irregular passion*.

72. **eloquens**, *eloquent*, implying the highest qualities of the orator, both fervor and trained skill ; **disertus**, implying easy skilful and natural discourse ; **facundus**, *fluent and tonguey*.

73. **navis**, *ship*, generally of large size (**navis longa**, a galley propelled by oars, for swiftness in battle) ; **navigium**, of smaller craft ; **linter**, **cymba**, *skiff, wherry* ; **ratis**, *raft or flat-boat*, hastily built ; **phaselus**, a pleasure-boat ; **puppis**, *stern* (poetic for **navis**).

74. **nomen**, the family name, as *Julius* ; **praenomen**, personal name, as *Caius* ; **cognomen**, *surname*, as *Cæsar* ; **agnomen** (added name), of adoption, as *Octavianus*, or of some exploit, as *Africanus*.

75. **nubes**, *cloud* ; **nimbus**, *rain-cloud* ; **nebula**, *mist or fleecy cloud* ; **imber**, *rain-storm* ; **fulgor**, *lightning* ; **fulmen**, *thunderbolt* ; **tonitrus**, the noise of thunder ; **nix**, *snow* ; **grando**, *hail*.

76. **odium**, *hate* ; **simultas**, *malice or grudge* ; **inimicitia**, *enmity*, as from a quarrel between friends ; **invidia**, *odium or unpopularity*.

77. **omnis**, *all, every* ; **totus**, *whole*, as a unit ; **cunctus**, *all considered as parts united (conjunctus)* ; **universus**, *all together*, the whole as made up of individuals.

78. **opes**, *wealth*, resources in general, as means to an end ; **copia**, *abundance* ; **divitiae**, *riches*, great wealth ; **facultas**, *property* as a means of influence, &c. (cf. 88).

79. **oro**,<sup>1</sup> to beg, pray; **peto**,<sup>3</sup> seek or request; **quaero**,<sup>3</sup> seek or inquire; **rogo**,<sup>1</sup> to entreat as a favor; **obsecro**,<sup>1</sup> beseech earnestly; **obtestor**,<sup>1</sup> conjure, appeal; **precor**,<sup>1</sup> pray as to a divine being; **posco**,<sup>3</sup> demand with urgency; **postulo**,<sup>1</sup> demand as a right; **repeto**,<sup>3</sup> claim as one's own.

80. **ostendo**,<sup>3</sup> show, hold in sight; **ostento**,<sup>1</sup> (intens.), display; **monstro**,<sup>1</sup> point out; **exhibeo**,<sup>2</sup> hold forth to view; **pando**,<sup>3</sup> spread open; **aperio**,<sup>4</sup> uncover; **patefacio**,<sup>3</sup> **recludo**,<sup>3</sup> throw open (as the gates of a city), or lay bare what was hidden.

81. **parco**,<sup>3</sup> spare; **moderor**,<sup>1</sup> restrain, control; **tempero**,<sup>1</sup> regulate, refrain; **rego**,<sup>3</sup> guide, direct.

82. **pauper**, poor (not destitute); **egenus**, distressed by want; **inops**, destitute, helpless; **egenus**, **indigenus**, needy.

83. **perdo**,<sup>3</sup> to lose (by one's own fault), destroy; **amitto**,<sup>3</sup> to lose by misfortune.

84. **polliceor**,<sup>2</sup> to promise, voluntarily; **promitto**,<sup>3</sup> to engage for the future; **spondeo**,<sup>2</sup> to pledge.

85. **populus**, the people making a community; **plebs**, the commons, as distinguished from the upper or governing class; **vulgus**, the lower classes as such; **turba**, a mob.

86. **porta**, city-gate; **janua**, entrance, outer door; **foris**, the door proper; **valvae**, folding-doors; **ostium**, door-way to an apartment; **limen**, threshold; **vestibulum**, porch.

87. **possum**, I can (of simple ability); **queo**, no obstacle preventing; **polleo**,<sup>2</sup> to be relatively strong; **valeo**,<sup>2</sup> to be in good health and vigor; **potior**,<sup>4</sup> get possession of.

88. **potestas**, power (what we may); **potentia**, (what we can); **facultas**, power or opportunity of doing (78); **dicio**, jurisdiction; **imperium**, military authority; **auctoritas**, authority, or influence of station, &c.; **gratia**, personal influence.

89. **proprius**, one's own as opposed to common property; **suus**, **ipsius**, as opposed to other persons.

90. **pugno**,<sup>1</sup> fight; **certo**,<sup>1</sup> strive, vie; **contendo**,<sup>3</sup> contend for the attainment of any thing; **decerto**,<sup>1</sup> **decerno**,<sup>3</sup> decide by contest; **dimico**,<sup>1</sup> contend as implying two parties.

91. **pulcher**, beautiful, the most general term; **formosus**, of the face and person; **venustus**, graceful; **decorus**, dignified or becoming; **speciosus**, of fine appearance; **bellus**, pretty.

92. **puto**,<sup>1</sup> think, suppose; **arbitror**,<sup>1</sup> to form a judgment; **credo**,<sup>3</sup> believe; **existimo**,<sup>1</sup> form an estimate; **reor**,<sup>2</sup> of similar meaning, but poetic; **opinor**,<sup>1</sup> suppose (compare 31); **censeo**,<sup>2</sup> of formal and deliberate opinion. especially in the Senate.

93. **saevus**, cruel, wrathful ; **barbarus**, rude, barbarous ; **atrox**, dreadful ; **ferox**, fierce in temper ; **immanis**, monstrous, wicked ; **durus**, harsh, stern ; **ferus**, wild, savage ; **dirus**, destructive ; **trux**, of fierce aspect ; **crudelis**, inexorable.

94. **seges**, cornfield (standing corn) ; **messis**, harvest ; **far**, spelt, a coarse grain, the earliest food of the Romans ; **frumentum**, grain, or corn ; **triticum**, fine wheat ; **hordeum**, barley ; **avena**, oats ; **fruges**, crops, fruits of the earth ; **fructus**, fruit (of trees) ; **annona** (the year's produce), grain in market ; hence, price of corn.

95. **sequor**,<sup>3</sup> follow ; **sector**<sup>1</sup> (intens.), chase, pursue ; **insequor**,<sup>3</sup> follow close ; **adsequor**,<sup>3</sup> come up with ; **consequor**,<sup>3</sup> overtake, attain.

96. **silva**, wood, forest ; **nemus**, grove or park (of tall trees) ; **lucus**, a shady or dark grove ; **saltus**, glade (open space in the woods), defile, or mountain pass. (Both **nemus** and **lucus** are used of sacred groves, especially the latter.)

97. **sonus**, sound ; **clamor**, shout, cry ; **sonitus**, a great noise ; **fragor**, crash (as of falling trees) ; **clangor**, noise of arms, blast of instruments, &c. ; **vox**, the voice ; **strepitus**, a confused noise.

98. **urbs**, city, as a collection of buildings, streets, &c. ; **civitas**, the political community ; **oppidum**, a walled or garrison town.

99. **vestis**, clothing in general ; **vestitus**, apparel ; **amictus**, cloak or wrapper ; **tunica**, tunic, a belted shirt without sleeves ; **toga**, toga, a large shawl of unbleached wool, the distinguishing costume of the Romans ; **stola**, gown, woman's garment ; **peplum**, mantle worn by women ; **palla**, upper garment of women ; **pallium**, a Grecian cloak ; **sagum**, military cloak ; **paludamentum**, officer's cloak ; **trabea**, a royal robe ; **paenula**, a travelling cloak.

100. **vetus**, old ; **antiquus**, very ancient ; **priscus**, of old time ; **grandaevus**, venerable in years ; **senex**, old man (after the age of 63) ; **longaevus**, of long duration (as custom, &c.).



## SYNOPSIS OF CONSTRUCTIONS.

N.B. The references to *pages* are to this book; those to *sections* are to the Revised Edition of the Grammar.

### I. — THE SENTENCE.

- I. A SENTENCE may be either Simple or Compound: viz.,
1. SIMPLE: containing a single statement (Subject and Predicate).
  2. COMPOUND: { *a.* Containing two or more co-ordinate clauses.  
*b.* Modified by subordinate clauses (*complex*).

### II. The Essential Parts of the Sentence are —

1. The SUBJECT: consist- { *a.* Noun or its equivalent.  
ing of { *b.* Pronoun contained in verb-ending.
2. The PREDICATE: con- { *a.* Neuter (intransitive) Verb.  
sisting of { *b.* Copula with Complement.  
*c.* Verb with Object.

### III. The Subject and Predicate may be MODIFIED as follows:

1. The NOUN (*Subject or Object*) by { *a.* Noun in Apposition.  
*b.* Adjective or Participle.  
*c.* Noun in Oblique Case.  
*d.* Preposition with its Case.  
*e.* Relative Clause.
2. The VERB (*predicate*) by { *a.* Adverb or Adverbial Phrase.  
*b.* Predicate Adjective.  
*c.* Subordinate Clause.

### IV. The PARTS OF SPEECH may be described as follows: —

1. The NOUN: as *proper* (name of a Person or Place), *common* (name of a Thing), or *abstract* (name of a Quality).
2. The ADJECTIVE: *a.* by Gender, Number, Case, Degree.  
*b.* as Descriptive, Possessive, Derivative, &c.  
*c.* as Attributive, Predicate, Appositive (G. 186)
3. The PRONOUN: as, Personal, Demonstrative, Relative, &c.
4. The VERB: *a.* by Conjugation (*principal parts*);  
*b.* by Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

The Forms of the Verb may be analyzed according to the instructions given on pages 8, 27, 42 (Gr. pp. 63-67, 71-74).

### V. The following are the Rules of Agreement (*the Four Concords*): —

1. NOUNS agree in Case (p. 7):
 

<i>a.</i> in Apposition	{	Abl. with Locative (184. <i>c</i> ).
		Gen. with Possessive (184. <i>d</i> )
<i>b.</i> in Predicate Agreement (p. 9).		
2. The ADJECTIVE agrees in Gender, Number, and Case (p. 6) —
  - a.* With nearest Noun (Gr. 187).
  - b.* By *Synesis* with Noun implied (Gr. 187. *d*).
3. The RELATIVE agrees in Gender and Number (p. 21): —
  - a.* With Appositive rather than Antecedent (Gr. 199).
  - b.* Sometimes in Case by attraction (Gr. 199. *b*).
4. The VERB agrees with Subject-Nominative in Number and Person.

**ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S CATO MAJOR:** Cicero  
*De Senectute*, a Dialogue on Old Age. With Introduction (on the adoption in  
 Rome of the Greek philosophy) and Notes. 12mo. Cloth. 57 pages . . .

**ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S OVID:** Selections from the  
 Poems of Ovid, chiefly the *Metamorphoses*. With special Introductions, Notes,  
 and Index of Proper Names. 12mo. Half morocco. 283 pages . . .

The introductions to the passages from the *Metamorphoses* (23 in number) give  
 the entire argument of the poem, that of omitted portions bracketed. The other  
 selections include those of special interest as illustrating the poet's life; and a list  
 is given of all his writings, with their topics and occasions. The Notes contain  
 brief instructions on scanning at sight.

**ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S VIRGIL:** The Poems of  
 Virgil; Vol. I. containing the Pastoral Poems (*Bucolics*) and Six Books of the  
*Æneid*. Chiefly from the text of Ribbeck, with select various Readings, Intro-  
 ductions, Notes, and Index of Plants (compiled chiefly from Fée's *Flore de*  
*Virgile*, contained in Lemaire's "Bibliotheca Classica Latina"). 12mo Half  
 morocco. 372 pages  
 The text without notes . . . . .

The Notes of this edition (which are brief and very numerous) are particularly  
 indebted to Conington, and are designed "to give not only what may serve the  
 learner in the bare understanding of the text; but, along with it, some hint of that  
 wealth of traditional interpretation which is more important, perhaps, in the study  
 of Virgil than in that of any other ancient poet."

**ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S VIRGIL.** With Vocabu-  
 lary. 12mo. Half morocco. 588 pages . . . . .

**ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S Course No. I.** A Full Pre-  
 paratory Course of Latin Prose; consisting of Four Books of Cæsar's Gallic  
 War, Sallust's Conspiracy of Catiline, Eight Orations of Cicero, and *DE SENEC-  
 TURE (Cato Major)*. 12mo. Half morocco. 582 pages . . . . .

**ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S Course No. II.** Second  
 Preparatory Course of Latin Prose; containing Four Books of Cæsar's Gallic War,  
 and Eight Orations of Cicero. With Vocabulary by R. F. PENNELL. 12mo.  
 Half morocco. 518 pages . . . . .

N. B. *Course No. I. is identical with the First Course prescribed for admission to*  
*Harvard College. Course No. II. includes the usual amount required at other col-*  
*leges.*

**ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S CICERO.** Eight Orations  
 of Cicero. With Vocabulary by R. F. PENNELL. 12mo. Half morocco. 358  
 pages . . . . .

**ALLEN'S LATIN GRAMMAR.** 12mo. Cloth. 182 pages

**ALLEN'S LATIN LESSONS.** 12mo. Cloth. 146 pages .

**ALLEN'S LATIN READER:** Consisting of Selections from  
 Cæsar (the invasion of Britain and account of the Gallic and German popula-  
 tions), Curtius (Anecdotes of Alexander), Nepos (Life of Hannibal), Sallust  
 (Jugurtha, abridged), Ovid, Virgil, Plautus, and Terence (single scenes), Cicero  
 and Pliny (Letters), and Tacitus (the Conflagration of Rome). With Notes and  
 a General Vocabulary. The Notes have been adapted to Allen & Greenough's  
 Grammar. 12mo. Half morocco. 532 pages . . . . .

**ALLEN'S LATIN SELECTIONS.** Containing the first 134  
 pages of Allen's Latin Reader. With Notes adapted to A. & G.'s Latin Gram-  
 mar. 12mo. Half morocco. 190 pages . . . . .

**ALLEN'S LATIN COMPOSITION.** An Introduction to Latin Composition. (By W. F. ALLEN.) New edition, adapted to Allen & Greenough's Grammar. 12mo. Cloth. 118 pages

This book includes a careful review of the principles of Syntax (beginning with Indirect Discourse), with exercises in various styles of composition selected from classical authors. Also short exercises for oral practice.

**ALLEN'S SHORTER COURSE OF LATIN PROSE.**

Consisting chiefly of the Prose Selections of Allen's Latin Reader (to p. 134), the Notes being wholly rewritten, enlarged, and adapted to Allen & Greenough's Grammar; accompanied by Six Orations of Cicero, — the Manilian, the four Catilines, and Archias. With Vocabulary. 12mo. Half morocco. 543 pages

**ALLEN'S LATIN PRIMER.** A First Book of Latin for Boys and Girls. (By J. H. ALLEN.) 12mo. Cloth. 182 pages

This is designed for the use of scholars of a younger class, and consists of thirty Lessons arranged so as to give a full outline of the grammar, with brief Rules of Syntax, Tables of Inflection, and interlined exercises for practice in reading, compiled from *Historia Sacra*. The reading selections which follow include Dialogues from Corderius and Erasmus (with translation), narratives, nursery songs, mediæval hymns, etc., being made up in great part from modern Latin writers.

**ALLEN'S LATIN LEXICON:** a General Vocabulary of Latin, with Supplementary Tables of Dates, Antiquities, etc. By J. H. ALLEN. 12mo. Cloth. 214 pages

This little dictionary contains "about 15,000 words of common use, besides more than 1,300 proper names or adjectives, and about 200 dates (exclusive of the Tables), covering the more important points of classical history and mythology." It is believed to be complete for the entire introductory course of Latin authors, including Ovid and Virgil.

**LEIGHTON'S LATIN LESSONS.** Prepared to accompany Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar. By R. F. LEIGHTON, former Master of Melrose High School. Revised Edition. 12mo. Half morocco. 352 pages

This work presents a progressive series of exercises (both Latin and English) in about eighty Lessons, illustrating the grammatical forms and the simpler principles of syntax. Synonyms and Rules of Quantity are introduced from the first. The amount of illustrative matter in exercises for reading and writing or oral practice is very large, including portions of *Viri Romæ*, and Woodford's *Epitome of the First Book of Caesar*. Full Vocabulary (prepared by R. F. PENNELL) accompany the book, with questions for examination and review of the grammar.

The Lessons have been entirely rewritten, considerably simplified, and more carefully graded. With each lesson, definite directions have been given in regard to the amount of the grammar to be learned. By decreasing the exercises to be translated into English, space has been given to increase correspondingly the amount to be put into Latin. Some instruction in the formation of words has been given, and the references to the grammar on that subject largely increased. The vocabularies have also been carefully revised.

**MADVIG'S LATIN GRAMMAR.** Carefully revised by THOMAS A. THACHER, Yale College. 12mo. Half morocco. 517 pages

A book of the very highest authority in Latin Syntax, and admirably adapted to the wants of Teachers and College Classes.

**NEW LATIN METHOD:** a Manual of Instruction in Latin on the Basis of a Latin Method prepared by J. H. ALLEN and J. B. GREENOUGH. 12mo. Cloth. 244 pages

The "New Method" contains: 1. About thirty ELEMENTARY LESSONS on the forms of the language, and the constructions suggested by the definitions of cases, moods, etc., accompanied by full Paradigms, and Exercises in Latin and English, with partial vocabularies. N. B. This portion of the book can be used independently of the Grammar, and is sufficient for a course of about a year's study — 2. CONSTRUCTIONS OF SYNTAX symmetrically grouped, with full references to the Grammar,

each topic being illustrated by numerous examples, with exercises to be rendered into Latin, so as to make a *full elementary manual of Latin Composition*. — 3. ON READING LATIN: brief sections on the Latin Sentence with examples of analysis and translation; the Derivation of Words; and Reading at Sight. — 4. READING LESSONS, with Vocabularies, and Tabular List of Synonyms.

### PARALLEL RULES OF GREEK and LATIN SYN-

TAX FOR USE IN SCHOOLS. Prepared by Instructors in the Classical Department of Williston Seminary, at Easthampton, Mass. Cloth. 33 pages

The object of this little pamphlet, prepared by two instructors in Williston Seminary, is to put clearly before their pupils the correspondences and the differences in Greek and Latin Syntax.

### THE LATIN VERB. Illustrated by the Sanskrit. By C. H.

PARKHURST. 12mo. Cloth. 55 pages

### WHITE'S JUNIOR STUDENT'S LATIN-ENGLISH

LEXICON. Square 12mo. 662 pages. Morocco back  
Sheep

### WHITE'S JUNIOR STUDENT'S LATIN-ENGLISH

AND ENGLISH-LATIN LEXICON. By the REV. J. T. WHITE, D. D., of C. C. C. Oxford, Rector of St. Martin, Ludgate, London. Revised Edition. Square 12mo. 1058 pages. Sheep

"The present work aims at furnishing in both its parts a sufficiently extensive vocabulary for all practical purposes. The Latin words and phrases are in all cases followed by the name of some standard Latin writer, as a guaranty of their authority; and as the work is of a strictly elementary character, the conjugation of the verbs and the genders and genitive cases of the substantives are uniformly added. In the preparation of this portion of the book, DR. WHITE has had the assistance of some of the best scholars both of Oxford and Cambridge." — *Guardian*.

### WHITE'S JUNIOR STUDENT'S ENGLISH-LATIN

LEXICON. Square 12mo. Sheep. 392 pages

We have contracted with Messrs. Longmans, Green, & Co., of London, for the sole agency in this country for the above Latin Lexicons, and shall endeavor to meet the demands of the trade.

### WHITON'S SIX WEEKS' PREPARATION FOR

READING CÆSAR. With References to Allen & Greenough's, Gildersleeve's, and Harkness's Grammars. 18mo. Paper cover

81.95

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



061455784

RETURN  
TO →

MAIN CIRCULATION

ALL BOOKS ARE SUBJECT TO RECALL  
RENEW BOOKS BY CALLING 642-3405

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

DEC 23 1998

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY  
BERKELEY, CA 94720

